Madras Library Association

Publication Series, 23



THE FIVE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

S R RANGANATHAN

Shiyali Ramamrita Ranganathan (1892—

Edition 1 1931
Edition 2 1957

Printed at Sree Ramaprasad Press, Madras 1

TO

THE BELOVED MEMORY

OF

SRIMATI RUKMINI

CONTENTS

यो दद्याज्ज्ञानमज्ञानां कुर्याद्वा धर्मदर्शनम् ।
स कृत्स्नां पृथिवीं दद्यात् तेन तुल्यं न तद्भवेत् ॥

मनुः ।

To carry knowledge to the doors of those that lack it and to educate all to perceive the right! Even to give away the whole earth cannot equal that form of service

Manu.

The Five Laws of Library Science

BOOKS ARE FOR USE
EVERY READER HIS BOOK
EVERY BOOK ITS READER
SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER
LIBRARY IS A GROWING ORGANISM

ग्रन्थालयस्य शास्त्र-पञ्च सूत्राणि

ग्रन्थालयश्री सदासेवी पञ्चसूत्री परायणः ।
ग्रन्था आप्येतुम् एते च सर्वेभ्यः स्वं स्वमाप्नु ॥
आप्येतु समयं लोपेत् आलयो नित्यमेव च ।
वर्धिष्णुः एव चिन्मूर्तिः पञ्चसूत्री सदा जयेत् ॥



FOREWORD TO THE FIRST EDITION

THE library movement is of comparatively recent origin in western countries and is the result of democratic influences which obtained an ascendancy towards the end of the last century The desire to extend the benefits of learning to the people at large suggested the foundation of numerous public libraries. The possibilities of libraries as instruments of popular education have ever since occupied the attention of those interested in this movement. Much thought has been given in recent years to the best methods of popularising the use of libraries.

The vast increase in the number of books published year after year and in the additions made to libraries has given rise to a large crop of questions regarding the organisation, administration and management of libraries. Men's outlook in regard to these matters has undergone a radical change. Libraries are now regarded not as precious possessions to be jealously preserved from the intrusion of the vulgar but as democratic institutions for the profit and enjoyment of all. How to attract readers to libraries, how to extend to all classes the facilities for using them, how to render the maximum amount of help to those who desire to use libraries and how to save the time of the readers and the library staff alike are questions which, simple as they may seem, demand no little thought, imagination, skill and experience from the librarian

A large mass of literature has grown up about this subject Library Associations have been started in many countries, chairs have been founded in several Universities for the teaching of library management and numbers of library journals have come into existence. Attempts have been made to systematize the knowledge on this subject and it is now claimed that it has attained the status of a science Whether the organisation and management of libraries is to be regarded as a science or as an art, it is needless to consider There can be no doubt, however that there are certain essential principles

underlying the management of libraries according to present-day needs and conceptions.

The author of this book has sought to expound these principles in a systematic form. He has been able to reduce them to five cardinal principles and has developed all the rules of library organisation and management as the necessary implications and inevitable corollaries of his five laws. Once the laws have been stated they appear so obvious that one wonders that they were not clearly realised and worked out before.

Mr Ranganathan's treatment of the subject is clear, logical and lucid. He has brought to his task extensive knowledge of the literature on the subject of libraries, personal acquaintance with the methods of management of libraries in Britain, a trained analytical intellect and a fervid but enlightened enthusiasm for the library movement. He has been the pioneer of the library movement in the Madras Presidency and has been carrying on an energetic propaganda to spread it. He knows how to rouse and sustain the interest of the reader and has produced a very attractive and readable book. I have no doubt it will meet with wide appreciation and soon come to be recognised as a standard text book of Library Science.

The Madras University is fortunate in possessing the author as its librarian. Its library has developed in his hands into a live human institution which aims at a helpful personal touch between the staff and the readers who use the library. The enormous increase in the issue of volumes since the author took charge of the library is a striking testimony to the soundness of the principles on which it has been run and to the efficiency of his management in spite of the very defective housing conditions under which the library has been working.

The publication of this book by the Madras Library Association is not the least of its claims to the gratitude of the public.

P. S. SIVASWAMY AIYER.

INTRODUCTION TO THE FIRST EDITION

I

THIS is one of the most interesting books that I have read in recent years upon our profession It is unique, I believe, in that it attempts for the first time a comprehensive survey by a librarian who has a peculiarly Indian mind and reflects his own racial culture on the basic theories of the art of book distribution as it is understood in the modern library world. To those who are new to our work it may be a wonder that so much can be made out of what superficially appears to be so simple a craft, but a perusal of Mr Ranganathan's pages will take the beginner a long way along the path of enlightenment.

Mr Ranganathan is unusually equipped for his undertaking. It is now several years since he placed himself for a while under the direction of the lecturers and teachers of the University of London School of Librarianship, and he became particularly associated with me. I found that he was a man of considerable culture, very original in his outlook, persistent and undeviating in his investigations, and wisely given to considering any suggestions that might be made to him. Not only did he attend the lectures in librarianship at the University of London he made an intensive study of library work of all types by visits to libraries in various parts of the country For some time he studied every day in the Croydon Public Libraries, where I watched his work with interest He examined the processes of every department, and spent much time considering and criticizing the various processes. All the way through he was seeking the reasoning that lies at the back of all our doings

Not only was he interested in books and libraries, he spent some of his leisure in examining the educational methods in the schools of the towns, and their relationship to libraries His critical outlook went so far that he even started on a new

classification of books. This as he tells us in a later part of this volume, is employed in the University Library at Madras, and in a few other Indian libraries which are beginning to classify their books

Such a course of study and such an attitude of mind could not fail to produce a type of librarian whose work would be of importance The work before us is proof of this.

II

The practice of librarianship long preceded the formulation of any laws whatsoever In all crafts this is so of course It is only slowly and from the continuous experience of workers that a theory can be deduced and given a statement Ours may claim to be, however one of the oldest crafts in the world, and some of the quite ordinary processes which have now been brought to such perfection that Mr Ranganathan is able to formulate their results as "laws," existed in embryo-form in the Assyrian libraries and probably in earlier ones The clay tablet catalogues in the British Museum prove to us that there were then not only libraries, but a systematic library science. In later but still early years the work of such librarians as Callimachus in the libraries of the Pharaohs shows methods of management, especially in the classification of books, that are the wonder of modern librarians who have considered them.

Every great nation in the past has had its public libraries, even if their use was sometimes limited to special classes of the community and in the general anarchy of European civilisation which followed the fall of the Western Roman Empire the monasteries still preserved and added to their libraries.

Library history was largely influenced by this monastic preservation of books because for centuries libraries were limited to colleges and to other protected buildings, and their use restricted to the inhabitants of these institutions To preserve the book was of as much and even of more consequence than to get it used. That spirit has been passing away since the

middle of the nineteenth century The great libraries of the world, with varying degrees of generosity have been thrown open to external readers, and the attitude of the *conservateur* has given place to what I have ventured to call elsewhere the exploiter of books as the right description of the librarian.

The principal factor in the modern attitude towards libraries and books has been what are known in England and America as "public libraries" This term to-day has quite a different meaning from what it had before 1850 Then, public libraries were public in much the sense in which the public schools of England are public that is to say they were limited in their use very largely to the governing classes. The modern public library is a municipal institution supported by towns for the free use of the citizens without discrimination. They were Anglo-Saxon in their origin and came into being at about the same time in Great Britain and in the United States. These libraries have now been built up with a special technique of their own, with, in many cases, very large stocks of books, and, literally millions of readers.

One of the most significant social factors of the last half of the nineteenth and the first quarter of the twentieth centuries has been the widespread development of the reading habit amongst western peoples. Even the more conservative nations of Europe have now developed systems of libraries more or less on the Anglo-Saxon model.

III

The modern view then, of libraries is that which regards all the population as its clientele. Even in university and research libraries facilities are now given to serious students without difficulty almost everywhere. This is the attitude which the librarian in India will, I hope and believe make his own. It must be quite clear however that universal rules or notions must always be given a local and individual application I do not think the library methods of America much as I admire them, are root and branch suitable for Europe or even for England. The psychology of the people varies, and

variants in library practice must be made to meet this fact. Even more amongst the peoples of India, with their immense history powerful traditions, and distinctive racial qualities, the application of merely Anglo-Saxon ideas to a thing so intimate, personal and spiritual as literature without modification, may not be wise. I have had many foreign students in the libraries under my care, and I have always tried to impress upon them that what they learn from us should always be considered carefully in the light of the needs of their own home countries. I feel that this is immensely important in India.

This, to my mind gives its special value to Mr Ranganathan s work He deals with all the questions which exercise the minds of European librarians. Book selection, with a catholic mind which has determined that all sides shall be heard, and that no personal preference shall have undue influence the best methods of library furnishing and equipment a considered statement of what can be done by the catalogue and by the classification these will be obvious to the reader He writes, too, as an educationist—as all good librarians should—and I hope he has made quite clear that the development of a literate nation with a full love for its great literature and a right understanding of the value of books, must begin with considered and generous provision for children

In the West every child is a potential reader it must be so in the East, even in places where the children have not yet had opportunities to do much reading or to get access to books.

IV

A wise American librarian once remarked to me that a log of wood with a book at one end and a librarian at another would make a perfect library That was a picturesque exaggeration, of course, but it is the personal element that the librarian brings into the library which gives it its vitality Many libraries, alas, lack vitality they have staffs, but no librarians The spirit of the real librarian has never been more beautifully or wisely shown than in Austin Dobson s

epitaph on Richard Garnett, one of the greatest librarians of the last century —

> "Of him we may say justly —Here was one
> Who knew of most things more than any other
> Who loved all learning underneath the sun,
> And looked on every learner as a brother"

The implications of this are profound enough to humble the most accomplished librarian It implies that the librarian must be a man of acquisitive mind who closes his mind to no subject of human interest. He is always a learner he must always be awake to and welcome every development of human thought and every adventure of the human spirit. He must, however be a man educated not only in the general sense but in every operation and process of libraries. He must be a lover of other men. When young people come to me as aspirants for library work I ask them "Do you love books?" They invariably reply that they do but I ask them next, "Do you like people and serving people?" I rejoice that in India there are men who now have taken in hand the choosing and training of librarians. What the country holds in the way of libraries I do not know fully but with its great literatures, in so many forms, there are no doubt many fields of research and many library possibilities as yet undreamed of even by the Indian himself

Here, then, is a book that may be an inspiration to all those who, in higher or humbler office will serve India in her libraries Conceived in a broad ungrudging spirit, it must enthuse those who enter upon our profession in that country with the immense, if sometimes undramatic, possibilities of a library It will show it to be not merely a collection of books which accumulates age and dust, but a living and growing organism prolonging the life of the past and renewing it for this generation, but giving also to this generation the best that its own workers thinkers and dreamers have to offer

W C. BERWICK SAYERS,
Chief Librarian, Croydon
Lecturer in the University of London School of Librarianship
Examiner in Library Organisation to the Library Association.

CHAPTER 0

GENESIS

01 Entrance into Library Profession

In July 1923 the University of Madras created the post of University Librarian. In November I was appointed its first librarian I was then teaching mathematics in the Presidency College, Madras, one of the constituent colleges of the University I started work as librarian in the afternoon of Thursday 4 January 1924 In the first few weeks, there was hardly anything to do I felt bored and I very much wished to go back to the college. But friends advised me not to be hasty I occupied myself with the cataloguing of hundreds of books lying in a heap. The number of readers visiting the library seldom exceeded a dozen in a day

02 First Experience

In October 1924 I joined the School of Librarianship in the University College London Its library was fairly exhaustive, though small It did not take more than a couple of months to study its books After this theoretical equipment. I picked up some practical experience by working in the Croydon Public Libraries for about six weeks. During the next six months, I visited about a hundred libraries of different kinds. The librarians gave me full freedom to observe, to put questions, and to discuss. This was the first experience It was a rich experience.

03 Library Trends

Libraries were found to be in different stages of development. This facilitated a comparative study of library practices. The forward trends were impressive But, the lines of development in the different sectors of library practice appeared unrelated Discussion with those working in the

different sectors led to the impression that each was working in his own sector without much of contact or correlation with other sectors. Even those working in the same sector did not show much evidence of team-work. There was no evidence of an overall view All these factors tended to hide the common point of emergence of the trends in the different sectors. Consequently what could be seen was only an aggregate of diverse practices without an integral relation. It looked as if future developments were totally unpredictable It all appeared to be a matter of rule of thumb and severely empirical

04 Scientific Method

Prior experience in scientific study and pursuit induced a sense of revolt against having to hold in memory and deal with myriads of unrelated pieces of information and independent types of practices. Cannot all these empirical aggregates of information and practices be reduced to a handful of basic principles? Cannot the process of induction be applied in this case? Cannot all the known practices be got by the process of deduction out of the basic principles? Do not the basic principles contain, as necessary implications, many other practices not current or known at present? Will they not become necessary as and when the boundary conditions set by society change? Such questions began to simmer in the mind It was, no doubt, realised that the subject of study belonged to the field of social sciences and not to that of natural sciences. But scientific method was applicable equally in both fields. The only difference lay in the status of the basic principles. These were hypotheses in the natural sciences and normative principles in the social sciences. But the cycle of scientific method was similar in both cases. The question to be answered was this What are the normative principles pointed to by the observed trends in library practices, and pointing to the future trends now not quite visible? This was agitating the mind from the first half of 1925

05 Enunciation

After return to India in July 1925 the over whelming work of organising and building up the Madras University Library virtually from scratch drove this problem out of the conscious level The 32,000 volumes of the library had to be classified and re-catalogued concurrently with this, the Colon Classification and the Classified Catalogue Code had to be designed and developed Open Access was started and reference service had to be done single-handed. Library publicity had to be done in full measure and as a result, the daily attendance shot up from two dozen to two hundred The staff had to be recruited and trained concurrently a manual of Library Administration had to be evolved. The annual accession shot up from 1,000 to 6,000. The design of the new library build ing claimed its own share of thought. The pressure of all these compulsory tasks was pushing the Normative Principles into deeper and deeper layers of the mind But, it was a con genial and helpful pressure. Every step in the design of the Colon Classification every rule in the formulation of the Classified Catalogue Code, and every clause in the drafting of the manual on Library Administration radiated from and got irradiated by the Normative Principles, hidden away by that pressure, at the subconscious level. Reciprocally the progress and the needs of these tasks should have been unconsciously shaping the Normative Principles into an effable form. This went on for three years. The acute stage of emergence was reached late in 1928 It was late one evening. The pressure was reversed in direction All other tasks had to be kept aside. The travail was unbearable. At about dusk, Prof Edward B Ross made his usual daily call on me I owed my intellec tual being to him he was my professor of mathematics throughout my university course his versatility and his affec tion for me made him take intimate and intelligent interest in my new sphere of work. He sensed my state of distress I shared my struggle with him. He was about to get on his motor cycle His eyes gleamed—always a sign of his hitting something new then came his characteristic smile of such

occasions and he said, "You mean, Books are for Use you mean that is your first law" He went away without wait ing even to see my reaction this was quite like him. But this stroke of intuition of his landed me in perfect relief The enunciation of the other laws was automatic. About three more hours were spent in filling up five sheets of paper with deductions from the five laws. Their enunciation was thus complete.

06 Exposition

Then began the exposition of the implications of the laws in the diverse sectors of library practice There was no professional organ in India in those days for library science But, a few years earlier I had taken part in starting the monthly *South Indian Teacher* and I had the hospitality of its pages. For the exposition of problems in library organisation and reference service of general interest to the public, the *Hindu*, a local daily was kind enough to lend its columns for a few years. These articles in the *Hindu* served the double purpose of library publicity and of releasing my tension. In December 1928 the University of Madras invited me to give a course of Vacation Lectures to teachers. These were to be given at the time of the Provincial Educational Conference that year It met at the Meenakshi College Chidambaram, on the eve of its becoming the Annamalai University There were about a thousand teachers present and many of them were personal friends. There could not have been a more congenial and sympathetic audience for the first formal exposition of the newly enunciated Five Laws of Library Science. The implications of each law were worked out in two lectures. Such of them as were in current practice were illustrated with lantern slides, diagrams, and verbal description. Some new prac tices were also deduced as likely to come into being some of these have already done so the *Insdoc list* started in 1954 is one of them in substance As the audience consisted all of teachers, the educational implications of the Five Laws received great emphasis. However these are not fully given in this

book. They became the sole subject of a separate series of vacation lectures delivered in Madras in three later years. These lectures have been expanded into the *School and college libraries* (1942) In December 1930 the First All Asia Educational Conference was held at Benares. Its organiser P Seshadri, invited me to be the Secretary of its Library Service Section. This gave me an opportunity to expound the Five Laws to an audience of librarians, these were only a few in those years. It gave a further incentive to work out in detail all the implications of the Laws of Library Science in the sphere of library organisation and legislation. In fact I drafted a Model Library Act. This was discussed at the conference clause by clause. The Library Act of Madras (1948) was based on this Model Act. The Library Act of Hyderabad (1955) also has followed it. This Model Act was embodied in Chapter 4 of the first edition of this book In this edition, however it has been replaced by an improved bolder version, drafted in 1950 to suit the independent sovereign status of India. Above all the School of Library Science, started in April 1929 gave an opportunity for the systematic exposition of the Five Laws, once every year

07 Publication

The Madras Library Association was founded in January 1928 to promote the establishment of a state-wide library service Nearly 800 members were enrolled within a short period Naturally they were all lovers of books and friends of library but not of the library profession. In fact, there were hardly ten persons in the profession in Madras in those days. To enlist the active interest of the members, Mr K. V Krishnaswamy Ayyar the President, conceived the idea of asking some of them contribute to a symposium. There was a good response to this. The symposium was published in 1929 under the title *Library movement A collection of essays by divers hands* The leading essay was the one on *What makes a library big* by Rabindra Nath Tagore the national poet. In 1930, it was decided to start a regular

Publication Series "on the technical and practical aspects of library work" It was felt appropriate to start with a volume giving a full exposition of the Five Laws of Library Science, from which all the others could stem as necessary implications. Accordingly the first edition of this book was published in June 1931 Through God's grace, the later volumes flowed in succession, year after year working out the implications of the Five Laws in one branch after another of Library Science. About 48 books were thus published. Some were published by the Madras Library Association and some by other agencies. And by 1953 the twenty-first volume of the series of the Madras Library Association was reached It was *Library science in India Silver jubilee volume presented to the Madras Library Association.*

Two friends spent several days with me in shaping the first edition. Mr K. Swaminathan, then Professor of English in the Presidency College took great pains to examine every sentence critically and reduce faults in language and style to a minimum. Sir P S Sivaswamy Ayyar—a respected statesman of India, a former Member of the Government of Madras, a former Vice-Chancellor of the University of Madras and of the Benares Hindu University an erudite scholar and a great lover of books—read all the pages of the proof made many suggestions of value, and finally furnished the Foreword. My professor in London, W C. Berwick Sayers, wrote the introduction It was from him that the greatest inspiration was derived Apart from listening to him in the class-room, I had spent several hours with him informally He was of help in many ways to make the year in Great Britain truly profitable. My regard and affection to these three gentlemen have made me retain the original text, the foreword, and the introduction in the present edition

08 Sequel

But, during the quarter century that has elapsed since the first edition was published, two fundamental changes have come. One is the generalisation of the concept "Book" this

has been emphasised in recent years in the term "Documentation. The second change is the generalisation of the term "Growth" this is a change in my own ideas, brought about while teaching in the class-room and working on the *Library development plan* (1950) and *Library book selection* (1953). Further it was felt desirable to answer the question, "Is there a Library Science?" Moreover library movement has made great strides in many lands, including India. To accommodate these changes, an eighth chapter has been added, with the title "Scientific Method, Library Science, and March of Digvijaya." It is this chapter that is new in this edition.

17 August 1956
248 Hofwiesenstrasse Zurich 57

CHAPTER I

FIRST LAW

11 Elemental Principle

THE first law of Library Science is like the first law of any other science It embodies an elemental principle In fact, it is self-evident one may be inclined to say that it is trivial But, that is an invariable characteristic of all first laws. Take, for example the first Upanishadic law of conduct—*Satyam Vada*—speak the truth. So is Newton's first law of motion.

111 Enunciation

The first law of Library Science is Books Are for Use. No one will question the correctness of this law But, in actual practice the story is different. The law has been seldom borne in mind by library authorities.

12 Neglect of the Law

We may examine the history of any aspect of library practice and we shall find ample evidence of a deplorable neglect of this law

121 Chained Library

Let us take, in the first place the way in which books were kept in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries It was not uncommon in those days to have books actually chained to the shelves. The books were fitted with brass frames and rings, which were tied to iron chains, whose other ends were safely fastened to the shelves. Such chained books could not migrate from the shelves beyond the length of the chain Their freedom was confined to the sphere determined by their chains. Certainly such chaining was more conducive to the preservation than to the use of the books In fact libraries were then regarded, not as organisations for furthering the use of books, but as institutions for preserving them.

122 Preservation for Posterity

It may be of interest to reflect for a while on this elaborate process of preservation. What must have been the purpose of such preservation? It is difficult to think of any purpose except that of preserving for the use of posterity No doubt, it is a healthy or at any rate an unavoidable trait of human nature, that we think of our children—of our posterity—and that we are even prepared to deny ourselves many things, in order to hand them over unimpaired to posterity But an inevitable deduction is implied in this practice Even as we are anxious to hand over our books to posterity every succeeding generation may be actuated by an exactly similar altruistic motive and in consequence books may have to be for ever in chains and may never be released for use. This aspect of the question seems to have escaped notice for a long time and Books Are for Preservation had usurped the place of Books Are for Use

123 Inherited Habit

This tendency to hoard books had originated at a time when books were rare and difficult to produce. Before the invention of printing it took years to copy a book. Copying the *Mahabharata* was work for a whole lifetime. Under such conditions, there was justification for forgetting that Books Are for Use and for overdoing the act of preserving them But this tendency appears to have unfortunately developed into a regular habit, as a result of long practice The situation was thoroughly altered by the invention of printing And yet, it took centuries to overcome this long inherited habit The first step was to declare an amnesty for the books and set them free from their chains. But, even after they were unchained and were permitted to be taken out for use and handled by readers, there was not, for a long time, a generous recognition, on the part of those maintaining and managing libraries, of the right of readers to an unhampered use of books The restrictions placed in the way of books being freely used were many and it is only in recent years that a

vigorous movement seems to have set in to eliminate all such handicaps. Such a movement has by no means become universal as yet. There are several countries—and our land seems to have a fair claim to be classed with them—which are still hardly affected by this new movement

124 Example 1

A Professor in a College ruled over his department for nearly a quarter of a century The pursuit of his subject—zoology—slowly narrowed the range of his vision and he became mechanically minded Trivial details began to loom large for him. Hence he came to attend personally to the meticulous discharge of every item of routine, from the opening of the doors and windows to the periodical emptying of waste paper baskets. He was given to getting into a rage if everything was not in its place Unfortunately under the force of this inexorable tendency he came to regard the shelves rather than the hands of readers as the proper place for books The assistants, whose advance in their cadre depended on the goodwill of the Professor would rather forego the use of books than run the risk of exciting his rage by drawing the books from the shelves. The students of the first year course, who alone were strangers to his idiosyncrasies, would occasionally ask for the books of the departmental library He used to dispose of them with this dilemma "Have you followed the class lectures? If so you do not want these books." "Were you unable to follow the class lectures? If so you cannot profit by reading these books." The senior students would not approach him at all, since they had had painful experiences of the futility of such attempts. The result was that, when he retired at long last, his successor had to cut open the pages of several of the books bequeathed to him! In some cases, it was even found that it was not worth-while to waste time in cutting them open for they had gone entirely out of date and had to be discarded Would such a professoral career have been possible if the College had acted on the law— Books Are for Use ?

125 EXAMPLE 2

The extraordinary strength and inexorability of this inherit-ed tendency which stands between the books and their users, is brought out by the case of another Professor—this time, a Professor of Philosophy The Professor was a philosopher not only by profession but also by practice and temperament. He was also one of those that felt an urge for social service One form of social service that our Professor of Philosophy decided to render was to give a chance for his neighbours to become learned. To this end, he used to invest most of his savings in books. When he had made up a good collection he built a nice little reading hut to house the books. He used to spend most of his spare time in this reading hut, so that he may serve out the books personally He was, however very disappointed at the ultimate indifference of his neighbours. So, one day he took me to his reading hut to take advice. On his way he was waxing eloquent over the excellent books he had bought for the library the depressing indifference of the people of his locality to the use of books, and so on. The conversation that ensued as soon as we entered the charming but desolate reading hut threw a flood of light on the persistence of the long-inherited preserving habit which could smother even the sincere resolve and the good intentions of an honest philosopher

"Where are your books, my friend?"

"All these ten almirahs are full of them. I spent a hundred rupees on each of these almirahs. I had them specially made, etc. etc., etc."

"But, my dear Professor why have you lined their lovely transparent glass doors with these ugly sheets of brown paper?"

"You don t know how these visitors bother me. If I don t stick up this brown paper they look at the books through the glass door They ask for this book and that, and I have to pull out all the books."

Poor vanquished philosopher! Comment is needless.

See section 8125 of Sequel

126 Example 3

While such things are common with us in the twentieth century we have only to go a century back to find the iron sway of this hoarding habit over American Libraries T W Koch of the North-western University records a significant but typical story of a librarian of Harvard The Harvard University Librarian once completed an inventory of the library and was seen crossing the yard with a particularly happy smile" When he was asked the reason for his exceptionally pleasant mood, he exclaimed with pride, All the books are in excepting two Agassiz has those and I am going after them"

127 Modern Librarian

On the other hand a modern librarian who has faith in the law that Books Are for Use, is happy only when his readers make his shelves constantly empty It is not the books that go out that worry him. It is the stay-at home volumes that perplex and depress him. He too will constantly cross the yard to meet his Agassizes. But he will go to them, not to snatch away the books they are using, but to distribute the new arrivals that need to be introduced to them as rapidly as possible.

128 Force of First Law

The different stages by which the force of the law "Books Are for Use," worked out the gradual removal of the restrictions induced by the aforesaid inherited habit may be summarised as follows —The chains were first removed and sold as old iron but access was limited to the chosen few Then those that could pay were allowed the use of the books. Then came the further step of making them free to all, but only for use in the premises of the library Then, lending to the favoured few then, to all who paid the fee and at last, lending free to all Perhaps we are just reaching this stage in our land. But this was by no means the end elsewhere where the first law had been familiar

sufficiently long, to lay bare all the implications embedded deep in its bosom In such places, aggressive methods, which have made other enterprises successful, came to be employed to push forward the use of books Then branch libraries were opened in the larger cities in order to provide a fair collection of books and an inviting reading room within a few minutes' walk from each home. Then books were sent out for a nominal fee to those who could not conveniently come after them. Then boxes of books were sent free to the homes of those that would offer to get them introduced in their neighbourhood. The latest is that books are carried in a motor van from street to street for distribution among the residents. What further triumph is in store for the first law it is difficult to guess. But, as stated by J P Quincy one is tempted to adapt a well-known Celtic paradox by saying that a public library is as good as a private one and, for the effective study of books, has decided advantages over it.

13 Library Location

The location of a library may in general, be taken as an index of the degree of faith that the authorities of the library have in the law BOOKS ARE FOR USE.

131 EXAMPLE 1

I happened to visit Dindukkal, a municipal town in the south The city-fathers of the place invited me for a discussion about building a library for the town The question of site turned up at a very early stage Practically all of them suggested a place in the outskirts of the town. One of their reasons for suggesting such a remote site was that there was too much dust in the centre and that the books would be spoiled Another reason adduced was that, otherwise "all sorts of fellows" would get into the library It never struck them that the function of the library was to make "all sorts of fellows" use its books and that the dust problem should not be allowed to drive away the library beyond the zone of accessibility and usefulness. On the other hand they were

shocked to hear me suggest a site in the bazaar street running through the heart of the town. I had to cite the example of several of the cities of the West and expound elaborately the gospel of library organisation before they would concede that there was at least something to be said in favour of my suggestion.

132 Example 2

In a Kellett Hall lecture of not long ago—before the bus service came into being—the talented speaker S Satyamurti, humorously fixed the co-ordinates of one of our big libraries as follows —"Find a place in the city which is at least a mile from any tram-line or any railway station, which has not even a rickshaw-stand within a radius of half a mile, which has the nearest college or students hostel at a distance of three miles. There is perhaps only one place in the city answering such a description and that is the place chosen for our library" And yet nobody grumbled because a library was regarded more as an ornament to the city than as an institution whose primary function was to spread the use of books.

See section 8152 of Sequel

133 Example 3

On the other hand, in all western cities that have a living faith in the First Law of Library Science and vote for and maintain libraries, because they are anxious that books should be used, the main library is usually housed in the centre of the city—at a place to which most of the citizens will be obliged to go daily on some business or other It also works through several branches and delivery stations in different parts of the city so that distance may not stand in the way of the free and full use of books. Dublin, for example has five such district libraries for her population of 3,24 000 Even thrifty Edinburgh, with its population of 4,20 000, has already established seven branch libraries. Manchester has found the need for thirty branches to get her books fully used by her people who number 7 44,000 Birmingham with her

population of 9 19 000 does not find her twenty-four branch libraries adequate to spread the use of her books. Toronto with only a population of 5 50 000 has already established fifteen branches and intends to build more of them. Cleveland, which is the home of about eight hundred thousand people, distributes her book collection through 25 branches and 108 delivery stations while 46 branches and 275 delivery stations are found too inadequate for the 3 000,000 people of Chicago.

134 Shop Location Analogy

Once the idea that Books Are for Use is firmly established, once the libraries realise that their existence is justified only by the extent to which their books are used by readers, there will be no difference of opinion about their location. A location, such as the one described by our Kellett Hall lecturer would never be thought of A shrewd shopkeeper who wants his wares to sell puts up his shop in the *Sannidhi* of a popular temple. A coffee-house owner who wants his business to thrive, establishes his *cafe* near a big students hostel like the Victoria Hostel. A betel-vendor keen on his daily turn-over pitches his tent opposite to a big and popular hotel. So also a library keen about its books being fully used, will plant itself in the midst of its *clientele* Conversely the *Sannidhi* of no popular temple is without a shop and the vicinity of all hostels invariably gets studded with coffee-hotels and betel-shops. The same is the case with libraries. Wherever people habitually congregate, that is a potential site for a library.

135 Example 4

An extreme but a happy illustration of this deduction from the First Law of Library Science is afforded by the " Garden Library " of Lisbon.

Lisbon, the capital of Portugal built on Seven Hills like our Tiruppati and comparable to our Madura in size and population, has gained a unique place in the library world.

A Portuguese proverb claims "Who has not seen Lisbon has not seen a thing of beauty" Whether such a claim is valid or not, Lisbon has certainly excelled all other cities in her unique Garden Library which is certainly a thing of beauty

On the flank of one of its Seven Hills, overlooking the blue surface of the Tagus, there is a sunny little public garden with a marble basin in the centre round which flowers riot in rainbow tints, and children shout and run in joyous ecstasy

At the far end, there is a giant cedar-tree spreading like an umbrella defying sun and rain. Inside its intense shadow deep silence prevails and you find a line of chairs encircling an enchanting collection of volumes in a lovely bookcase Students in their flowing cloaks, workmen white with lime dust, raw rustics with timid and listless eyes, office and shop employees munching their lunch, soldiers, printers, electricians, sailors and dock hands, all share the contents of this unique Library unhampered by any formality but aided by the nimble, sweet-faced Librarian fluttering from end to end with her beaming smiles.

Who conceived this idea? It was a private Educational Society known as the "Free University" Hoping to foster a love of reading among all classes, the Free University founded this Garden Library supplying the books and the furniture. The Lisbon city-fathers, who were themselves believers in the First Law of Library Science, warmly approved of this venture and lent the services of a Librarian

There are only less than a 1 000 volumes but they are changed from time to time They have a little of everything—Classics, Living Authors, Travels, History Electricity Chemistry Shorthand, Book-keeping, Building, Smithy Navigation and so on And these are eagerly sought by all the visitors to the Garden The Library is open daily from 10 to 6 Statistics show that during the first year there were no less than 25,000 readers using this Library May the shadow of the ancient cedar in the public garden of the city of the Seven Hills never grow less! May it long provide shelter for this

patriotic enterprise, in the service of the gospel Books Are for Use !

136 Example 5

In schools and colleges also the location of their libraries may be taken as a reliable index of the degree of faith of the authorities in the law Books Are for Use The evolution of ideas regarding the location and the size of school and college libraries has been closely parallel to the gradual growth of the belief in that law I knew a school intimately Its library consisted of a few hundred books made up mostly of specimen copies of text-books given away by the teachers of the school as not worth private appropriation These few hundreds of books were carefully locked up in a wooden book-case. This was itself locked in a room, ten feet square, and ventilated by a single small window There was a more terrifying feature The headmaster invariably held his classes —including his innumerable special classes—in the hall leading to that room, almost blocking the entrance to it Those that know the mortal dread in which headmasters were held in such schools, twenty five or thirty years ago, will realise what this meant for the books of the library For those who do not know it may be said that the appearance of the headmaster's figure at the street-corner was enough to make a group of schoolboys, playing at marbles in the evening sun, fly for their life and take shelter in the darkest corners of the kitchens of the nearest houses, where their timid tell-tale eyes and ways would make the mothers exclaim, Is the headmaster going to the temple? Hardly any of the boys would dare to come out of his hole until the boldest dare-devil among them could make bold to peep out stealthily and announce, in a cheering tone, "The line is clear" With this information it may be easy to realise how effective such a location for the school library should have been in preventing the library books from being used Certainly that school did not believe, in those days, that Books Were for Use " and that school was by no means an exception.

137 EXAMPLE 6

Not long ago the Principal of a big college invited me to pay a visit to his college library and to suggest some improvements. I gladly went. I was received with great kindness and taken through a maze of narrow dark, ill ventilated rooms or corridors, which had almirahs along the walls. When the other end was nearing, I asked the Principal where his library was and when he would take me to it. To my surprise, I was told that we had all along been passing only through the library Wondering at this queer provision, in a college, of a place for the boys to play hide and-seek during their lunch interval I asked the Principal why such an unhappy situation was selected for the College library The prompt and innocent reply of the Principal was, "These rooms are unfit for anything else and they have to be put to some sort of use." Would such a naive reply have come forward, if the First Law of Library Science had any hold on the authorities of that college? Twenty years ago we occupied our new building. The nicest room facing the sea was given over to periodicals. I was in a small room at the west end. A misfit to the library profession happened to come. He expressed surprise at my having made the worst room the librarian s room. "If I were you, I would have my office in your periodicals room," he said. I replied," If the First Law had not revealed itself to me, I too might have done so" "—mn your First Law If ever I succeed you, you will see what I do" was the prompt reply!

138 EXAMPLE 7

What now prevails in our schools and colleges obtained some sixty or seventy years ago in the schools and colleges of the West. Speaking at the dedication of the Library of the Colorado College, in March 1894 Mr Harper the first President of the Chicago University said A quarter of a century ago the library in most of our institutions, even the oldest, was scarcely large enough to deserve the name of library .. I know of a college having an enrolment of one hundred

and fifty students and yet in a room ten by twelve having the name of library has not two hundred and fifty volumes So far as it had location, it was the place to which the Professor was accustomed to make his way occasionally the student never The place, seldom frequented, was some out of the way room which could serve no other purpose Almost the very words of the Principal mentioned in the last paragraph !

139 Example 8

But all this changed, the moment the First Law of Library Science came to establish itself in the minds of the people. At present, several colleges in the West, which believe that Books Are for Use and feel that one of their primary duties is to develop the book-habit in their undergraduates, assign their very best room for library purposes. Not only do they give their best room, they allot quite a number of such rooms for the library At least in one college of the West whose "books were placed in corridors, cellars and attics" till this law weighed with it, the floor area of the libraries of the college is now nearly half the floor area of the whole college. To quote Harper again, "To-day the chief building of a college, the building in which is taken greatest pride, is the library With the stack for storage purposes, the reading room for reference books, the offices of delivery the rooms for seminar purposes, it is the centre of the institutional activity A greater change from the old can hardly be conceived The time is near when the student will do little of his work in the study he must be in the midst of books. As the scholar though having thousands of volumes in his own library must find his way to the great libraries of the Old World when he wishes to do the work of highest character so the University student, though having hundreds of volumes in his own room, must do his work in the library of the institution His table must be where, without a moment s delay without the mediation of a zealous librarian, who perhaps thinks more of the book than of its use, he may place his hand upon that one of ten or twenty thousand books which

he desires to use That factor of our college and University work, the library fifty years ago almost unknown to-day already the center of the institution s intellectual activity half a century hence will, by absorbing all else, have become the institution itself"

14 Library Hours

The influence of the law BOOKS ARE FOR USE has been no less profound on Library Hours. So long as the inherited notion about preservation had the upper hand and the law BOOKS ARE FOR USE had not fully asserted itself the library was more often closed than kept open. Perhaps it was more frequently opened for the bookworms to be chased out and the books to be dusted than for the readers to enter or for the books to be issued for use. The registers of books borrowed for the decade 1730–40 from the Bodleian library of Oxford are said to show that only rarely were more than one or two books issued in a day Sometimes a whole week is said to have passed over without a single entry being made An interesting memento said to be preserved by that library dates from 1806 Finding the library closed, a scholar angry with disappointment, affixed to the door of the library a scrap of paper containing words which the Muse of Greece supplied him with for the relief of his feelings —"Woe unto you who have taken the key of knowledge! Ye enter not yourself and hinder those who come" In his *Story of the University of Edinburgh*, Sir Alexander Grant deplores how in the early nineteenth century the hours of the University Library restricted the facilities afforded to the students for making use of the library Books might be taken out only during two hours on two days of the week According to Koch the library of the Amherst College was open, in 1850 only once a week from one to three in the afternoon. The students of the Princeton University could use its library only for one hour twice a week, while their contemporaries at Missouri were allowed only one hour for two weeks. In the Columbia College, which was started in 1859 for many years, fresh

men and sophomores were allowed to visit the library only once a month to gaze at the backs of books, the juniors were taken there once a week by a tutor who gave verbal information about the contents of the books, but only seniors could draw from the library during one hour on Wednesday afternoons"

141 Flouting First Law

If the library hours were, till late in the last century of such small magnitude in the land of libraries, one can easily imagine the conditions that obtain at present in our school and college libraries, of course, wherever they exist! The practice of one big college may serve as an illustration Theoretically it has two issue-days per week. But, let not the occurrence of the word day by any means mislead one to multiply the two by twenty-four or even by twelve to arrive at the number of library hours per week In practice, the professor in-charge, had conveniently interpreted the "two issue-days" as two quarter hours. His displeasure no discreet boy would dare incur One might wonder what takes place in the library during the remaining hours of the week. Well, the books enjoy their eternal undisturbed repose behind locked doors, in a dark, closed room.

1411 An Actuality

The Madras University Library experimented for a long time with its hours. The people, literate enough to use its books, had their office-hours between 11 a.m. and 5 p.m. on week-days. Saturdays and Sundays were usually holidays with them. During these days, they were accustomed to devote the morning hours to social visits, household purchases and such other week-end business after the luxury of a late meal, and a midday nap they would find themselves fit for study or for a serious visit to the library only in the afternoon The hours finally arrived at by the library after its endless experiments and investigations, fitted in with the habit of its *clientele* in an ideally wrong way It actually decided to keep itself open be

tween 10 a.m. and 5 p m. on week-days and from 7 a m to 2 p m. on Saturdays and Sundays! Can a more effective decision be imagined for a place where the First Law of Library Science was almost a heresy? On another occasion when the authorities of a library were solemnly discussing ways and means to meet a great increase in the issue of books, a veritable Daniel came "to judgment

"When do you have the greatest rush in the day?" asked the Daniel.

"In the evening, between 4 and 6" said the librarian

There you are," came forth the solution "Close the library at four instead of at six That will end the bother

There was a meek murmur "They are the only hours when most of the students and teachers can use the Library "

"Too much reading is no good, you know" retorted the strong-willed Daniel

Poor First Law! So summarily and unceremoniously thrown overboard! But you must not refuse your clemency to South India for all climes and times have an equal claim on your clemency South India is not alone in showing you disrespect at this late hour Remember the recent lamentations of a Parisian librarian "Generally speaking, a school library in France was a closed cupboard opened once a fortnight or once a month "

142 Magic of First Law

But the magic of the Mantra Books Are for Use has made marvellous changes in the library hours in the other places of the West. Even the Bodleian, groaning under the undiscriminating weight of medieval tradition, has, now broken the shackles of an old injunction about lights. It had formerly made its hours keep pace with the erratic sun of the north The long prohibited electric light is now making its hours not only uniform but also fairly long. Other libraries had surrendered to the dictates of the First Law even earlier According to the American Library Association's survey of the libraries, the hours, during which the libraries

are open daily vary from ten to fourteen The Amherst college which, eighty years ago, was keeping its library open for bare three hours in a week, now keeps it open for nearly a hundred hours in a week In fact its daily hours are said to be 8 a.m to 10-30 p.m. The Cornell University does similarly The Oregon University opens the library daily at 7 30 a.m and closes it only at 10 p m. Even the Madras University Library has fixed 7 a.m and 8 p.m. as its hours of opening and closing, for every day in the year including Sundays and other holidays. God willing, it may soon emulate the University College of London in its nocturnal vigils. It is not only the college and University libraries that have responded to the call of the First Law of Library Science The reponse of the Public Libraries has been no less eager The majority of them, which keep BOOKS FOR USE, are open daily from 9 a.m. to 9 p.m., while some as in San Francisco and Seattle, work even till 10 p.m

143 ALL WAKING HOURS

There is no need to multiply statistics. It may be asserted boldly that the *a priori* reasoning about library hours leads only to results that are consistent with such new practices. In no country, where the Law, BOOKS ARE FOR USE has taken root in the Public Mind will any library be allowed to close till the majority of humanity go to bed and so cannot use it. Nor can it be kept closed after they rise from bed Nor will any library be allowed to close on any day of the year,—not even on Sundays, even in Christian countries. The public demand long hours and the library authorities appreciate the soundness of this demand. It is indeed considered criminal to close a library at any time when people can conveniently use it. One might ask, what about the cost of establishment, if it is to be kept open for long hours and on all days. Modern society maintains that any extra money spent on library establishment is legitimately spent and is well spent. After all, what is the proportion of the extra cost of establishment to the enormous benefit flowing from a wider use of the

library What a large sum of money is locked up in the books of libraries! Is it not penny wise and pound foolish to grudge a *few rupees more on the establishment* and *to restrict* the full use of such a treasure? Sometimes, wisdom consists in throwing good money after better

> but if you please
> To shoot another arrow that self way
> Which you did shoot the first I do not doubt
> As I will watch the aim to find both "[8]

144 All Day and All Night

But in the matter of library hours, the palm goes to the University College London The inaugural address to freshmen was delivered in my year by a lucky coincidence by Dr E. A. Baker the Director of the School of Librarianship He mentioned in proud terms that the University College was a pioneer and a breaker of traditions. He cited several facts in support of his claim. I don t remember however that he included the achievements of the college in the matter of library hours. To put it shortly the library hours of the University College are not fixed by the college at all. They are left entirely in the hands of each *individual* student. Each student is given a latch-key for the library of his or her Department and he or she is at liberty to use the library at any time he or she likes—day or night—the last word on library hours! This ideal is whole-heartedly endorsed, in the final report of May 1927 of the Public Libraries Committee, appointed in 1924 by the President of the Board of Education of Great Britain It observes "Inasmuch as there is no hour of the night or day at which a citizen may not feel the need to peruse some book which is not in his possession, the ideal arrangement would be that libraries should always be open to the public."

15 Library Furniture

Next, let us see the effect of the law BOOKS ARE FOR USE' on library furniture. One may say with confidence "Show me your library furniture and I shall tell you whether you believe in the First Law of Library Science or not. To

begin with in the days when the rival dictum BOOKS ARE FOR PRESERVATION ruled the library racks were built only with a view to preservation. The problem was to accommodate the maximum number of books in the least space and at the lowest cost. The Rule of Least Space left the height of the book racks entirely to be determined by the height of the ceiling. Not even an inch of vertical space should be wasted. Hence each rack should begin at the very bottom and go right up to the ceiling. Similarly another corollary of the Rule of Least Space was that not an inch of horizontal space, beyond the absolute minimum, should be wasted. This required that the gangway between book-racks should be as narrow as possible—just enough for an attendant to pass through—say a foot and a half or two at the most. Again, in the absence of chaining, each rack should be at least provided with doors, locks and keys. The Rule of Least Cost required that the furniture of the reading-room should be as simple and as cheap as practicable. The reader had no business to expect comfort. Other furnishings, the reading-room need not have. No hangings to make the room more attractive. No charming pictures or inspiring portraits on which the tired eyes of a reader may now and then rest and refresh themselves. But the advent of the First Law of Library Science threw on these, Rules of Least Space and of Least Cost, a delightful spell and it has completely transformed them.

16 A Dialogue

First Law Your methods are intolerable. They *must* go

Rule of Least Space Can you kindly descend to the level of particulars?

First Law Take your book racks first. How do you expect the top of these sky-scrapers to be reached?

Rule of Least Space Use a ladder!

First Law That is more easily said. It is all right with the trained nimble library attendants. Perhaps, you do not know that I am going to allow every reader to pick out any book he wants directly from the shelf

Rule of Least Space It is news to me I have never heard of that.

First Law Oh! I see, Is it so? Yes, any reader will go to the shelf Now imagine a corpulent reader climbing a ladder for the first time in his life in his enthusiasm for a book Imagine his fiddling at the top falling down and breaking his neck. Who is to pay the damages? What will your sister the Rule of Least Cost, say to that?

Rule of Least Cost No doubt it is a matter for serious thought

Rule of Least Space What do you suggest then?

First Law No rack should be higher than what can be comfortably reached by a person of average height, while standing on the bare floor

Rule of Least Space A height of 6½ or 7 feet?

First Law Admirable That is the right height. You are very reasonable.

Rule of Least Space Well, I have noted it Anything else?

First Law The regulation width of your gangways is too small.

Rule of Least Space It was fixed for different conditions you know We only intended a library attendant to pass through

First Law Excuse me if I laugh So long as it was only an attendant that had to use it, it was open to you to tell the library authorities that they should recruit only slim one-dimensional beings as attendants, if they don t want their staff to get jammed between the racks!

Rule of Least Space No offence at all. These points have to be made clear Your admitting the readers to the shelves is quite a novel idea. That makes all the difference. But dimensions are more my province Without fear of being considered pedantic I may say that you seem to contemplate a race of readers who have expanded into all my three dimensions with a vengeance

and demand a gangway which should be capable of admitting the biggest of them!

First Law You are nearly right. I should like however that the gangway should be broad enough to permit two of them to walk along abreast of each other

Rule of Least Space Ye-es. I quite see your point 4½ to 6 feet will be all right?

First Law Thank you One word more Although it is not quite relevant to what we were talking about I should like to thank you most heartily for the selfless manner in which you took a bold stand against the Library Authorities when they proposed to stop all further purchases temporarily because the stack-room was choked with books and that there was no more space

Rule of Least Space Well,

First Law I see, from your exchange of smiles with your sister that there is more behind it

Rule of Least Cost Really it was so good of my sister to have accommodated me and sided with me in that matter

Rule of Least Space She just convinced me that if that proposal came to be adopted she would be nowhere, since the cost of old books—and particularly the scientific periodicals and other publications of Learned Societies which are indispensable for research—will increase tenfold in a short while

First Law Even then I am indebted to you Who in these days, is prepared to be so very selfless and look to the comforts of a sister in distress?

Rule of Least Space Thank you. I am so glad we part as friends although you will admit you were almost in a rage at the beginning.

First Law I am sorry I crave your pardon The fault is due to my enthusiasm for my cause. I meant nothing personal. I shall make amends, by giving some cheering news to your sister

Rule of Least Space and Rule of Least Cost What is it! What is it!

First Law I don t want doors, locks and keys for the book racks. You may save the cost of all of them

Rule of Least Cost I am, in a sense, pleased but what about rats and squirrels? And again you say all sorts of folk will come into the gangway What will prevent their passing the books through the windows?

First Law It is a very intelligent question. But you need not trouble yourself about it. I am asking the architect to make the room itself vermin-proof and thief proof

Rule of Least Cost And air proof! Is it?

First Law No not necessarily Will you be good enough in return not to make the reading-room man-proof?

Rule of Least Cost I don t quite understand you.

First Law Just make the chairs cozy and comfortable and the table space ample Also, just sanction the necessary sum to make the floor sound-proof

Rule of Least Cost That is not much That is easily done

First Law I should also implore you to furnish the reading-room as nicely as possible—like a first class drawing-room, say like this lovely room of yours, with beautiful hangings, flowers, pictures, fans lights etc. Remember the lights particularly since it is my policy to allow the serious students to stay on after sunset, if they are so minded, to continue their study

Rule of Least Cost That is an idea

First Law One more request. I trust you don t think I am going too far

Rule of Least Cost Never mind It is better to let us know at once all your requirements

First Law Just make provision for an ample supply of reliable drinking water for a few W C s., for a bath-room and—I am almost afraid to say it—for the establishment and maintenance of a refectory

Rule of Least Cost Why be afraid? We are only exchanging ideas. Be frank.

First Law Then, I shall add provide also a retiring room with perhaps a couple of lounges where the scholars, who come to stay the whole day may stretch themselves and close their eyelids now and then for a few minutes Of course I may assure you that due precautions will be taken to see that such a first-class privilege is not abused by any I saw furnished rooms given to serious students for months together by a library at Amherst. The famous authoritative biography of Woodrow Wilson was written in one of these rooms. The author virtually made it his home for nearly a year The librarian mentioned this to me with pride and delight when I entered that room.

Rule of Least Cost What novel ideas! Beautiful though costly But, per—haps eco—nomical al—so

Rule of Least Space Costie! Costie! What are you pondering over with eyes closed?

Rule of Least Cost Ye—es, Dear Spacie, Meditating Cogitating, if you like. I just got on the Time-Machine to explore what this would mean in the long run I have seen, Spacie that at that distance of time, all this little sum that we may have to spend extra on such things to get the books better used will lead ultimately to real healthy National Economy Yes, the whole thing is clear to me now Am I right, Mr First Law?

First Law Yes you have put it correctly and in a business like manner

Rule of Least Cost To put it in a word, you don t want the library to continue any longer as a dead storehouse of books. You want it fitted up as a first-class workshop, with first rate amenities.

Rule of Least Space Costie! You remind me of the revolutionary words of Lord Lytton at the inauguration of the Public Library at Manchester in 1851 You remember his words, "A Library is not only a school, it is an arsenal and an armoury Books are weapons either for war or for self-defence"

Rule of Least Cost Yes, I too remember that speech But they are the words of a pre League-of Nations-man Our friend wants us to conceive the library as a regular peaceful workshop which will eliminate for ever a panacea for all the ills of humanity and—what I am more concerned with—eliminate all wastage both in local administration and in the State.

Rule of Least Space I can never keep pace with you in your *Economic* flights into the Future Mr First Law are you satisfied? That is all that we want.

Rule of Least Cost I am sure he is.

First Law Workshop! Exactly That is the word You have caught it. I am sure hereafter we shall always see eye to eye and get on in a friendly way I am glad of your sympathy I may tell you at once that, in addition to doing all this, I want the constant help of your watchful eye to save every possible pie to buy the very books, for whose use, after all I am giving you all this trouble

Rule of Least Cost You are a regular missionary I see But, now that we have understood each other may I take the liberty of making one or two suggestions?

First Law Most certainly I want them?

Rule of Least Cost I think, the retiring room the refectory and the elaborate furnishings of the reading-room—like a first class drawing room as you put it—may wait. Perhaps you don t realise how it will react in certain quarters. You must remember that, for some time to come, library authorities will consist of persons who spent their earlier days before your advent. You can hardly expect them to develop a library habit at this late stage of their life. In these circumstances, how do you expect them to evaluate properly all such innovations, all so suddenly sprung on them?

First Law I was not altogether unaware of this difficulty In fact, in speaking to your sister it is such considerations that made me reluctantly refrain from asking

for space for a Lecture Room and an Exhibition Room I thought I might rather leave it to my sister the Third Law since she is more directly interested in such things.

Rule of Least Space I have been here for such a long time. I can tell you what will happen. The entire blame will be put on the head of the poor Librarian. All sorts of motives will be attributed to him, such as thirst for cheap popularity and his life will be filled with worry

Rule of Least Cost My sister is quite right.

First Law I don't realise that. Perhaps my missionary zeal —as you put it—and my over-enthusiasm have blinded me to such worldly wisdom, which are so natural to you the shrewd financier that you are I want the goodwill of the Librarian and his staff more than anything else, if my mission is to succeed. In fact he is the person that I am going to see next. I don't want that he should in any way .innocent man. in any way get into disrepute for no fault of his. On the other hand, I not only want that he should co-operate with me but also that he should have the goodwill and co-operation of the library authorities. Otherwise, he can t be of much use to me. I don t want to weaken his position for anything in the world Thank you for the advice. I thought, I came to teach but I go back wiser

Rule of Least Cost So it is with us. Cheerio!

Rule of Least Space Wish you good luck with the Librarian!

First Law Thank you Good-bye.

17 Library Staff

Let us now pass on from the Library Furniture to the Library Staff The advent of the First Law has had the most vital effect on the Library Staff It has affected the question of staff in several ways. We should examine each one of them with the greatest possible care and thoroughness. Whatever be

the Library Location, the Library Hours, the Library Furniture and the way in which books are kept, it is the Library Staff that ultimately make or mar a library In fact, an enormous struggle has been going on for the past fifty years to adjust the Library Staff to the needs of this new concept, BOOKS ARE FOR USE. If the mere number of papers written on librarianship can be taken as a measure of this struggle, one can get some idea of it from the admirable *Bibliography* of Cannons. Not less than 58 closely printed pages of this book are devoted to the subject of the staff and it must be remembered that the list has been brought up only to the end of 1920

170 QUALIFICATIONS FOR STAFF

So long as the preservation of books was the chief concern of a library all that it wanted by way of staff was a competent care taker who could fight against the four enemies of books fire water vermin and men.

1701 Never-do-wells

It was not unusual to make a post in the library the sinecure for persons unfit for other jobs It was not unusual for example, for libraries to be manned by the deaf and the maimed, by stammerers and hunch-backs, by the dull and the short-tempered—by never-do-well s of all sorts. The term " Keeper " by which the librarians of ancient libraries are still designated is indeed a significant survival of the pre First Law days. The parody of a passage in Plato s *Republic* given by Dr A D Lindsay Master of Balliol College, in his Presidential Address of 1928 fits in appropriately with this conception of a librarian

> Then on which occasions concerned with books is the librarian a more useful partner than another
>
> In cases of depositing and keeping books safe.
>
> Is not that as good as saying When there is no need to read books but only to keep them unread ?
>
> Yes.

Then librarianship is useful in regard to books when books are useless?

It looks like it.

Librarianship then my friend, cannot be of any great moment if it is useful only for books when they are useless.[12]

In fact librarianship was not till recently considered to be of any great moment for any purpose.

1702 Great Britain

Indeed, it took a long time to realise the need for a professional librarian. If there was a librarian's post it was not known whom to recruit for it, and if there was a librarian, it was not known what to do with him. For nearly half a century even the University College, London which has now become a centre for training librarians, used to leave its library "to the care of an assistant, sometimes dignified with the title of librarian but never paid more than £80 a year or to that of a library beadle."[13] In his *Story of the University of Edinburgh*, Sir Alexander Grant records, "Between 1635 and 1667 there was a succession of no less than ten librarians probably none of these persons had a peculiar vocation for the employment." When it finally got a librarian who would not leave it, not knowing what to do with him, it asked him to maintain "the Graduation Book where for a series of years he entered the laureations." Even that not filling all his spare time he was made to act, in addition, "as Secretary to the College an office which was henceforth combined with that of Librarian!" So long as BOOKS WERE ONLY FOR PRESERVATION and until it came to be realised that "BOOKS ARE FOR USE," how else could a librarian's time and energy have been utilised? Edinburgh was by no means unique in thus obtaining from the librarian some such miscellaneous work in return for the salary paid to him. Her neighbour Glasgow did similarly. We are told that, until 1858, "Matriculation and enrolment was carried through by the Librarian" in the University of Glasgow.

1703 America

The position in the New World too was not very different. It was only in comparatively recent times that at Harvard or Yale a librarian was appointed who should give his entire time to the care of the library When the Kenyon College, a residential Institution was established in 1826, the duties of the librarian fell upon the Principal's wife Mrs. Chase But a librarian s work was not the only work that was assigned to her "The care of the household affairs fell upon Mrs. Chase She also kept the accounts of the institution and *looked after the library*"[14] (Italics mine).

According to Koch, "It was not long ago that the library was generally thought of as a place for the semi-retirement of an aged professor or an incompetent instructor Even now it is a common occurrence for the librarian to be asked whether he has not something to which a broken down scholar can turn his hand The necessity for training, energy alertness and specific fitness for library work is still not seen by many who even from their casual acquaintance with libraries, should know better what kind of help is required to run a library"

1704 To Teach Use of Books

William Frederick Poole, who was librarian at Newberry in the closing years of the last century is reported to have said before his death, None of the Universities have as yet quite come up to the high standard of having a professor of bibliography but they are moving in that direction" In 1894 President Harper[1] could only hope "some of us will see the day when in every grand division of the University there will be professors of bibliography and methodology whose function will be to teach men books, and how to use them." The same University President was however convinced" that "The equipment of the Library will never be finished until it have upon its staff men and women whose sole work shall be not the care of books, not the cataloguing of books, but the giving of instruction concerning their use."

1705 India

Turning to our own country we are yet to get a Harper as the head of any of our educational institutions. The conditions hardly seem to favour even the entertainment by us of such a hope.

Most of our Colleges have, no doubt begun to include in their "Annual Staff Return" a post under the dignified title "Librarian". Although the [illegible] shown against the entry may imply a deplorable lack of appreciation of the need for a real librarian, who can get the BOOKS USED his true status can be realised only by those who [illegible] served on the staff of a college for some time

1706 College Library

In most of the degree colleges the so-called [illegible] is usually a clerk, and nothing more by training [illegible] and status. He is not given much initiative, nor is he capable of any His time is largely spent in maintaining the files and in carrying them, now and then, to a far-off room occupied by the dignitary—the Professor in-charge-of the Library—to whom he is responsible, and by dancing attendance on whom, he hopes to keep his place. His assistant is usually an attendant whose educational attainments are a little too good for a peon s place. His duty is to dole out books across the barrier at stated hours in the week and otherwise to keep dusting the shelves or trimming the books and the files. There is none on the Library Staff who could link it up with the instructional force of the college, not to speak of following up the course of studies pursued by the college none who could look up material on request, not to speak of collecting the material in advance in anticipation of future demand none who could instruct the ordinary students in the use of the books of the library not to speak of assisting the research students in the methods of using original sources. The Professor-in-charge may do such things—there are exceptional professors-in-charge who actually do such things and all honour to them. But the Professor-in-charge is a Professor and

not a Librarian and he is ordinarily made to understand his duties to begin with the passing of office-copies and end with the signing of fair-copies. On the other hand, one must be really thankful if the Professor does not succumb to the temptation to keep all good new arrivals in his exclusive private custody thus gaining a temporary advantage over the pupils whom he has to teach. If he does, as it infrequently happens, the class of librarians to which he can be appropriately assigned has been carefully defined by the Master of Balliol in the parody of another passage of the *Republic*

And he is an excellent guard of an army who is clever in stealing the plans of the enemy and all their dispositions?

Certainly

Then, whoever is a clever guarder of anything is also a clever thief of it

Apparently

Then if the librarian is clever at guarding books, he is also clever at stealing them?

That is certainly the drift of the argument.

The plight of the Intermediate College libraries is still worse in the matter of Library Staff More often than not, a raw youth, who has just scraped through the School Final Examination is installed in the librarian's *gadi* The Intermediate Colleges usually have a populous school department. This department it is that often relieves the Principal from the awkward predicament of finding work for this youth, to keep him from mischief The daily consolidation of the hourly attendance of the pupils, the monthly writing-up of the nominal rolls in the attendance registers, and the terminal posting of entries in the Secondary School Leaving Certificate books are, as a rule, made his monopoly If they do not engage him fully he must assist the Accountant in the collection of school-fees, or the troublesome task of maintaining the stock of stationery and forms awaits his attention

1707 School Library

But the worst occurs in School Libraries. The School-Libraries have not recognised the need even for a librarian-clerk.

It is usually the drill master or the drawing master that is asked to look after the library—if there is one In a school that I knew the stoutest and cruellest of the staff, was marked out as the guardian angel of the library He was nicknamed Mohammad of Ghazni, in honour of the number of his unsuccessful attempts at Matriculation And he proved to be too zealous a guardian When an inquisitive child of the school picked up courage to approach him and ask for a book for "extra-reading" it was late in the evening. He was dead tired after the day s task of teaching for six hours.

"What do you want?" thundered Mohammad of Ghazni, almost scorching the child with his reddish eyes.

"*Peeps into many lands Japan* Sir" stammered the child

"How many marks did you get in the last Quarterly?

"Fo—Forty two out of fifty Sir"

Go and get the remaining eight marks before you can think of "extra-reading,"

came forth the emphatic injunction in company with the righthand fist of the Mohammad of Ghazni, which settled on the forehead of the quivering child with painful force The child ran away sobbing—never never to return to the library

1708 Heart of the School

If the school believed that BOOKS WERE FOR THE USE of children, would it have consigned them to the care of such a frightening monster? On the other hand, would it not have put them in charge of a charming Children s Librarian, whose specialised training and sympathetic outlook, would have attracted all the children of the school to what is now rightly called, "the heart of the school?" Then, how different would have been the reminiscences of the children of the school! Consider for example the pleasant recollections of a New World contemporary of our sobbing child. "I can almost say that I owe to the library the greatest mental stimulus of my life. The picture of that Librarian s intelligent grey-eyed face

the very odour of the library room itself are indelibly impressed in my memory Personally my debt to the library as an institution and to librarians as a class is a greater one than I can ever hope to pay even with everlasting gratefulness." [19]

171 Library Staff and Scholarship

Even after the First Law had succeeded in convincing people of the need for a full timed and special staff for the library it took a long time for library authorities to appreciate the qualities and qualifications essential in a Library Staff to carry out all the mandates of that Law The struggle experienced by the First Law in establishing proper standards for librarianship was even more strenuous than that experienced in fixing the proper Library Hours. Its predecessor "Books Are for Preservation" had left behind it many a hardened tradition. Tradition, as is well known, is obstinately indifferent to reasoning of any type. She would not easily listen to the arguments of the First Law Analogy however suggestive, could not carry conviction to her A grain dealer it is conceded, should know about grains of all sorts. A draper should know everything about apparel. An insurance agent cannot be a success if he does not know all about life tables and their significance. No one would be admitted as a teacher unless he knows the subject he has to teach. But it took a long time to realise that a librarian—who has to deal with learning, who has to find for each person his appropriate book, who has to persuade people to benefit by the knowledge treasured up in books, who has, in fact, to help the life long education of all and not merely that of the beardless urchins—must possess scholarship of a wide range

1711 England

In his humorous retrospect of the "Early Days," Mr Frank Pacy the late Secretary of the British Library Association, refers to certain interesting impressions produced by the scholarship of the early British librarians. "The man who showed us the library knew nothing about

anything." "The Westminster Librarian not only looked like a chimney sweep, but was very deaf." Fortunately those days are gone. Nowadays, nobody in the West questions the place of Librarianship among the learned professions.

1712 India

But, in our country few people realise even to-day the need for a scholarly staff in a library. Not long ago I received, from a high-placed educational officer a pathetic note of recommendation saying, "The bearer you will find, is very aged. He appeared for the S.S.L.C. Examination more than a dozen times. There is no prospect of his passing it in this *Janma*. How can he get even a clerk's post? But I am interested in him. Can you take him on your staff? That is the only chance for him." When the Madras University Library was started, one of the first appointments in "the superior service" of the library went to a peon of the Museum Office for the simple reason that he was an honest fellow and that there was no other way in which his emoluments could be increased! Perhaps, the precedent for this was that the Janitor of the Bodleian Library was made its sub-librarian in 1712.[14] Similarly when a District Board permitted a Union Chairman to appoint a part time librarian for his Union Library on a monthly allowance of Rs. 10, the Chairman is said to have promptly given that allowance to his personal attendant, since he was a serviceable fellow and would jealously guard the library. A few weeks ago a learned professor born in Britain and serving in India, laid down the dictum that the academic qualification of a library clerk need not be even as high as that of an attendant in a Chemist's shop.

1713 An Anecdote

But more amusing is the inference that a librarian cannot be a scholar. Once, a prominent official in an up-country town was asked to receive me, a mere librarian, as his guest. His embarrassment could only be relieved by one of his junior clerks offering to put me up in his own house. However quite

ignorant of this arrangement, I went straight to the official s house The appearance of the suffix, M.A. to my name instantly made his feeling of embarrassment give place to one of amazement. And I was accepted! By the time we reached the stage of post prandial *pan supari* the amazement had transformed itself into pity Soaked with sympathy the learn ed official condoled with the Master of Arts for the fate that had overtaken him He cursed the hard times that had driven a man of my ability and scholarship to the predicament of having to mind a library But this sincere pity was overpower ed by righteous indignation when he discovered that my salary was higher than his own and that the authorities had wasted over a librarian s post not only a Master of Arts of the country but also such a huge slice of its revenue. But, my concern is that this learned official appears to be the type rather than the exception

1714 Scholarship as much as Executive Ability

The learned official s opinion comes naturally to those that seldom use a library and have never felt the influence of a well-conducted modern library But every person that makes a frequent and serious use of a library and " has worked up a subject " once in his life expects to find on the library staff at least one member who speaks his language and knows the bibliography and the method of his subject. The Presi dent of a Western University once remarked " Every person in charge of a library must be capable of teaching. Executive ability is no doubt necessary in a librarian but, unless it is coupled with wide scholarship it is not at all sufficient."

1715 Scholarship in Mark Pattison s Sense

What kind of a scholar should the library recruit for its staff? Certainly not the scholar pictured in the comic papers as one without commonsense, nor one of the pedant brand who is unduly formal and subtle nor one of the specialist type who learns " more and more about less and less. The Library requires on its staff persons who have scholarship in

Mark Pattison's sense, *i e* judgment, discipline and scientific habit. Their speciality must be bibliography and their attitude must be that of a student In the words of the Public Libraries Committee of Great Britain, they must have a sufficient knowledge of and sympathy with all branches of knowledge to be able to do justice to them in the selection of books, to give the readers the guidance of which they stand in need and to divine in the quickest manner the place where the information sought by the readers can be found. They must be capable of using books as tools not only for the dissemination of knowledge but also for the extension of the boundaries of knowledge

1716 University Degree

It is on account of this that a University Degree is considered a normal entrance requirement by the library school of the West and the highest University degrees are required from those who aspire to the highest places in library service This also explains the recent practice, in go-ahead libraries, of attracting to the Library Staff persons with ripe professorial experience as part-time Reference librarians. It is from this point of view that Arnold Bennett wrote that if libraries "spent less on books and more on an educated Staff far better results would be obtained It is not books that lack in the libraries It is the key to their effective employment. That key is the individualities and attainments of Librarians and their staffs."

172 Library Staff and Professional Training

But mere scholarship cannot make a librarian. Many people think that because they can read books, they are qualified to be librarians Such ignorance is well illustrated by the anecdote of MacAlister narrated by Augustine Birrel [10]

1721 Ignorance

"Only the day before yesterday on the Calais boat, I was introduced to a world-famed military officer who when he

understood I had some connection with Library Association, exclaimed Why you re just the man I want! I have been anxious of late about my man old Atkins. You see the old boy with a stoop sheltering behind the funnel Poor old beggar! quite past his work, but as faithful as a dog. It has just occurred to me that if you could shove him into some snug library in the country I d be awfully grateful to you. His one fault is a fondness for reading, and so a library would be just the thing.'"

"The usual titled lady also turned up at the Conference This time she was recommending her late cook for the post of librarian, alleging on her behalf the same strange trait of character—her fondness for reading."

1722 Analogy in Ignorance

The pathos attendant on such ignorance is only comparable to what was felt when an innocent lad applied for a "Mathematics Reader s" post in one of our Universities, basing his claim on the ample qualification that he had just taken his B.A. (Pass) degree in mathematics and that he was "fond of reading"

1723 Wrong Notions

But the superior arrogance of those, who can more than read books, who feel competent to criticise literary style or have gained some acquaintance with a special department of knowledge, is more annoying. They imagine that anything in a library beyond their scholarship, is manual, clerical and rather beneath their efforts, not knowing that they are yet only good material out of which librarians might be made Not infrequently one comes across a bumptious upstart, who has the cheek to say "What is there in *Indexing?*" meaning by indexing, *Cataloguing* One only wishes that he was allowed to try his hand at indexing for a couple of months to discover for himself what a mess he is capable of making Another a venerable old man may say "What is the training that is necessary to hand over books across the barrier? In my

days, so and so did it so admirably and he had no ghost of a professional training. " He has only to be asked " How many volumes did the library of his days have on its shelves? How many of them refused to leave the shelves even once in his long life time? How many volumes were added to his library in a year? And how many of his learned contemporaries ever knew of a library or its purpose? Another a specialist, quite jealous of the right of his line of experts, may make a flippant remark, That is not the way to classify This is the way to catalogue Reference-work is not in your province It is the preserve of the Professors " and so on One has to tell him, " Mr Specialist, I am a specialist in my line as much as you are, Sir in yours. If your field is clouded in mystery and needs prolonged formal initiation, so is mine Remember what you will think of any uninitiated Tom Dick or Harry who attempts to poke his nose into your sphere "

1724 Handicap of New Profession

The fact is that so long as the task of a library was to PRESERVE BOOKS, there was no need for giving any special training to the care taker librarian. The moment BOOKS ARE FOR USE stepped into the place of BOOKS ARE FOR PRESERVATION Librarianship was invested with several tasks, which required a well thought-out professional training, with as much grind and as much technique as that required for any other learned profession such as Medicine, Engineering or Law A Doctor an Engineer and a Lawyer will flare up into righteous wrath if anybody ventures to question the need for their professional training. But the same Doctor Engineer and Lawyer would naively question the need for professional training for a librarian. That is due simply to the fact that Medicine, Engineering and Law are *old* professions which have cleanly forgotten the struggle they had in establishing their need for specialised training while Librarianship is a *new* profession It is natural for people in a privileged position to fight every inch before admitting a stranger to the same privilege. *This fight will not end unless and until*

the present-day Doctor Engineer and Lawyer are replaced by those that have had, from their youth onwards, the pleasure and benefit of being served by a technically trained profession of librarians.

1725 Great Britain

This may look like a vicious circle. But with the rousing chorus of the new song BOOKS ARE FOR USE people have already broken this vicious circle elsewhere and we may take advantage of it Great Britain had long ago decided

(i) to educate public opinion to demand that trained librarians should be the rule and not the exception

(ii) to enforce on library authorities their responsibility for giving due weight to training in their selection of candidates, and for giving facilities to their staff to continue their training, both technical and educational while in their services.[18]

1726 Other Lands

America has gone ahead and established fourteen accredited institutions for the teaching of Library Science The Ministries of Education of most of the countries of Continental Europe have taken upon themselves the task of providing the country with librarians of proper professional attainments. Japan had long ago established its own library school while China has the Boone s School for Librarians. What is more important, in some of the Western countries the Library Profession has long ago passed the stage of infancy and reached the ripe age of throwing out several branches, which show a tendency to develop such independence and individuality that, ere long, we shall have several semi-independent library professions, spreading round their primitive stem even as the pillar roots shooting forth profusely from the branches of the giant banyan-tree appear to be outside the tree but are still of it, giving shelter to thousands of birds

1727 Beginning in India

We live in hope A small beginning is being made even in our land A seedling of the species Summer School of Library Science, was carefully tended for two years in the nursery of the Madras Library Association. When it was fit for transplantation it has found its way into the fertile garden of the Madras University It can not only tend it with greater ease, but can also find a market for its fruits. May that seedling grow from more to more! And may its harvest of fruits enrich the land from the Himalayas to Cape Comorin'!

173 Library Staff and Status

The next effort of the First Law on behalf of the Library Staff had to be directed towards the removal of another incubus bequeathed by the concept Books Are for Preservation Even after a learned technically trained staff came to be recruited, the library authorities blinded by tradition would not perceive the need for revising the scale of salary that was originally designed but to attract and retain the caretaker librarian and the clerk-librarian It may even be that that scale had become inferior to that of a head-peon or a *maistry* or a wireman. Though such an anomaly would not prick the conscience of the authorities, it was a matter of serious concern for the First Law Such a scale would by no means attract the right type of men. Even if it did, the person, that it was able to pull out from the army of the unemployed, would be merely marking time, with his mind and heart elsewhere. Even the little experience he might gather would soon be lost to the library as he would take the earliest opportunity to step out. For a generation or two, in the early days of the First Law when the library authorities consisted mostly of persons who had never come under the influence of a library whose guiding motto was Books Are for Use' when the work of the Library Staff could be neither appreciated nor evaluated properly it was indeed an uphill task for the First Law to convince the authorities of the need for fixing an equitable scale of salary

1731 Dangers of Under paid Staff

The First Law knew that a discontented staff was a social danger Even apart from such a general slogan, it realised that an under paid staff could not work up the enthusiasm necessary for the successful carrying out of its mission. Even if they did the enthusiasm the zeal and the solicitude of a poorly paid staff would not produce the desired result The words of the poor however beneficial are seldom heard.* हेतुमत्प्रमाणयुक्तं वाक्यं न श्रूयते दरिद्रस्य। They would be put down as interested officiousness although the contempt induced by their low salary in the reader's mind would recoil on the reader himself One may say let the reader hang himself But to that extent the use of the books of the library would suffer and *that* is a matter for serious thought for those who believe in the First Law

1732 Status and Money

Rightly or wrongly human society has evolved its Economics on a Money basis. An unsophisticated scrutiny of the foundations of the Theory of Value may disclose to the embarrassment of many that the feet of Mammon are made of clay But, what is the good? Are the majority of men guided by the ultimate value of things? "An emphatic no" is the answer supplied by that astute Professor of Worldly Wisdom Bhartrihari ** "On the other hand" says he "He who has wealth is believed to have the bluest blood running in his veins He is taken for a scholar He passes for the most well informed He is considered the most discriminate. His power of speech is praised as unequalled. And his figure is described as the most handsome. It is the gold in his possession that settles the quality of every one of his attributes"

यस्यास्ति वित्तं स नरः कुलीनः स पण्डितः
स श्रुतिमान् गुणज्ञः।
स एव वक्ता स च दर्शनीयः
सर्वे गुणाः काञ्चनमाश्रयन्ति॥

With reason may ye wele se,
That Peny wyll mayster be,
Prove nowe man of mode

He makyth the fals to be soende
And ryght puttys to the grounde [88]

1733 Pay the Staff Well

Thus, money rules the world. It determines the status of men as well as the value of the services rendered by them. Unfortunately people are prepared to benefit by a service only in proportion to the value set on it by money Thus, a famished staff will render the efforts of the First Law as futile as paucity of books or pauerty of readers In the trinity of the library—books, staff and readers—the richness of the staff in worldly goods appears to be as necessary as the richness of the other two in number and variety if the law BOOKS ARE FOR USE is to be translated into practice It will have to be so so long as men's status is left to the capricious and arbitrary rule of Mammon "Therefore, pay the library staff well," says the First Law

1734 Deferred Benefit

An important handicap that is attendant on library service, in getting what it deserves, is that the benefits of its service are deferred A doctor gets his fifteen rupees for crossing the threshold once since people believe that the life or death of the patient at the next moment is dependent on his service A lawyer gets his hundred rupees for standing on his legs for one hour since people believe that the ownership of property at the next minute is dependent on his service. But the benefit of the service of the library staff like the benefit of the service of the teacher is not discernible at the next moment—not even in the next year or decade. Its benefit, although more universal and lasting, will come to the surface only a generation or two later when the people, that had to open their purse and pay for it, are dead and forgotten. This is a distressing attribute, with which God seems to have invested it, perhaps when in a mood of wilful mischief

1735 Progress in the West

In spite of it, the First Law has already nearly succeeded in the Western countries in overcoming the effects of such a mischief Western Society is now prepared to agree that a University Librarian must have the status and salary of a Dean of the University that a College Librarian must get a treatment similar to that of a professor that a School Libra rian is in no way inferior to a Teacher and the Librarian of a city is entitled to the same pay the same rights and the same privileges as those of the other officers of the city such as the Engineer the Health Officer the Revenue Officer and the Educational Officer

1736 Appeal to India

When will India fall into line with her Western sisters? Will she benefit by the experiences of her sisters or will she close her eyes to them and proceed herself to tread every inch of that old, weary path? If she does, her children can never never overtake their cousins, in their onward march Let us hope and pray that she won t take that fatal course but straight away plunge into the foremost crest of the wave of progress, triumphantly put her librarians on a par with those of other countries, and thus add to the chance of the First Law of Library Science bringing the long-neglected children of India, to the same position of vantage as that Law has been able to secure for the other nations of the world Amen!

1737 In Medieval India

Some interesting light is thrown, on the place the Libraries occupied in the educational institutions of medieval India by *Inscriptions of Nagai* published as No 8 of the Hydera bad Archaeological Series.[17]

Nagai is a village near Wadi and it is said to be the site of an old city which has now disappeared leaving behind it several monuments and inscriptions of great historical value

A Kannada inscription in the sixty-pillared temple called Aruvathu Kambada Gudi of that village, said to be of the

date corresponding to the 24th December 1058, A D gives an account of the public institutions founded by Madusudana, a famous general and minister of the Chalukya King, Raya Narayana One of the institutions founded by him was a residential college called Chatikasala for two hundred scholars studying the Vedas, and fifty-two studying the Sastras. The institute was manned by three Vedic teachers, three Sastra teachers and six librarians (Sarasvatibhandarikas)

If the appointment of as many as six librarians is significant at all, perhaps one may reasonably infer that the Library attached to the college should have been of considerable size and usefulness. One is further tempted to compare this mediaeval college library with our present-day college libraries which are so notoriously indifferent and grudging both in improving their book-resources and in providing them with the necessary human aids for helping the proper exploitation of their resources by their teachers and students.

A latter verse in the same inscription shows that Madusudana was far ahead of us in fixing the status of college librarians. For his allotment of land to the teachers and librarians in lieu of their salary was as follows —

48 Units (Matter) of land to the Professor of Prabhakara darsana

35 Units to the Professor of Bhatta darsana.

30 Units to the Professor of Nyaya

20 Units to the Professor of Vedangas

30 Units to each of the six librarians and so on

This shows that Madusudana has treated the professors and librarians almost equally and it may further be inferred that their academic qualifications also should have been of the same order

The present-day educational institutions of the West, which make a correct evaluation of the place of libraries give professorial status to their librarians and, in return insist upon high academic qualifications in them. It is earnestly hoped that the standard set by our illustrious countryman Madusudana which is in such close agreement with the present-day

practice in other countries, will soon be reached by our Universities, Colleges, and Schools.

174 LIBRARY STAFF AND THEIR RESPONSIBILITY

Thus, the primary task of the First Law was to educate the library authorities, with regard to Library Staff. We have seen that it performed this task step by step in four stages. First it convinced them of the need for a special staff, then for a learned staff, next for a trained staff and finally for a well-paid staff. Its second task in this matter has been to tune the staff itself to the proper pitch. It would, indeed, be a tragedy if the Library Staff themselves forget, Sugriva-like, the very noble cause which secured them their scholarship, training, emoluments and status.

> பெறும் அரசும் இதுபெற்ற உதவியும்
> இற கிளைஞரொடு சேனையில் இருக்கார்;
> அற மறந்தனர், அறவு கேட்க ஆம்
> மற அறிந்திலர், வாழியில் வைந்தருக் [1]

The plums of office are like the apple of Eden. And those, that are in their enjoyment, stand in need of a periodic searching of heart, in the light of the indignant words of the sons of Kausalya and Sumitra.[1] Every moment the Library Staff *should remember* that "BOOKS ARE FOR USE." At no time should they lapse into the mood of their ancestor at the Bodleian, of whom it is said "He was a very good librarian in some ways, but he hated anyone getting at his books."[2] They should never forget that in libraries books are collected for USE, prepared for USE, kept for USE and served for USE. The endless technical processes and routine—getting suggestions from experts, acquiring by purchase or gift, accessioning, classifying, cataloguing, shelf registering, shelving, charging, and discharging—all these are carried on only FOR USE. *To fulfil this paramount mission of the First Law to* the fullest extent the Library Staff should not only remind themselves of that mission constantly, not only acquire the scholarship and professional training necessary but also develop certain attitudes and interests which are equally indispensable.

175 LIBRARY STAFF AND READERS

First comes the attitude towards Readers. It may seem rather unnecessary to have to say that Readers form an essen tial part of a live library's business But, unfortunately there are some who cannot get out of the habit of looking upon Readers as a nuisance. Others there are, who would just allow some Readers to step in, provided they remember that they are there by sufferance and have no right to demand anything, least of all, any comfort conducive to study There are still others who won t mind paying some attention to the needs of the Readers, provided it won t interfere with the meticulous discharge of their administrative routine Their motto is Administration first, everything els including *Readers next About a century and a half ago when the* First Law was not widely known a Library with such an outlook would have perhaps been tolerated In fact it was unfortunately so

1751 Anachronism

For about half a century from 1763 the Bodleian Library of Oxford was in the hands of the Rev John Price of Jesus College Quite early in his library-career captain Cook s *Voyages* was published in 1771 and there was quite a demand for the work But our Librarian Price promptly loaned his library copy to a friend of his and asked him to keep it as long as possible, lest he should be perpetually plagued by enquiries after it Librarian Price would fain have had a library without readers. In fact, it is said of him that he discouraged readers by neglect and incivility In spite of this, he was allowed to rule the Bodleian, without any let or hind rance, for full half a century and to instal in his *gadi* his own son-in-law who was a chip of the old block and managed to keep it with equal thoroughness for another half a century But Librarian Price is an anachronism to-day A modern library cannot exist without Readers. The neglect and incivility have crossed the floor so to speak. For it is no longer the Reader that has to put up meekly with the incivility of

the Library Staff but, unfortunately it is the Library Staff that has silently to put up with the incivility that emanates, occasionally from inconsiderate bumptious Readers.

1752 Welcome and Attention

The library has now to develop the methods of a modern shop It is true that, in a great many libraries, it may not be possible to have enough assistants just waiting around for someone to come in. They will have queries to look up letters to answer catalogue-cards to write and a thousand and one other things to do But, even so it must be a rule that the moment a Reader enters the library whatever is in hand must be stopped instantly and the impression given to the Reader should be one of welcome and attention

1753 Cheerfulness and Courtesy

We know it is very annoying if just as one is in the middle of adding up a column of figures, someone pops in and it is more annoying if one finds that he simply wants to browse round and does not want anything in particular But these are the little things that are sent to try us we must keep a cheerful outlook and on no account show any discourtesy It is an excellent thing to remember that the Customer loveth a cheerful assistant.

1754 Wrong Behaviour

The conduct of the library assistants should on no account give room for gossip of the following type "We went into that palatial, nice looking library not long ago There was one human figure with the irritating odour of Eucalyptus oil about him, in charge of the library at the moment, doubled up over the counter table, apparently addressing envelopes. No notice was taken of us at all when we entered and it was quite a few minutes before that figure let us know that it was alive. When it did, its expression so obviously said, "I wish people would not come in when I am obliged to get this job done " but it actually said "What can I do for you?" without getting up

from the seat. By the time we had stated our wants and it was able to say "Sorry that book is on loan," we were not at all sure that it *was* sorry or even that it knew the book we wanted and we wondered whether the book was not on the shelf all the time

1755 Right Behaviour

On the other hand, when Readers go home it must be possible for them to say "The young lad who received us at that library had such a bewitching smile that it brightened up the whole room, and we felt quite certain that we had come into the right place Everything is made so comfortable in that library Any day I shall prefer to spend my off-time there" *Every reader should feel the presence of the radiant personality of the librarian.* Krishna-like, the librarian should now and again be by the side of every reader He should not settle down in his seat nor should he escape into the retiring room He should move among readers he should be ever accessible to them.

176 Library Staff and Psychology

Next to being welcomed, the readers must be sized up and humoured To be successful in this task, the librarian must be a psychologist To go a step further every person on the Library Staff must also be a psychologist if the best results are to be obtained. Does this mean that every person on the Library Staff should take a formal course in the study of the theory of psychology? Far from it, though it may not do much harm Even a child learns, by observation, the particular kind of tactics that is necessary to have its own way with parents and teachers. So also every person on the Library Staff, who gets innumerable opportunities to observe people, should acquire, by practice a working knowledge of psychology and the ability to understand human nature. It is the librarian's job to handle every type of reader not merely just those that are pliant. The really successful librarian *must be able to handle difficult readers.* Otherwise his books

will be left unused to that extent. How often the librarian attributes his failure to the reader being unreasonable! Knowledge of books is only half the battle. It is almost as fatal not to know the difference between Tom and Dick as not to know that between Newton and Einstein. To handle the difficult reader successfully one has to understand him. Does he growl? If so does he mean it or is it merely a pose? Is he really ill-natured or is only his manner unpleasant? One will be turning away many a potential reader from the counter if one shirks the problem of the visitor who is unreasonable, unpleasant, fussy or super-critical. Success can be secured by our accuracy in quickly sizing up the easy ones and by the patience and intelligence we show in studying and working with difficult ones.

1761 Example

A few years ago a turbanned Indian happened to be on floor duty in the Reference Department of an English Library. A top-hatted Englishman came in with the usual familiarity but was dismayed to find the outlandish figure in the staff-enclosure.

The Indian librarian offered his help carefully suppressing the feeling induced by this look of dismay.

"No, thanks" came out the polite reply and the Englishman went from shelf to shelf.

After a few minutes, the Indian approached him with another "Can I help you?"

"Thank you. Where are the books on Temperance?" was the only reluctant response.

Then book after book of the temperance region was opened and closed in quick succession. The watch was pulled out every minute from the pocket. He was evidently in a hurry. He had not got his reference and it was already 4-45. Poor man! "If you can tell me what exactly you want about temperance perhaps I may be able to help you," thus came another offer from the Indian on floor-duty.

This time, with his head turned the other way the

top-hatted gentleman said, "I have to preside at a temperance meeting. I want something for my introductory speech. Can you help me? My train is at quarter past five"

Instantly a volume of the encyclopædia which was in another part of the room, gave him the something he wanted and he went away with a profusion of thanks scintillating from his smiling lips

1762 Overcome Shyness of Readers

"What is this queer behaviour due to?" was the problem raised by the new reference librarian, when the library was closing for the day "Shyness, my friend shyness was the solution given by an experienced colleague, who added, "If you want to be a reference librarian you must learn to overcome not only *your shyness* but also the shyness of *others*!"

1763 Work With the Reader

A common situation is that a visitor comes in you have never seen him before he states his wants you show him the books you think will suit him. All the time you must *study him to see if your first impression is correct or if you* must revise it Above all, you should not impose your ideas, your likes and dislikes on him If you offer him the new large-paper edition of Vanbrough and he says, I don t like *Vanbrough He is awful it is better not to press the point* unduly but to endeavour to pass on to the next shelf Don t argue about it Alas! we are all human and in trying to prove that we are right, we lose sight of our main object which is to help the visitor in finding out what he can use with pleasure and profit. Work with the reader Don t work on him You can lead him. But you cannot drag him. Work with him on his own ground. If he is vain play that quality If he talks about himself listen with respect but don t let him go too far from the point, *viz.*, the choice of books. If he is unreasonable and fussy show him as early as possible that you can be assertive and that you know your rights and powers. *But don t yield to the temptation of*

settling down in pleasant conversation for its own sake how ever agreeable it may be.

1764 Two Groups of Readers

Visitors fall into two groups those who want immediate attention so that they may be on their way as soon as possi ble and those that want to make unhurried selection without too much assistance. Errors in diagnosis at this point create an immediate and lasting unfavourable impression. The mis take lies in using a stereotyped greeting to all visitors. An answer should be sought to the question— Into which group the visitor falls"—and he should be treated in accordance with the analysis.

1765 Special Branch of Psychology

"A regular Polonius come to advice! one might jeer But a slight reflection will show how much disservice would be done to the First Law of Library Science by overlooking some of these apparently commonplace precepts. Any libra rian who has had to do with a large staff will recollect how often, in his career he has had the necessity to preach them to his colleagues. If there is a doubt that the testimony of such a librarian may be an interested testimony here are the weighty words which have been deliberately embodied in a Report Presented by the President of the Board of Educa tion to Parliament by Command of His Majesty in May 1927 "Willingness to give help patience in the face of stu-pidity control of temper under provocation must be inculcat ed in every assistant and attendant in a library while the higher rank need to cultivate a study of human nature which may almost claim the dignity of a special branch of psychology The human factor is of such supreme importance in library administration that schools of librarian-ship and courses of instruction may well be asked to devote a portion of their attention to giving advice on this topic."[11]

177 Library Staff and Personal Service

The pleasure of understanding human nature and handling difficult cases should not, however be regarded as the beginning and end of librarianship They are only means to an end. What is a library? A library is a collection of books kept for use Librarianship, then, is connecting a user and a book Hence the very life of a library is in the *personal service* given to the people At any rate, that is what obtains in the libraries that whole-heartedly believe that Books Are for Use. This First Law of Library Science is a hard task master Once you admit its dictum you cannot escape the logical conclusion to which it will drag you. It will say for example, "If the library Keeps Books for Use, the task of the librarian is not to dump down a mass of books and tell readers to help themselves. Nor is it to forcibly feed them on books of your choice It is to help them and to help any one is to co-operate with him in carrying out his own plans and wishes—to help him to help himself" That is the kind of *personal service* that the First Law expects of the Library Staff if they mean to help it in its mission It is a noteworthy fact that individual requests for such *personal service* are increasing. Books selected to fit individual needs and accompanied by tactful guidance should be the response to such requests

1771 Varied Individual Needs

Some may wish to broaden their outlook on life some may wish to supplement their formal education at school some may wish to extend it by entry into new fields of knowledge some may wish to gather data of a particular type others may wish to read for the pure joy of reading. To such varied individual needs, the Library Staff must attend with equal efficiency To render such *personal service* the knowledge and experience of the Library Staff should be such that they will be able to recommend, with due discrimination suitable books on the same subject to men and women who differ widely in ability education and purpose For example

everybody wants to read about Relativity and we have scores of books on Relativity. Will any and all of these books suit the requirements of any reader whatever? Can Lodge's *Relativity*, Durell's *Readable relativity*, Haldane's *Reign of relativity*, Einstein's *Meaning of relativity*, Russell's *A B C of relativity*, Whitehead's *Principles of relativity*, Eddington's *Mathematical theory of relativity* and Birkhoff's *Origin, nature and influence of relativity* appeal similarly to all? One may be too trashy for a particular person but that may be the only book that brings Relativity to the level of the comprehension of some. Another book may be too speculative but that may be the only aspect of Relativity that may appeal to some. A third may be too mystical but there are souls that revel in mysticism. The treatment in yet another book may throw a challenge to the ripest senior wrangler but that may be the very hard nut that the senior wrangler has been longing to catch to exercise his powers of cracking. It is this wilderness of print confusing in its magnitude even to those who deal with it constantly on the one hand and the equally bewildering variety of the tastes and capacities of the readers on the other hand that make the *personal service* of the Library Staff indispensable to effect contact between the right reader and the right book at the right time and in the right manner.

1772 Community Intelligence Service

As William S. Learned puts it "The library of the future will be a community intelligence service. It would require a more highly specialised personnel which must command all the College teachers' familiarity with the literature of a strictly limited field *plus* the power which the college teacher may and often does lack completely, namely the power speedily to read his applicant's mental equipment and point of view and to sense intuitively the character of his personal need."[11] To fulfil the demands of the First Law in this matter of *personal service* the Library Staff should even be prepared to run to specialists and experts whenever necessary for advice regarding the books that can be recommended to readers who

may be interested in the pursuit or enjoyment of abstruse branches of knowledge.

1773 What Makes a Library Big

In addition they must have personality tact, enthusiasm and sympathy. In fact, the relationship between the librarian and the reader should be the easiest and the most agreeable not of a superior telling an inferior what books he ought to read not of a teacher instructing a child, but of two equals exchanging points of view and information on books. In a word, the librarian should be friend philosopher and guide to every one who comes to use the library. It is such sympathetic *personal service* and "such hospitality that makes a library big, not its size" as the Poet Rabindra Nath Tagore puts it.

178 LIBRARY STAFF AND SOCIAL SERVICE

The logical outcome of the concept BOOKS ARE FOR USE is such a high order of ungrudging *personal service*. It can be easily seen that it is only persons, with an irrepressible inward urge for *social service* that can prove to be librarians, reaching the high standard set by the First Law. It can be seen that neither scholarship nor professional training, nor high *salary can by themselves make a librarian, however necessary* they may be. Scholarship may lead to phlegmatic exclusiveness, professional training may result in arrogant self-complacency and high salary may engender stand-offishness. They can all be bent to serve the purpose of the First Law if and only if there is that mental set —inborn or cultivated— that mental set which moved our Saint Tayumanavar to burst forth in rapturous strains pleading with Him who is the Greatest of the Great.

அன்பர் பணி செய்ய என்னை ஆளாக்கி விட்டு விட்டால்
இன்பநிலை தானே வந்து எய்தும் பராபரமே

"If you but give me the fitness to serve my fellow-beings, the state of delight will come to me of its own accord."

1781 Pioneer Librarian

Such a *delight in social service* is necessary for any librarian It is absolutely indispensable in one who has to turn the first sod of the library movement in any society or country The following pithy words of Edward Edwards, one of the pioneers of the Library Movement of the 19th Century England enumerating the difficulties and the rewards of a pioneer librarian will be a source of consolation and encouragement to many a Library Staff of to-day in this part of the world

He must find comfort amidst the discouragements of ill appreciated work The labour that has to be performed under the direction of men who can neither understand its difficulties, nor estimate its results, is but likely to be at length rendered grudgingly It becomes increasingly hard to keep in mind that applause is no right aim of work that the pursuit which is much affected by immediate rewards, or the want of them, must be either unworthy itself or be unworthily carried on *But there is ample ground for steady and cheerful* perseverance Every step that is taken to extend the usefulness of a library —to diffuse far and wide the best thought of the best thinkers —carries one mine the more beneath the social abuses which have so often placed a prevailing influence over public institutions within the grasp of cunning money-grubs or of noisy stump-orators."[44]

18 Flirt Not with Fruits

But there is no need to invoke the aid of that fiction of a mine or to hope for a reward, however remote. The FIRST LAW would say Plant your cheerfulness and perseverance in my words, BOOKS ARE FOR USE. Your duty is to serve with books. Service is your sphere. Not rewards. Falter not. Flirt not with fruits. *Go forward uninfluenced* by any reward, real or fictitious, remote or immediate To the librarian, the celebrated words of the Lord Sri Krishna have a special appeal

Thy right is to action alone and never to fruits.
Let not the fruit of action be the motive.
Nor let thyself be attached to inaction.

कर्मण्येवाधिकारस्ते मा फलेषु कदाचन।
मा कर्मफलहेतुर्भूः मा ते संगोऽस्त्वकर्मणि॥

CHAPTER 2

SECOND LAW AND ITS STRUGGLE

20 Introduction

IN the last Chapter we traced the slow emergence of the First Law and examined in a brief manner its effect on the method of keeping books, library location, library hours, library furniture and library staff The changes brought about by the First Law in all these matters were of a fundamental character If the final effect of the First Law should be described in one word, that word is *revolution* Once the outlook was revolutionised, other things followed in course of time

201 ENUNCIATION

The Second Law of Library Science comes on the heels of the First Law to carry this revolution a step further If the First Law replaced the concept 'BOOKS ARE FOR PRESERVATION the Second Law widens the concept BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW' If the revolutionary cry of the First Law was BOOKS ARE FOR USE the revolutionary cry of the Second Law is BOOKS ARE FOR ALL. If the approach of the First Law was from the side of books, the approach of the Second Law is from the side of users of books. If the First Law vitalised the library the Second Law magnifies the library into a nation wide problem. If the First Law threw open the existing libraries, the Second Law plants new libraries and brings about the culture of new species of libraries If there was reluctance to act up to the First Law there is, in the initial stages, positive opposition to the Second Law Thus, the revolution brought about by the Second Law is of a more advanced nature and brings humanity nearer the goal.

202 POTENCY

EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK! What a volume of ideas rests in a potential state in these six words of but seven syllables! How exacting will be the task of carrying out these ideas! What a variety of vested interests is arrayed in opposition against any attempt to put these ideas into force! These points require careful examination in a study of the Second Law

203 EDUCATIONAL VALUE

It may be convenient to start from the very beginning. What are libraries? Libraries are collections of books built for a special purpose What is that purpose? USE is the answer supplied by the First Law What is the use of books? Books give information they educate They may also give solace they may furnish a harmless means of recreation Let us first concentrate on their educational value If books are tools of education, the law EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK presupposes the concept EDUCATION FOR EVERY PERSON This lays bare the fundamental issue. The history of the answer to the question "Is every person entitled to education?" will show how the Second Law too has been in actual practice seldom borne in mind by library authorities

21 The Classes and the Masses

211 ANCIENT DAYS

It is customary to begin all academic history from Aristotle. What is Aristotle's answer to this fundamental question? "It is the intention of nature to make bodies of slaves and freemen different from each other And since this is true with respect to the body it is still more just to determine in the same manner when we consider the soul." These plausible premises led Aristole to the characteristic conclusion that a slave can have no deliberative faculty" The result of this rigorous reasoning was that "while Athens and Sparta offered education to freemen, nine-tenths of the population were excluded from the privilege of learning." In translating

this in terms of books, we find that BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW was the ruling concept and that the Second Law had no recognition Even in Rome, which heralded the establishment of municipal and state schools, the privilege of learning rarely crossed the occupational and income lines

212 MIDDLE AGES

The narrowness of the Middle Ages is described by Margaret Hodgen in the following words The spirit of exclu sion which the land-owning classes asserted towards ambitious villeins bound for the church the church toward laymen seeking intellectual independence the merchants towards outsiders looking to enjoy profits of commercial enterprises, was in turn asserted by all toward the educational aspirations of the poor We are even told that vassal fathers were punished for allowing vassal sons to attend school " [4]

213 EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

The spirit of exclusion persisted for centuries. Here is a specimen of eighteenth century opinion "To make the Society happy and People easy under the meanest circum stances, it is requisite that great numbers of them should be ignorant as well as Poor The Welfare and Felicity there fore of every State and Kingdom, require that the knowledge of the Working Poor should be confined within the Verge of their occupations and never extended (as to things visible) beyond what relates to their Calling. The more a Shepherd, a Plowman or any other Peasant knows of the World, and the things that are Foreign to his Labour or Employment, the less fit he 'll be to go through the Fatigues and Hardships of it with Cheerfulness and Content. Reading, Writing and Arithmetic are very pernicious to the Poor who are forced to get their Daily Bread by their Daily Labour What a benevolent dispensation! What a show of inevitableness in this eighteenth century reasoning! With such ideas running rampant, one can easily imagine how effectively the concept

BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW' would have thwarted the emergence of the rival concept BOOKS FOR ONE AND ALL.

214 NINETEENTH CENTURY

Even the nineteenth century was for long under the spell of this concept of a bipartite division of persons into a small governing class consisting of those who almost as it were by divine right, occupied the privileged position, and the large class of the others who as it was supposed, by the essential constitution of things, belonged to the lower orders, had no right to education and hence had no right to the instruments of education, *vi* ., books. The well-to-do and influential classes—the *freemen* of the nineteenth century—resisted outright on grounds of sheer self interest even the bare suggestion that the poor should be given the rudiments of education. The story is told of the Marquis of Westminster refusing to give even a farthing for the London Mechanics Institute because of his apprehension that the education of the workmen would make them rebel True," he said " but we must take care of ourselves." The struggle that books had in reaching *every person* is amply illustrated by the experience recorded by Francis Place, a Charing Cross tailor of the early years of the last century He "had to be more and more *careful that none of his ordinary customers should be allowed* to go into the library at the back of the shop " Had these persons been told that I had never read a book, that I was ignorant of everything but my own business, that I sotted in a public house they would not have made the least objection to me. I should have been a fellow beneath them, and they would have patronised me but to accumulate books, and to be supposed to know something of their contents, was putting myself on an equality with themselves, if not indeed assuming superiority it was an abominable offence in a tailor if not a crime, which deserved punishment. Had it been known to all my customers that in the few years from 1810-1817 I had accumulated a considerable library in which I spent all the leisure time I could spare, half of them at

least would have left me" [4] We find Green complaining even late in the nineteenth century that It is one of the inconveniences attaching to the present state of Society in England that all questions of education are complicated by distinctions of classes" [5] Even so late as 1918 the *Hansard* discloses that the Education Bill of Mr H A. L. Fisher was opposed on the ground that, if the workmen are to be given such a long and elaborate course of education, "How are the horses to be kept at work the cows to be milked the sheep to be tended and the folds to be pitched? How is education going to help a man who has to spread manure on a field" [7] A veritable incarnation of Barnard de Mandeville!

215 Political Instinct

That the political instinct of those in privileged positions was vehemently opposing the advent of the Second Law of Library Science is pointed out in unmistakable words by all students of Politics. Viscount Bryce says, for example "That all the despotic governments of sixty years ago and some of them down to our own day were either indifferent or hostile to the spread of education among their subjects, because they feared that knowledge and intelligence would create a wish for freedom." [8]

2151 England

The arguments of those that opposed the Ewart Bill—the first Public Library Bill of England—were "that too much knowledge was a dangerous thing and that libraries might become centres of political education." [9] In his Presidential Address to the Leeds Conference, Dr Guppy remarked It is somewhat perplexing to find that in the middle decades of the last century many of the most eminent men were debating, with all seriousness, not what was best in literature to put before the people, but whether it would be safe and wise, and politic to admit the general public to libraries at all. So far from readers being considered competent to handle and examine books, it was a question whether the rough uncul-

tured democracy should be permitted, even with most stringent precautions and regulations to invade the sacred precincts of the Library "

2152 Russia

When a library school was inaugurated at Moscow in 1913 the following question was asked in the National Duma by the leader of the extreme right "How can the government tolerate library courses, which would pave the way for a revolution?"

216 Self Preservation

Thus the Second Law had to face not merely an inherited habit as was the case with the First Law but it had also to face a very strong opposition based on political and economic instincts However misleading these instincts might have been there is hardly any ground to doubt their *bona fide* nature. In fact, as it may be easily seen they were mere derivatives of a more fundamental instinct *viz* the instinct of self preservation.

2161 Contrary Inference

But, society had not been lacking in far-seeing souls that could perceive the mistaken nature of such opposition. There were indeed men who would draw just the opposite inference from that very instinct of self preservation. The location of factories near sources of power caused a redistribution of population and the towns were inundated with a flood of people unaccustomed to civic responsibilities. The crowding together of tens of thousands of the illiterate poor was creating a host of unspeakable nuisance For a time, the black-coated gentry were able to maintain a safe distance from centres of dirt disease and petty criminality But they could not remain aloof for ever Poverty rudely encroached in course of time It brought disease and unsavoury sights to the doors of the vicarage and the manor In their eagerness to defend themselves the gentle folk hurried to their most trusted advisers.

The first of these, the economists, recommended a judicious dose of education. Adam Smith for example, recommended that The public can impose upon almost the whole body of the people the necessity of acquiring the most essential parts of education, by obliging every man to undergo an examination or probation in them, before he can obtain the freedom in any corporation or be allowed to set up any trade either in a village or town Corporate." [3] He took advantage of this predicament of the well to-do and even pleaded as follows "The education of the Common people requires, perhaps, in a civilised and commercial society the attention of the public more than that of people of some rank and fortune The public can facilitate this acquisition by establishing in every parish or district a little school where children may be taught Though the state was to derive no advantage from the in struction of the inferior ranks of people, it would still deserve its attention that they should not be altogether uninstructed. The state, however derives no inconsiderable advantage from their instruction The more they are instructed, the less liable they are to the delusions of enthusiasm and superstition, which, among ignorant nations, frequently occasion the most dreadful disorders. An instructed and intelligent people besides, are always more decent and orderly than an ignorant and stupid one. They feel themselves each individually more respectable and more likely to obtain the respect of their superiors, and they are, therefore more disposed to respect their superiors. They are more disposed to examine and more capable of seeing through, the interested complaints of faction and sedition and they are on that account, less apt to be misled into any wanton or unnecessary opposition to the measures of Government. "[4]

217 LADDER OF LEARNING

Although, generally speaking, the words of Adam Smith fell upon deaf ears, there were some who could appreciate the soundness of his reasoning. In fact, it induced Mr Whit bread to introduce a Bill in Parliament in 1807 for universal

education, though it goes without saying, it was rejected by an overwhelming majority In spite of the ridicule of die-hards, the *Society for the Diffusion of Useful Knowledge*" did much to spread education among the masses, under the inspiring leadership of Lord Brougham The *Penny cyclopaedia* the *Penny magazine* the *Gallery of portraits* and the *Pictorial Bible* are the surviving monuments of the missionary zeal which championed the cause of BOOKS FOR ALL, in the thirties of the last century The majority of the magnates and officials of the early Victorian era desired that the young peasant should till the same fields, with the same tools in the same seasons as his father before him However enlightened souls like Matthew Arnold were impatient with the tardy recognition shown to the newly emerging concept EDUCATION FOR ALL. As Her Majesty's Inspector of Schools he lamented, in 1853 that "The children of the lowest, poorest classes of the country of what are called the masses, are not, to speak generally educated the children who are educated belong to a different class from these, and consequently of the education of the masses I in the course of my official duty see, strictly speaking, little or nothing."[14] The first twenty pages of Graham Balfour's *Educational systems of Great Britain and Ireland* give a brief but vivid picture of the ingenuity and tenacity with which a handful of far-seeing patriotic statesmen secured the educational enactments of 1870, 1880 and 1891 which successively made EDUCATION FOR ALL first permissive, then compulsory and finally free[15] Once EDUCATION FOR ALL had been established it required but a decade or two for our Second Law BOOKS FOR ALL, to enter the field and quietly bring about the realisation of Huxley's dream[16] of "a ladder of learning from the gutter to the Universities.

2171 Example 1

How literally the Second Law has realised this dream of Huxley may be seen from the account given in *Adult education and the library* about the progress of a fisher boy along the paths of learning. *He was born in Norway In his*

fourteenth year he was withdrawn from the school. His father said, "You are not worth educating." The lad was sent to the eternal task of fishing in the desolate coast of the north of Norway But the Norwegian Government maintain ed at this outpost of the world a good library though small Its books were periodically changed and replenished. Burying his head and heart in its books, thus lad, pronounced to be *not worth educating* educated himself more than he himself real ised. He, then, went to the New World, began his Prepa ratory School in his twenty-third year took his degree in his twenty-eighth year and settled down as a professor in his own college This career of Professor Rolvaag of St. Olaf's College is by no means unique.

2172 Example 2

We, in Madras, remember the story of the marvellous achievement of books read in the light of street lamps, in raising a boy born in obscurity to the bench of the High Court. This was T Muthuswami Ayyar His statue is now adorning the centre of the High Court Buildings. This sway of the Second Law has resulted in reclaiming for the benefit of the world many such promising men from the very depths of society A generation or two ago her rival, BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW' would have sworn by their prenatal social status and forced them to drag on and die without ever reaching their full stature

2173 Example 3

Here is a woman who earns her own living as a chef in a hotel She noticed one day that her eldest daughter frowned impatiently when the mother made a mistake in grammar The mother decided that she would not lose one bit of her daughter's respect on that account. She asked the readers adviser to recommend books which would help her to avoid the most common errors of grammar and pronunciation. She wanted a progressive course on good English suited to her special needs. Later she asked for books which

would keep her informed on present-day happenings and so on and so on "[44]

2174 Example 4

There is, again, the case of a policeman who asked for books which would help him to discover why crimes are committed. What s the use of arresting people if you can t help them?" he asked.[45] He devoured books in Sociology and Psychology If he had lived before the advent of the Law EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK, what chance would he have had either to study books in Sociology and Psychology or to discharge his official duties in a manner not only satisfactory to his conscience but also beneficial to society? How useful and popular *our* police will become if they are made to read, like their New World contemporary books in Sociology and Psychology in addition to the sections of the Police Manual!

2175 Example 5

The prophetic nature of the words of Adam Smith has been demonstrated to the very letter by the services rendered by the Second Law of Library Science to the public of the city of Grand Rapids in the State of Michigan The water-supply of the city could not keep up with the growth of the city As a result a large part of the citizens depended on wells for much of their drinking water because they would not drink the unfiltered river water *The rate of typhoid fever was very high—several hundred cases a year—with a correspondingly high death rate* The city Government and the business interests of the city finally secured the appointment of a Special Commission of high-grade business and professional men to study the whole situation and to report a plan to be submitted to a vote of the citizens. After long and careful study they recomended the adoption of the plan to take the water from the river and to filter it by the rapid sand or mechanical filtration process Eight or ten days before the election, full or half page newspaper broadsides were distributed to every house in the city claiming that filtration was a failure,

by publishing facsimile reproductions from newspapers and technical magazines, etc., of items with reference to typhoid fever in certain cities and then followed by the statement that the said cities had filtered water In short, the whole purpose of these broadsides was to discredit the report of the Special Commission in order to have it defeated. New broadsides appeared about every other day and were always distributed to every house in the city They came out over the name of "a young unemployed Engineer The library immediately checked up a number of the references to other cities in the annual reports and municipal documents in its collection on the trail of the young engineer's published broadsides and made the knowledge it found available to the newspapers, with the librarian signing the published statements of the facts the library found Here is a sample of what we found. Reading, Pennsylvania and Albany New York, both had filtered water supplies serving other parts. The typhoid epidemics were in the sections of those cities served by the unfiltered supplies. The broadside advertisements were correct in stating that Reading and Albany both had typhoid epidemics and both had filtered water but, nevertheless, these statements were both damnable lies in the impressions they conveyed. Thus, "the library was the first to rally the forces to save the day for pure water Pure water won at the polls and Grand Rapids, except for sporadic cases brought in from outside, has, as a result, eliminated typhoid fever from the city I have always believed that the library would have been derelict in its duty had it failed to give to the public the knowledge it had on such a vital matter " [44]

2176 General Triumph

Instances of this nature can be multiplied *ad nauseam* But as it is not our purpose to record here the achievements of BOOKS FOR ALL suffice it to say that, to-day the Second Law of Library Science has triumphantly planted its democratic flag in many a land, having blown to pieces the black coated barrier of exclusiveness and snobbery During the last

century Europe and America, Japan and Russia, were as impervious to its appeals and as impregnable to its attacks as India was. But, to-day Europe and America, Japan and Russia have capitulated to it.

218 Resistance by India

But India is still defiantly holding her own. Who is responsible for this strange phenomenon? Who has been helping India to stick to her guns in this battle against Books for All, while she has been establishing a world record in losing battles in other spheres?

2181 English-educated Indian

Whatever might be the complex of contributory causes, her "English-educated" sons cannot escape their share of the blame. Macaulay and Wood imported English education into India with the best of motives. They evolved their famous 'filtration theory' with the highest of hopes. They could not have reasonably foreseen that the filter would develop human jealousy and selfish exclusiveness. Certainly they never for a moment, dreamt that the filter will work in the contrary way and get itself coated with another super filter that will grant a place in the sun only to those English-educated Indians, who could get their English-education on English soil. Yes. This tragic triumph of India in her fight against the intrusion of the Second Law of Library Science nay even of its precursor Education for All, is not a little due to the almost criminal apathy and neglect of duty on the part of her better placed "English-educated" sons. They have developed an abnormal short-sight which disables them from seeing beyond their nose, at any rate beyond their privileged circle. They glibly speak of India and her millions, when they mean only the two per cent of her millions who can lisp in English. Remind them how you will that Macaulay intended that they should, actively and ungrudgingly spread their knowledge among the masses. No they will rather prefer to take their lesson from Bernard de Mandeville. Honourable

exceptions there are and all honour to them. But the majority act as an impervious clog in the filter

2182 Hope and Faith

Our only hope lies in the supreme resourcefulness of the Second Law History has shown that it is an adept in the art of strategy If Macaulay s filter has proved a snare ere long it will divert its course and keep clear of this clog in the filter The Second Law will not take a defeat. It must win ultimately That is our faith. With the world opinion backing it, it may win even at no distant date If they are shrewd business men, the English-educated Indians should greet it with an olive branch and volunteer their services in its holy war on lingering ignorance Then only they will gain any respect in the eyes of the world and then only can they survive amidst the forces that will be set free on the day the Second Law *plants its flag on Indian soil and puts the* BOOKS in the hands of ALL, even as it has done on other soils

22 The Men and the Women

The antithesis has not been merely between the classes and the masses As we trace the prejudices of ages in the light of the Second Law of Library Science we come across several others. It is not merely the income line that has, for long divided humanity into those that are entitled to the use of books and those that are not. Sex, for example, was another factor that restricted the enforcement of the Law BOOKS FOR ALL. In our own country the Second Law has not yet fully succeeded in overcoming such sex disabilities.

221 THEN AND THEREAFTER IN INDIA

No doubt, the conditions have begun to change Signs of the onslaught of the Second Law are not wanting. The surging wave of BOOKS FOR ALL may ere long, wash away even the hardened bank of the feminine conservatism of the Indian Home But that should not close one s eyes to the tenacious fight that is being fought to-day in several homes against the

encroachment of the pernicious habit of reading among ladies. Nor should one delude onself with the fond but blind ing boast that our country had, in days past, kept the road wide open for her women to emulate the stronger sex in the pursuit of learning. It does not help us now to be told that women could and did read as well as men from the Vedic days onwards down to the day when an alien tongue drove a cultural wedge into the till then homogeneous home. It is only half the truth to say that the use of a foreign medium for cur rent thought has sequestered Indian women from the world *current that has enabled their sisters in many a clime to keep* abreast of their brethren The glorious record of women like Maitreyi, Panchali, Lilavati and Auvaiar and the still-surviv ing memory of the learned ladies that formed the fitting life companions of the intellectual giants of places like Tiruvisa lur should not make us rest on our oars. For every Maitreyi we have a Katyayini. Many of our sisters are still struggling a century behind unlettered, untutored and unprovided with books. But, if it can be a source of consolation and encour agement, it may be mentioned that the concepts EDUCATION FOR ALL and BOOKS FOR ALL definitely crossed the sex barrier only within the last half-century or so in most of the countries.

223 Tradition

From the days of the primitive man, the majority of women have generally occupied a sheltered place and have not had, *therefore, a higher cultural or professional training* such as would enable them to deal with large affairs. In earliest as well as recent civilisations, the limits to which feminine ac complishments might extend have generally been definitely fixed by custom Those who dared to exceed them have run the risk of being thought unwomanly

2231 Ancient Times

In Athens, it seems, it was an accepted dogma that no res pectable girl should be educated The Athenian wife for ex

ample "lived a virtual prisoner within four walls They could not in their own persons inherit property but were regarded as an appanage of the estate Their education was trivial The social ostracism practised to prevent ladies from getting their share of education and books is indicated by the following statement about the education of woman in Greece "Literary education and intellectual pursuits belonged to those who were without the home circle the hetaerae."[21] In the writings of St. Paul, there appeared similar restrictions which seemed to set women off as an inferior dependent class. After referring to the sixteenth verse of the third chapter of Genesis regarding the status of women, he wrote "And if they will learn anything, let them ask their husbands at home."[22]

2232 Eighteenth Century

For a long time it was even commonly believed that women were not capable of education. Here is Chesterfield writing to his son "Women, then, are only children of a larger growth they have an entertaining tattle, and sometimes wit but for solid reasoning, good sense, I never in my life knew one that had it, A man of sense neither consults them about, nor trusts them with, serious matters."[23] Again Rousseau says of women that she is 'an imperfect man, that in many respects she is only 'a grown-up child."[24] He adds, "The search for abstract and speculative truths, principles, and scientific axioms, whatever tends to generalise ideas, does not fall within the compass of women .. as to works of genius, they are out of their reach, nor have they sufficient accuracy and attention to succeed in the exact sciences."[25] Rousseau would willingly repeat Moliere s words —

> It is not seemly and for many reasons,
> That a woman should study and know so many things.

Rousseau s conception of the capacity of women is only what was too common in France and other countries in the eighteenth century

2233 Nineteenth Century

The nineteenth century tried to excel the eighteenth by inventing anatomical explanations for the woman s incapacity to benefit by books and learning Here is a piece of serious scientific demonstration which dates from 1866 —"A man has will and understanding, and a cerebellum and a cerebrum by which they act and so has a woman. In this they are alike But in man the understanding predominates, and in woman the will and here they are different If this be so, we may of course, expect to find a larger development of the cerebrum or upper brain, in man, and a larger development of the cerebellum, or lower brain, in woman and this is so A man s head is higher and fuller in front, than a woman s while a woman s head is broader and larger behind than a man s." Another contemporary of this anatomical psychologist cannot see any virtue in wasting such elaborate reasoning to establish such an obvious thing. The great argument," he would say "against the existence of this equality of intellect in women is, that it does not exist. If that proof does not satisfy a *female philosopher we have no better to give.*"

2234 Masculine Prejudice

If girls schools existed, "they aimed at breeding, deport ment and the accomplishments, not at learning." In his *Essay on projects* Daniel Defoe gives a pathetic description *of the customary education of girls in the following words* "One would wonder indeed how it should happen that women are conversible at all, since they are only beholding to natural parts for all their knowledge. Their youth is spent to teach them to stitch and sew or make bawbles they are taught to read indeed and perhaps to write their names or so and that is the height of a woman s education " If any lady acquired learning, the attitude towards such learned ladies was one of contempt and ridicule We have it recorded that Dr Johnson once laid down the dictum that "man is, in general, better pleased when he has a good dinner on his table, than when his wife talks Greek " His contemptuous parallelism between

a woman preaching and a dog walking on his hind legs is also well known We have the story of an American bachelor who explained his single state saying,

> " One did commend to me a wife both fair and young
> That had French, Spanish and Italian tongue.
> I thanked him kindly and told him I loved none such,
> For I thought one tongue for a wife too much.
> What I love ye not the learned Yes, as my life,
> A learned scholar but not a learned wife. [1]

2235 Feminine Prejudice

The effects of such disparagement of women s powers, the lack of incentives to learning and the ridicule, that was offer ed to the few who would learn, had a disastrous effect in shaping the opinion of the women themselves with regard to their right to education and books. They would fain continue for ever on the established folkways of traditional ideas. Many an Indian of to-day may hear within the walls of his home an unmistakable echo of the emphatic words " Book larnin don t do no good to a woman uttered by an American lady about a couple of generations ago " Indeed the obstinate feminine conservatism which keeps the Second Law at bay and wallows with self-complacency in a book less, education-less state reminds one of the victims of Comus, who are

> " changed
> Into some brutish form of wolf or bear
> Or ounce or tiger hog, or bearded goat,
>
> And they so perfect in their misery
> Not once perceive their foul disfigurement,
> But boast themselves more comely than before."[1]

224 Women's Right to Education

However dogged custom has been, during the slow passage of many centuries, to keep EDUCATION' and its companion the Second Law of Library Science on one side of the sex line, it is certain that in this age of social unrest, when prac tically every custom and institution of every society is

exposed to the unsparing scrutiny of critical minds, women and women s right to education and books have been thrust into the forefront of discussion The whole vexed question of the woman s 'sphere and of her education viewed in the light of that 'sphere has engaged the minds of men for more than a generation and is, at present, nearly settled in the only right manner admissible It is now admitted that even University education is desirable for at least a great number of women. That education will unfit woman to be wife and mother that the physical strain will be too great, or that she is intellectually incapable of mastering higher branches of learning, were serious arguments a generation or two ago and unquestionably acted as impediments But they are now only *slumbering memories in the social mind of a busy world and* come to the centre of consciousness only in some sequestered nooks, still undisturbed by the awakening The antediluvian view which would utterly restrict the woman making her at best a tolerably intelligent and obedient slave, is already vanishing. The least that may now be done is to give her a measure of freedom by taking a half-step forward towards her education, arguing that, by this cultivated-mother influence, the life of society may be improved at the very fountainhead. But the most radical view fast gaining ground, would propose absolute equality of opportunity in education and in political, social and economic life, maintaining that a woman need not, unless she herself so desires, pay her obligation to society biologically any more than man but should be equipped so as to be equally free to choose a literary scientific or industrial career

2241 Education through Apprenticeship

So far we have seen only the first phase of the war on the sex-barrier The Second Law of Library Science had no part in this phase of the war It was all left to its precursor EDUCATION FOR ALL. But the campaign against sex-distinctions involved more battles than that against class distinctions Even after the sex barrier was broken through by its com

panion the Second Law was not able to march on freely For until the latest radical view began to appear on the scene people argued "Yes Education is necessary for a woman and she is capable of it. But woman's education to prepare her for her allotted sphere—the home—can be obtained through apprenticeship to her mother in the home There is no need for any formal schooling or book learning, which would lead her away from the hearth."

> The little learning I have gained
> Is all from simple nature drained,

was a correct description of the state of affairs in the latter half of the last century a state which was not favourable for the success of BOOKS FOR WOMEN

2242 Need for Formal Education

Fortunately however even before the radical view asserted itself and blew up the sex-barrier it came to be realised that such a natural process of education is not practicable in the crowded life of to-day that formal education and book learning are necessary even for cooking, nursing, and the care of children. The increasing incapacity of the home to hold the monopoly of the education of its daughters and the changing conception of education did much to prepare the public mind to receive the gospel, EVERY WOMAN TOO HER BOOK. Even assuming that the sphere of the woman was the home it came to be realised that *home-making* is at once an art and a science. It is a progressive art and a developing science It has a serious organic contact with the Fine Arts on the one side and the severest sciences on the other It would include, for example, care of children, nursing, first aid, foods and nutrition, of course cooking, marketing, launderying, millinery sewing, budget-making and thrift, kitchen-gardening and horticulture home hygiene home sanitation home decoration, the making of simple repairs home courtesies and obligations of family and family life Such is the complex of elements involved in the profession of *home-making*

Women ought to be constantly trained for these duties as men are trained for their trades and professions.

2243 Education through Books

There is much in the plea, "When the other sex are to be instructed in law medicine or divinity they are favoured with numerous institutions richly endowed with teachers of the highest talents and acquirements and with expensive libraries

Woman s profession embraces the care and nursing of the body *in the critical periods of infancy and sickness*, the training of the human mind in the most impressible period, childhood, the instruction and control of servants, and most of the government and economics of the family estate. These duties of women are as sacred and important as any ordained to man and yet no such advantages for preparation have been accorded to her "[76] Such a reproach was justifiable till about three or four decades ago. However every effort is now being made in all forward countries to have that reproach removed by a proper orientation of the initial education at school and by a profuse supply of books for that education to be continued to the end of one s life. EVERY WOMAN HER BOOK is the guiding motto of the libraries of to-day They now take care to see that their books reach behind the *purdah* They endeavour for example, "to get all mothers, whose names appear in the official records of birth when a new baby comes into the home, into contact with the Library s book service on the care of children."[77] Such a discriminating distribution of books in restricted fields of knowledge marks the second stage

225 SCIENTIFIC STUDY

It is however in the third phase of the war that the sex barrier was completely overthrown in the march of the Law BOOKS FOR ALL This phase is taking shape only in the present century It began with a critical investigation into the inherited tradition about the woman s sphere and about the woman s inferiority in matters intellectual.

2251 Anatomical Study

The first to lay the axe to the root of the pseudo-scientific opinion of the nineteenth century was Karl Pearson. In his paper of 1897 entitled "*Variation in man and woman*"[1] he clearly demonstrated that, in fact, no greater variability was indicated by anatomical measurements of actual human beings treated with mathematical insight. He made a rigorous statistical examination of varied anatomical data. Based on these, he concluded his long paper in his characteristic carping manner with the words "I assert that the present results show that the greater variability often claimed for men remains as yet a quite unproven principle. The "sequacity" exhibited by the multitude of semi-scientific writers on evolution is possibly a sign of the very small capacity for intellectual variation possessed by the literary male." The evidence collected by Karl Pearson was extended and corroborated by further statistical data published by Montague and Hollingworth in the *American journal of sociology* in October 1914.

2252 Psychological Study

This anatomical investigation was followed by the psychological demonstration of the absolute absence of sex difference in mental variability by the elaborate mental tests carried out by Trabue, Courtis, Terman and Pyle. Again, there was the time honoured traditional opinion that the functional periodicity has an unfavourable effect on woman's mental capacity. Havelock Ellis, for example, makes the sweeping remark that the monthly physiological cycle "influences throughout the month the whole of a woman's physical and psychic organism."[2] But Dr. Hollingworth's experimental investigation of 1914 into this allegation disclosed the contrary. The data, gathered by her, undermined rather than supported such opinions.[3]

226 Assertion of Equality

After experimental psychology thus established that the division of labour between the sexes, which had existed

throughout historic times, was not the result of psychological differences at all, and that women are as competent intellectually as men to undertake any and all human vocations, it came to be realised that "the education of women, especially in the higher stages, will make available to the country a wealth of capacity that is now largely wasted through lack of opportunity"[10] and it even came to be argued that an educated woman, a woman when given HER BOOKS "is a far better and surer guarantee of the education of the coming generation than a literate man"[11] Then came the opportunity for the Second Law to break through the sex barrier and triumphantly proclaim "Education should develop women's tastes and aptitudes precisely as men's. The rights of women to choose their books should be precisely the same as those of men. The books that I distribute should be different, not on the ground that the one is a man and the other a woman but, they should be different only on the ground that each is an individual" Thus, the Second Law of Library Science is now no longer satisfied with offering to women books on *Home-making* or with books of orthodox devotion on the other hand it insists that all books have a perfect right to enter any home for the benefit of all the members of the home irrespective of sex.

23. The City Folk and the Country-Folk

A third antithesis that had to be overcome by the Law BOOKS FOR ALL was that between the city folk and the country folk. The municipal toll-gate seems to have held up the Second Law even longer than the income line or the sex-barrier We have seen that the income-line was nearly crossed in most countries about half-a-century ago We have also noticed that the scaling of the sex barrier was begun at least a generation back. But the cry BOOKS FOR ALL was able to get beyond the city walls only in our days. To be more precise the right of the country folk to books came to be respected in most of the countries only after World War I Although the first systematic travelling library service

was inaugurated by Maryland and Ohio as early as 1905 it was only in the last decade or so that serious effort was made by most of the nations to supply the inhabitants of the scattered country-side with the books they wanted.

231 Differentiation

That the country-folk lack the opportunity for learning and culture is clear from the contempt that is compressed in the English word Rustic and the Tamil word *Nattuppuram tan* * It is also indicated by the common connotation of the Sanskrit epithet *Gramya* † In his *Hellenica* Xenophon naively suggests by implication that habitual residence in villages would be enough to deprive one of some of the commonest rights and privileges. He says, They did not however dispossess them of the presidency of the shrine of Olympian Zeus, even though it did not belong to the Eleanos in ancient times, for they thought *that the rival claimants were country people* [M] (italics mine) Such a differential view has been persisting all through the centuries. Hannah More for example, would not banish ignorance from the villages vice she would have ousted if she could, but knowledge, except of their duties and their place she would have advised her villagers to leave to their betters [M] in the urban areas.

2311 Menaces in City

The fact is that, even at a very early stage, the increasing complexities and the grave menaces attendant on the civic problems of a crowded city made out a strong plea for EDUCATION FOR ALL and BOOKS FOR ALL in the case of the city-folk. That inexorable mistress, Necessity however did not for long, put a similar pressure in regard to the country folk. While the consequences of ignorance and lack of books are immediate in an urban area, they are latent and become visible only very late in rural areas

* Literally means a villager

† *G[illegible]* means a village while *Gramya* means vulgar

2312 Importance of Peasantry

Nevertheless, the farmers of the village form a most important class in a country Tilling the land is one of man's fundamental and original occupations. Adam was a gardener and Abraham, a shepherd Agriculture feeds the world It calls for progressive skill. The national need for an alert, adaptable peasantry can be met only by extending the use of books to the country-side Even in an industrial country like England, where only 20 per cent live in villages, and the cities form the chief centres of production, it is felt that the future of the nation would be jeopardised if the handful of people who live in the country-side are not given THEIR BOOKS. How much more serious and vital should be the rural library problem in our land, where, *even confining ourselves to British* India only 12.9 per cent of the population of 247 millions live in towns there are only 29 cities with a population of 100,000 or over and 2,100 towns with a population between 5,000 and 100,000, while the number of villages is not far short of half a million[**] Further the Indian towns and cities have not yet become similar in their function to the industrial towns and cities of England. As Mr V Ramaswamy Ayyar the learned president of the Indian Mathematical Society humorously remarked in a recent Retreat of the International Fellowship, the function of most of the Indian towns is like that of the receiver of an air pump. Very little of their stir and bustle is due to productive activities. They are largely engaged in sucking the wealth that is produced in the villages and discharging it beyond the seas. It is in view of this, that the Linlithgow Commission recorded, "It is upon the homes and fields of her cultivators that the strength of the country and the foundations of her prosperity must ultimately rest."[**]

2313 Stimulus of New Ideas

But, in the present state of international competition and struggle the agricultural and other rural industries are proving to be more and more futile and less and less worthwhile, if carried on in the old time-honoured methods of production

and marketing. The chief needs of these rural industries are the daily stimulus of new ideas and the constant provision of instruction in such ideas. New methods in farming are being invented from year to year New markets have to be found from time to time Inter-communications are being established in ways hitherto undreamt of These have to be understood Machinery and labour-saving devices are in urgent need of adoption.

2314 Flux of Ideas and Books

Till recently families lived on the land and produced by hand nearly all that they ate or wore The oxen and the wooden plough were about all the labour saving devices at hand. People made their own butter candles and clothing, evaporated their own salt, and ground their own corn in pri mitive hand-operated mills Business was carried on chiefly by barter But, in the short period of one generation epoch making inventions in agricultural machinery and methods have been perfected and are being introduced elsewhere At such a flux, the SCHOOL OF BOOKS must constantly supplement the school of practical experience

2315 Changes in Marketing

Improvements in marketing have also contributed much to the need for a progressive peasantry and to the need for the fre quent feeding of the peasantry on books and magazines No longer have small loads of produce to be taken over a muddy road to be sold or exchanged. Good metalled road, motor truck, net work of railroad and parcel express have greatly changed the methods of transport. Steamship and motor-boat gather up the products and quickly deliver them in the world s great markets. The betels of Kumbakonam have now to find a market in Madras and far-off Benares. The plantains of Erode have to be marketed throughout India So too with the fruits of the orchards and vineyards of Coorg and Kashmir The cotton of Tinnevelly and the paddy of Tanjore have to search for markets overseas. Farm-products can no longer be

bartered in the village They have to be judiciously sold in exchange for *handies* These conditions will not be temporary or transient They have come to stay Year by year they will become more and more pronounced. From now on we may look upon farming as being a capitalised industry calling for knowledge and executive ability and attracting men of capital and brains. The man of small energy or capacity and the man lacking in growing scientific knowledge will find it increasingly difficult to avoid being pushed to the wall. We can no longer depend upon a peasantry perpetually steeped in ignorance and confined to traditional ways. If the country is to keep abreast of the world, the peasantry must be constantly lifted from their ruts. It must be enlightened with the most up-to-date scientific and economic facts and ideas. How will this be possible except through books and periodicals? *Can we any longer afford to delay giving the* COUNTRY-FOLK THEIR BOOKS?

2316 Change in Social Horizon

Nor is it left to the city-folk to deny their rural brethren the pleasures of books and the other amenities of life. For in the words of the recent Royal Commission on Agriculture, "Upon the ancient structure of village life certain influences are at work which must sooner or later profoundly modify its characteristic self-sufficiency and which, in some parts of the country have already begun to produce their effects." "The development of communications and the consequent quickening and cheapening of travelling facilities are bringing the villages into closer touch with urban areas contact with towns introduces new ideas and desire for better conditions of living." The farmer's life is, in fact, mentally changing The old isolation and the narrow provincialism are rapidly ending He and his wife will, no longer be markedly "of the country" They and particularly their children, dress much better than formerly The movements of the family are no longer limited by the locomotive power of its bullock The inter-urban bus takes them to town almost any hour A trip

to town which lately consumed the better part of a day is now only a matter of an hour or so It is easy to go in the evening after the day's work is done The cinema and the theatre, once unknown now offer their attractions. City connections—financial social and political—are established The children attend the High School in the neighbouring town or city they copy town ways and they form new friendships there The social horizon is thus greatly enlarged Marriages are accordingly made at much greater distances than formerly and with new social classes.

232 Travelling Library

This rapid and intensive intermingling of the city folk and the country folk would lead the latter to demand for themselves all the facilities that the former enjoy Farm workers and farmers would begin to argue "We pay *our* toll to the exchequer as much as the city Then, why this differential treatment? Why should the city folk alone have their City Libraries and all the amenities that centre round them? Why should not the State provide us also with similar library and other facilities? We too have brains. We too want to improve our knowledge of the world. We too want to be up-to-date in our methods of work We too want 'Our Books' " Modern democracy has *invested* such awakened peasants *with* the power to Demand Their Book, if they are not voluntarily forthcoming, and to make their demand heard. Such, in fact, was the genesis of the first systematic travelling library

2321 Maryland

"In Washington County Maryland, there lived many people who had few books to read, for whom buying books was too costly a procedure, but who were hungry for good literature. Some of these people came to Miss Mary L. Titcomb of the Hagerstown free library and *asked that books be sent to them* (italics mine) This gave Miss Titcomb the idea that a wagon fitted with book-shelves and laden with a wide assortment of books, going over the mountain roads to the

homes, would be a splendid way of giving the people a chance to read This was in 1905 In 1910 the horse and wagon gave way to the automobile. Now nearly 300 counties have followed the example of Hagerstown, Maryland."[34] Nay the counties of several other parts of the world are also beginning to fol low that example It is the initial *demand* of the country folk of Maryland that started the idea.

2322 England

The wise administrators of the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust have shown how to create in villagers a demand for books, in case they are oblivious either of the benefit of the use of books or of their right to demand them We have it on the authority of no less a person than Sir William Robertson, the first Vice-President of the Trust In describing the genesis of the Rural Libraries of Great Britain, he said "We baited our book very generously We said We will not only under take to provide the Capital outlay but also undertake to provide maintenance for five years, so that the local authority—always in terror of rates—need have no fears on the ground of having to increase the rates. We had to lure them on as we were convinced that by the time the *five years had* expired, a real abiding appetite for reading would have been —not created, because it was latent, it was there,—but discovered so that if the local authorities at the expiry of that period were reactionary and wanted to go back on the scheme, they would not be allowed to do so by the people We went from county to county We did not wait to be approached by them, we were the initiators of the scheme, and we took the initial step of inviting them to consider such an offer " *The first County-library Scheme of England* was inaugurated in Staffordshire in 1916. Such a deliberate calculated campaign for less than a decade was enough to carry Books for All beyond the city walls and to spread it triumphantly into all but three of the counties of England. As a result, the demand of the English country-folk for Their Books became so insistent that Parliament had to provide

by the Amending Act of 1919[70] for a Rural Library Scheme on a county basis and to appoint a Public Libraries Committee in 1924 "to enquire into the adequacy of the library provision" and to explore among other things, the means of extending and completing such provision, throughout England and Wales."[71]

2323 India

The recent reforms have invested the Indian ryots also with a similar power to demand THEIR BOOKS and to ask for a nation-wide Rural Library Scheme, with all the latest amenities that go with it It may not be long before they realise the possession of this power and exercise it. That day can be hastened by inducements such as their contemporaries in Britain received from the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Even if there is no such prospect for the ryots of India, systematic and continued propaganda by bodies like the Madras Library Association can do much to carry the message of the Second Law to the countryside and to open the eyes of the villagers to the use of books and to their *right* to have them.

233 DRIFT TO CITY

But, even from a narrower and strictly selfish point of view the city folk would be well advised to concede to the demands of the Second Law to give the COUNTRY-FOLK TOO THEIR BOOKS. It is in their own interest to help in the reduction of the ever increasing drift of the population from the village to the city Various causes excite such a drift but there are some whose effects can be minimised by a judicious capitulation to the Second Law of Library Science

2331 Educated Boy

Take, for example one such cause, clearly set forth by the Linlithgow Commission The village fellows of an educated boy regarded him as possessing a qualification in virtue of which he could, almost for the asking, obtain employment of a kind which was beyond their reach This has contributed

to the drift of educated boys from the village to the town which still continues though the conditions which gave rise to it are rapidly changing. The supply of educated men for ordinary routine work under Government and in business-houses nearly exceeds the demand In so far as it is accentuated by the drift of educated boys from the villages to the towns, there to swell the ranks of the educated unemployed, it can, in our view only be remedied by the spread of education in rural areas *in combination with an improvement in the amenities of village life* It is hopeless to endeavour to put the clock back by restricting education to a minimum" (Italics mine)

2332 From Boy to Parent

This tendency to drift spreads easily from the boy to the parent A large majority of farmers have at least two to four months of leisure during summer These summer months induce a vacation-habit Accordingly the farmer spends a few summers with his son or daughter "in town" or in some distant city leaving his lands in the care of a hired agent The attractions of the city entice him and his family to such an extent, that he rents his lands to tenants, often closing down his village-house entirely and the whole family moves to town to enjoy its social and educational advantages. The next step—he goes home sells out and comes back to settle permanently in the city with no more thought about the village and farm One of the most important social questions, now facing those interested in rural welfare is how to prevent this purposeless drift.

2333 Dullness of Village Life

Even if an educated boy has got the strength of mind to go back to the village the dreary conditions prevailing there the absolute lack of means of intellectual recreation and of guidance in his daily pursuits leads to one of two results. Either he comes in time to neglect and finally lose sight of his serious interests fall into a morbid state of mind and becomes

a lifelong victim to cards or he runs back to town dreading the dullness of village life

234 Effect of Drift

Apart from disastrous economic consequences such a drift to the city unnecessarily adds to the congestion in the cities, increases the cost of living of the city-folk and renders the maintenance of Public Health more difficult and more costly

235 Prevention of Drift

The fact is, the country needs a new rural class and new conditions in the rural parts to keep them to their rural duties and functions. This necessitates inevitably books in the villages—books of all kinds—so that the long engagementless summer may be endurable and so that the inquiring mind may find food ready to hand without wandering to the towns to seek for it. Once the Rural Library Scheme is started, it can be—in other countries it has been—made to extend its sphere far beyond books. It will send to villages cinema reels and lantern slides, both for recreation and for information It will help in the organisation of musical concerts lectures, dramas and exhibitions of all kinds. It will endeavour to function up to every new opportunity for service reasonably within its field Further as a centre for the community life the Rural Library has certain advantages over other rural institutions. It is common property for all and has a democracy about it which the temple and the *mutt* do not, as a rule, have.

2351 Rural Library Service

In fact, if the Law Books for All be allowed to cross the city walls, it will attempt to invest the village with all the possible amenities and intellectual opportunities that have been, till now found only in urban areas In this way a progressive Rural Library Service will become a powerful agency in minimising the undesirable drift from the village to the city

236 Organisation of Rural Library Service

Although it is our intention to reserve all technical details to a later volume of this series, the supreme importance of the Rural Library Scheme for India will justify a short digression into the problem of the organisation of village libraries. *While a Taluk may ultimately prove to be the most convenient unit area for the scheme of rural libraries*, at present it may be more expedient to start on a District basis. Although the area of a district may prove to be too large, the resources of a District Board as well as its capacity for sustained work *and direction are much greater than those of a Taluk Board.*

2361 District Librarian

The inauguration and the initial shaping of a District Library Service will depend largely on the resourcefulness and enthusiasm of the First District Librarian. The unique educational activities of one of our West Coast districts, I have reasons to attribute largely to the appointment of a resourceful fulltimed Educational Officer who is given not only full freedom but also ungrudging facilities. Similarly if any new scheme like a District Library Scheme is to prove a success, the first requisite is the selection and appointment of a well trained, resourceful enthusiastic librarian as the Library Organiser of the District. No District Authority should commit the blunder of initiating its scheme without this essential preliminary. If it does, it will be only attempting to prove that the scheme won t work.

2362 First Know the People

If the appointment of the District Librarian should be the first step of the District Board, the first thing that the librarian himself should do is to get first-hand knowledge of the people whom he has to serve. It would be unwise and fatal to start with standardised notions about the requirements of the villagers. Experience in other countries has shown that villages apparently identical in type actually need different standards of books. The county librarian of Nottinghamshire gives

telling examples of this in her paper on "How to start a County Library Scheme,"[**] which, by the way is a very lucid exposition of the initial difficulties of a District Library Organiser Her first precept is "First know your people and to do this it is essential to visit each centre before opening it."

2363 Village Librarian

The second step for the District Organiser is to enlist the aid of the District Educational Officer the Deputy Inspectors of Schools the Tahsildars, the Presidents of the Village Panchayats, the Co-operative Societies and the others interested in Rural Reconstruction Work With their aid and by personal investigation, he should select the most suitable person as the local librarian for each centre The village teacher or the village munsif or the village accountant—whoever is most popular in the village—should be selected for the task. By example and precept, the chosen representative should be helped to work up the necessary enthusiasm. This inspiring of the local librarians is an all-important part of organisation For this task we want an organiser above all things keenly enthusiastic himself—a personality of more than ordinary tact, patience and capacity for hard work. It often happens that there is a deadly faction in the village. It is advisable, in such cases to have one local representative for each faction.

2364 Library Publicity

The next step is to advertise the library idea intensively throughout the area The vernacular newspapers of the district should be asked to announce the facilities offered by the District Library as prominently and as frequently as possible Attractive handbills should be widely distributed in as many ways as possible First-class posters, with charming colours and catching legends, should be distributed profusely A picture of the lovely poster designed by the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust for use by the County libraries of Great Britain represents a torch of learning on enamelled iron, 17 inches by 13 with a red cartouche bearing in white lettering

the words, COUNTY LIBRARY '" Local festivals and fairs should be visited and an intensive campaign of propaganda should be launched on such occasions with the co-operation of zealous honorary workers. Look at this account of an American Fair "All *over an American Fair were found notices Come* and hear our travel book talk in the library stall at 3-0 P M., this afternoon And a considerable number did come '" It requires enormous work to carry the gospel of the Second Law into every village and hamlet and to drill the national importance of the work of the District Library into the minds of the country folk

2365 Choice of Books

Last but not least, a variety of well-built well-written, *well-illustrated books should be* promptly and regulary served Both recreative and informational books should be sent. Some of the informational books should have a bearing on *local industries and interests. The experience of the local* librarian of a village in Cambridgeshire is worth quoting "Books bearing on local industries—agriculture and horticulture—are eagerly looked for and in this connection I would refer to a method we have occasionally to adopt. We frequently get a book which we know will be useful to certain persons who have never made use of the library In such a case we send the book to the probable reader with a message suggesting he would glance at it and, if he is interested, keep it for a week or two In this way we have circulated several *technical books which would otherwise never have been read* The difficulty in one such case was to get the book again the borrower had found it so useful in his daily work that he could not do without it. I have no doubt in my own mind that this gentleman is richer by many pounds already as a result of what he has learnt about fruit-packing, etc. from a book I sent him at a venture But we have made another friend and created another reader I am beginning to believe that many farmers and gardeners do not realise that there are books in existence which deal exclusively with their interests

telling examples of this in her paper on "How to start a County Library Scheme,"[43] which by the way is a very lucid exposition of the initial difficulties of a District Library Organiser Her first precept is "First know your people and to do this it is essential to visit each centre before opening it."

2363 Village Librarian

The second step for the District Organiser is to enlist the aid of the District Educational Officer the Deputy Inspectors of Schools, the Tahsildars, the Presidents of the Village Panchayats the Co-operative Societies and the others interested in Rural Reconstruction Work With their aid and by personal investigation, he should select the most suitable person as the local librarian for each centre The village teacher or the village munsif or the village accountant—whoever is most popular in the village—should be selected for the task. By example and precept, the chosen representative should be helped to work up the necessary enthusiasm This inspiring of the local librarians is an all-important part of organisation For this task we want an organiser above all things keenly enthusiastic himself—a personality of more than ordinary tact, patience and capacity for hard work. It often happens that there is a deadly faction in the village. It is advisable, in such cases, to have one local representative for each faction.

2364 Library Publicity

The next step is to advertise the library idea intensively throughout the area. The vernacular newspapers of the district should be asked to announce the facilities offered by the District Library as prominently and as frequently as possible. Attractive handbills should be widely distributed in as many ways as possible First-class posters, with charming colours and catching legends, should be distributed profusely A picture of the lovely poster designed by the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust for use by the County-libraries of Great Britain represents 'a torch of learning on enamelled iron, 17 inches by 13 with a red cartouche bearing in white lettering

stack-room a packing-room and an office-room will suffice At the beginning, one or two convenient and consecutive rooms in the ground-floor of the District Board Office may be sufficient. The staff must grow with the scheme But, from the very beginning, there must be a minimum of one reliable assistant to do the routine work which would otherwise occupy too much of the time which the librarian should spend on organisation. As the librarian will have to be constantly in the interior of the District, the assistant should be competent to be in charge on such occasions.

2371 Transport of Books

The transport will vary with the local conditions of the district. A district like Tanjore can exchange boxes of books quite easily with the aid of its net-work of railways and bus-lines. In a district like Kurnool, the aid of bullock-carts and carriers may have to be invoked. But it may not happen for any District Librarian "to travel two days on a mule taking another mule to carry the books like one of our fellow librarians across the water" as pictured by Col. Mitchell An ideal method of transport is that of the library-van It may be fitted with shelves to carry about a thousand volumes, from which the villagers and village-librarians may make their selection on returning the volumes which have been read The librarian may himself drive or accompany the van in its ramble through the district. It will also advertise the District Library Scheme in a very effective way This is an economical form of transport and will eliminate the travelling charges of the librarian. The van may visit each centre once in three months.

2372 Local Centre

The local centres at which the exchange is to be effected may be any convenient places such as schools, temples, *mutts* post offices, stores or homes. The book van-day is a *gala* day in these villages. The moment the librarian drives the van in, a swarm of men, women and children surround the van and in a moment most of its books are pulled out of the shelves.

238 Initial Resistance

At the beginning, the District Librarian must be prepared to meet, in the villages, with an atmosphere absolutely hostile and suspicious. The reasons for the initial suspicion can, however, be easily traced. The poor paid village teacher on whom the actual work would probably descend, may be already doing more than a fair share of honorary work and he may not welcome any additional work. The village munsif may have been a munsif for several years. He may have developed deep-rooted scorn for such modern innovations and hence lack that youth and enthusiasm which are essential for rural reconstruction to-day. A third factor more difficult of persuasion may be the large land-owner of the village who views with suspicion and distrust all attempts at increased educational facilities which may enable the ryots of the countryside to think for themselves. All these elements of hostility—the teacher overburdened with unpaid work, the munsif who has lost the fire of youth, and the obscurantist *Mirasidar*—will strain the tact and the enthusiasm of the District Organiser to the utmost. Yet with patience and understanding of local conditions, these obstacles should not prove insurmountable.

2381 After the Ice is Broken

Once these first prejudices are overcome and the ice is broken, the progress will be smooth and automatic. At any rate, that has been the experience elsewhere. Here are some reported cases, demonstrating the tremendous reading potentialities of villagers which only await the necessary facilities to burst forth into a kinetic form.

2382 Example 1

The librarian of the County of Surrey reports "One comes across a young housemaid who enjoys Katherine Mansfield's *The Garden Party* more than any book she has ever read, because, she likes the way she writes." Or it may be a bus conductress with as pretty a taste in Literature as any English

Honours student I ever coached. Then there are boys who have just left school at that adolescent age when combined lack of employment and cessation of formal education make such a scar across our social fabric. In one of my branches, I am told of several youths—a telegraph boy a railway porter a delivery boy and a grocer s assistant—who every time the library is open make straight for the shelf containing the books on natural history hobbies, mechanics and science."[10]

2383 Example 2

The village-librarian of Sohan, Cambridgeshire, reports, "There is a certain demand for books on domestic subjects by young married women who are anxious to improve on older methods."[11] The same librarian, speaking about the juveniles of her village remarks, "Their tastes are more catholic and they generally examine the non fiction side of the library and are learning to browse among books. Books on inventions, hobbies and natural history fascinate them and for this reason one would have these books more profusely illustrated." [12] Within two years of its existence the county library of Cambridgeshire has disclosed varied reading interests.

2384 Example 3

The librarian of Cottenham, another village of the same county records, "There is the shoemaker who refuses everything but history and historical novels, who cannot believe that people exist in Wake s own Country who have not read Kingsley s *Hereward* and the fruit-grower who insists on books on astronomy"

2385 Example 4

Another county-librarian makes mention of a gardener devouring every book on Egypt which the village-librarian could procure for him and of a railway guard reading Soven Hedin s books of travel

238 Initial Resistance

At the beginning, the District Librarian must be prepared to meet, in the villages, with an atmosphere absolutely hostile and suspicious. The reasons for the initial suspicion can, however be easily traced. The poor paid village teacher on whom the actual work would probably descend may be already doing more than a fair share of honorary work and he may not welcome any additional work. The village munsif may have been a munsif for several years. He may have developed deep-rooted scorn for such modern innovations and hence lack that youth and enthusiasm which are essential for rural reconstruction to-day A third factor more difficult of persuasion, may be the large land-owner of the village, who views with suspicion and distrust all attempts at increased educational facilities which may enable the ryots of the countryside to think for themselves. All these elements of hostility—the teacher overburdened with unpaid work, the munsif who has lost the fire of youth and the obscurantist *Mirasidar*—will strain the tact and the enthusiasm of the District Organiser to the utmost. Yet with patience and understanding of local conditions, these obstacles should not prove insurmountable.

2381 After the Ice is Broken

Once these first prejudices are overcome and the ice is broken, the progress will be smooth and automatic. At any rate that has been the experience elsewhere Here are some reported cases, demonstrating the tremendous reading potentialities of villagers which only await the necessary facilities to burst forth into a kinetic form

2382 Example 1

The librarian of the County of Surrey reports "One comes across a young housemaid who enjoys Katherine Mansfield's *The Garden Party* more than any book she has ever read, because, she "likes the way she writes." Or it may be a bus-conductress with as pretty a taste in Literature as any English

Honours student I ever coached Then there are boys who have just left school at that adolescent age when combined lack of employment and cessation of formal education make such a scar across our social fabric. In one of my branches, I am told of several youths—a telegraph boy a railway porter a delivery boy and a grocer s assistant—who every time the library is open make straight for the shelf containing the books on natural history hobbies mechanics and science."[18]

2383 Example 2

The village librarian of Sohan, Cambridgeshire, reports, "There is a certain demand for books on domestic subjects by young married women who are anxious to improve on older methods."[19] The same librarian, speaking about the juveniles of her village, remarks, Their tastes are more catholic and they generally examine the non fiction side of the library and are learning to browse among books. Books on inventions, hobbies and natural history fascinate them and for this reason one would have these books more profu sely illustrated." Within two years of its existence the county library of Cambridgeshire has disclosed varied reading interests.

2384 Example 3

The librarian of Cottenham, another village of the same county records, There is the shoemaker who refuses everything but history and historical novels, who cannot believe that people exist in Wake s own Country who have not read Kingsley s *Hereward* and the fruit-grower who insists on books on astronomy "

2385 Example 4

Another county librarian makes mention of a gardener devouring every book on Egypt which the village-librarian could procure for him and of a railway guard reading Soven Hedin s books of travel

2386 Example 5

The cheer that the travelling library is bringing to the denizens of dreary villages is illustrated by a note[18] received by the County-librarian of Kent from a villager "who lives eight and a half miles from a town and had been supplied with books to help her in her study of French literature," the note ending with "ever so grateful to you for help in constructing a happy little world for me" Again we are told "The parish of Esclusham Below in the Denbigshire which has a population of about 1,900 scattered over several mining hamlets, which has converted 263 of them into constant readers, issues about 7 000 volumes a year and the local librarian cheerfully reports, The Parish Council Members are jubilant over the progress made and *will go* to any length to ensure its future success. "

2387 Example 6

We cannot end this section more appropriately than by quoting the fervent wish for the progress of the Second Law of Library Science into the midst of peasants, uttered by the Dean of the New York State College of Agriculture "It should scarcely be necessary to say that the educational system within a county is not complete until there exists one or more good libraries serving the entire population For most rural countries, the county-library seems to be the answer Until farm children and adults alike have convenient and regular access to book-collections suited to their varied tastes and needs, our national happiness and progress will fall short of their possibilities. The time is here when there should be a nation wide movement to establish and bring into active use the library facilities accessible to all farm homes." "

24 The Normal and the Abnormal

The next antithesis to be considered—the Normal and the Abnormal—is of a more complex nature. There are abnormalities of all kinds. There is the temporarily abnormal sick *in the hospital. There is the removable abnormality of illi-*

teracy We havet he reclaimable abnormal in the prisoner behind the bars, while the blind and the deaf and dumb form the classes that are commonly described as abnormal. The *all* in BOOKS FOR ALL embraces every one of them. The Second Law knows no exception. It can have no rest until it has arranged for the supply to EVERY ONE, NORMAL OR ABNORMAL, HIS OR HER BOOK.

241 A ROUND TABLE

The Patient Ah! this endless confinement to bed! Those endless eternal—blank—white walls! How I wish I could run away!

The Psychologist Soft, my friend, soft. Don t work yourself up into that mood. It will do you harm.

Our friend has just come to discuss with us the ways and means to remove that tedium

The Second Law Cheer up, Sir I have brought with me a trolly full of books. You will soon see it wheeled from ward to ward and bed to bed.

The Patient I can t stand the rattle of the trolly

The Psychologist (Aside to Second Law) Poor old fellow! Worn-out nerves! The slightest scratch upsets him

The Second Law Don t be afraid, My trolly is noiseless, being specially built for hospital use. A blind man cannot know that it is moving.

The Blind Man Oh!—You don t know how sharp our ears are.

The Second Law Even so I am certain you can t hear it.

The Patient So thoughtful of you. I am sorry for my temper What books have you brought for us?

The Second Law Beautiful picture books, charming Art journals, entertaining novels, inspiring poetry a few hymns, *Tit-bits* and—

The Patient Ye—es. Your choice is wide enough. But, you have left *me* out.

The Second Law How?

The Patient You see, I have been a Professor all my life. I care for no reading which is not heavy

The Second Law I would have no objection to give you what you want, but remember one danger Suppose your illness takes a bad turn—God forbid—then the Doctor will throw all the blame on the stiff books I supplied, and, who knows, perhaps even cancel my visitor's pass!

The Psychologist You needn't have that fear any longer Perhaps you don t know that I am here full-timed Send all kinds of books. I shall take care to give EACH PATIENT HIS BOOK—I mean what he can enjoy without detriment to his health At any rate I shall assume the responsibility and see that the Doctor does not throw the blame on you.

The Second Law I am ever so grateful. What can I send you, Professor?

The Patient Some *Croce* in Italian if you please,
It is so kind of you to think of us, unfortunates.
I am tired I can t sit up any longer May I with your permission, retire!

The Psychologist Yes, certainly
Attender! the wheeled chair

The Second Law Professor pass my message on from bed to bed. When my librarian goes round with the book trolly each patient can tell him his requirement. Now that the Psychologist is here, I can send down anything they ask for

The Patient Thank you, God bless you. Good bye for the present.

The Mother of the Dumb Fancy the old man s wish to grind his Italian even in bed.

The Illiterate What is that Groce, Madam?

The Blind Man Oh! You don t know that! It is Croce, not Groce Croce is one of the greatest living philosophers. He is an Italian, and naturally he writes in Italian

The Psychologist I am also in charge of the local jail —I mean, as a Psychologist, I have also to attend on the prisoners.

The Second Law But, what can I do? It was only the other day that I sent my Librarian round with the book van That old Jailor there was hard as flint. He growled, it *appears,* "*What! Books for damned murderers!*" It seems he even insulted my Librarian saying, "If you don t have a more decent way of earning your bread, take the earliest opportunity to break into a house, and I shall have a chance to give you some work"

The Jailor What? When was it?

The Second Law Some months back I think

The Jailor Thank God! It was not I!

The Psychologist All that is now an old story That old jailor has now been retired You do not seem to know how the recent reforms have humanised everything That old biting sort of jailor is gone They are now recruiting men of culture—men with sympathy men *who want to reclaim the criminals rather than* keep them eternally in chains That is why they want me there

The Jailor I assure you, Madam, that you will ever have my heartiest co-operation in your philanthropic mission. On behalf of my predecessor I tender you and your librarian, my most sincere apologies.

The Second Law Thank you, Sir but I am so glad to hear of this change I am most happy One difficult problem that I had set for this conference is thus already solved.

The Psychologist Have you with you the list of books you sent the other day?

The Second Law Here it is.

The Psychologist It is all right so far—as—it—goes But you seem to have entirely forgotten the political prisoners.

They would like to have more serious books—Economics, Politics, Metaphysics, Sociology and so on

The Second Law Will they allow such books inside the prison?

The Psychologist Certainly why not?

After all it is with the greatest reluctance that the Government consigns these men of culture to prison. It is more to vindicate the Majesty of Law than to deprive them of their liberty Sunday players and Salt law-breakers are usually the tallest intellectuals of a community They go to prison only for technical offences, and the Government too is anxious that such men should be allowed a good supply of books and periodicals lest their forced inaction should end in morbid melancholy

The Jailor Yes. That is the correct policy I shall post you this night a list of their requirements

The Second Law I shall take it on hand immediately it arrives and see that the books reach you by noon, to-morrow

But our service cannot be at its best, unless we get into personal touch with our readers.

The Jailor That is easily done. I shall put your Librarian on our weekly visitor s list. Will that do?

The Second Law Ideal.

The Blindman Ladies and gentlemen, I am glad you do all that for those who are shut in prisons What about us who are shut in perpetual darkness? I hear that the last census revealed that we are no less than 479 637 in number [**]

The Second Law Indeed, that is my next point for discussion

I am aware that fifteen persons in every ten thousand are blind in your country [**]

But, I have books for you also

The Jailor What? Can the blind read?

The Second Law Yes, the Braille-books. The blind can read them with the tips of their fingers.

The Jailor It s news to me. Do they look like real books?

The Second Law Yes, only they are very bulky The Bible forms 38 volumes measuring 10 inches by 13½ inches by 2 while a novel by Scott or Dickens makes from 8

to 10 volumes of like dimensions. Further they are very heavy Each Braille volume weighs 5 lbs.[144] Still as the blind cannot go to the library they are usually sent by post and the post office charges only a nominal rate.

The Illiterate Are the letters simple? Can we learn them?

The Psychologist Why should you go to that. You have your sight and you can learn the ordinary script.

The Braille-books are not written in the usual script. The letters are made of raised points arranged in accordance with a code

The Jailor When was it invented?

The Second Law Long ago Nearly a century ago In fact the first book for the blind produced in the United Kingdom was in 1827 [**] The first complete edition of the Bible in Braille was produced in 1890. [**]

The blind man What! a century back! Where can we get them?

The Second Law Most of the countries have now established a National Library for the Blind. England had it founded as early as 1882. America had it shortly thereafter Germany in 1894 [**] and—

The blind man What about us here?

The Second Law The movement is spreading. It had recently come to China and it may reach here at no distant date.

The blind man Till then?

The Second Law England and America will gladly serve you.

The blind man Have they enough volumes?

The Second Law Oh, yes. In England alone, the stock exceeds 100,000 volumes.

The Jailor A hundred thousand volumes for the blind!

The Psychologist Books are the main solace, you know which those afflicted with blindness possess.

The Jailor Are they popular?

The Second Law Yes. The borrowers of the British library for the blind exceed 10,000, while the annual issue has

gone beyond 50 000 It was only the other day that the Queen gave away prizes to the blind children who used the libraries most effectively

The Illiterate What kind of things do they read?

The Psychologist All kinds of things of course The requirements of the blind do not differ materially from those of others The standard of intelligence is as high, and certain of the faculties are not infrequently more highly developed

The blind man Why we have one among us here who is an expert in watch and clock repair He is now having a roaring business and his sighted competitors use their eyes to gaze at his success, in wonder and envy

The Second Law There are now several blind boys who appear for University examinations and get their degrees.

The Illiterate Then we are worse than the blind

The Blind man Yes, as the Lord said, Having eyes, see ye not."

The Second Law You can easily help yourself

The Illiterate But, I can t read

The Second Law If you go to the library you can have books read to you. There are readers specially appointed for the purpose

The Psychologist And in the meantime you can learn to read and write

The Illiterate I should love to But can I?

The Psychologist The library has a club for the liquidation of illiteracy Have yourself enrolled in it and in six months you can yourself read without help

The Illiterate May I bring my wife with me? She too would like to learn

The Jailor Yes. Your granny too!

The mother of the dumb Now what about *my* child He is deaf and dumb

The Second Law He is no special problem for me provided he can read and write

The mother of the dumb He cannot, that is my trouble.

The Second Law Then send him first to my sister "EDUCATION FOR ALL." She will readily equip him with the power to read and write. Perhaps our friend the Psychologist, may be able to give you more information.

The Psychologist It is now quite easy to teach the deaf and dumb. I shall arrange for it.

The mother of the dumb After he learns, can you give him books?

The Second Law With great pleasure I am here for that.

The mother of the dumb Have you ever come across deaf and dumb readers?

The Second Law Any number Here is one of the latest reports to hand "Across the desk of one reader's adviser a young girl passed a slip of paper Upon it were written the words —

"I only went through the fifth grade. Can you tell me some books to help me upwards."

The girl was deaf and dumb She sat down beside the adviser at her desk and they wrote their messages to each other on a large sheet of paper

"How old are you?" wrote the adviser

"Nineteen," she wrote in her turn, "I am a folder in a laundry I like poetry but I also want to know some facts.

The girl returned again and again for more books, encouraged by the knowledge that she could learn through her own ability to read."

The mother of the dumb Sweet girl! I wish my son could have that solace, granted him.

The Second Law The very purpose of my existence is to give it to him.

25 Library Chorus

All sing in a chorus

There a room for all
Let not the mean
Or learned dean
Restrict the books
T a favoured few
We ve Books for all

Books for the rich
And Books for the poor
Books for the man
And Books for the dame

Books for the sick
And Books for the fit
Books for the blind
And Books for the dumb

Books for the bungler
And Books for the wrangler
Books for the burgher
And Books for the cotter

Books for the lettered
And Books for the fettered
We ve Books for all
For one and all.

A stranger slips in singing

Books for all yes, Books for all
If and only if you add
Books for the land
And Books for the sea

The Jailor May I know sir to whom I am speaking?
The Stranger I am an ordinary sailor sir My vessel touched

this port last night As I was strolling along the street, your chorus caught my ear The porter told me that you were having a Books-for-the-Abnormal-Round-Table, and the old man was kind enough to let me in

The Jailor I am sorry you are too late. We are just breaking up

The Sailor Did our claim engage your attention at all, sir? We are the most abnormal people on earth spending all our days on water floating from end to end of this vast world.

The Second Law I am taking it up as a question by itself You may rest assured that you won t be forgotten

26 The Land and the Sea

While the antitheses between the rich and the poor the male and the female the town and the country and the normal and the abnormal, have been, from the beginning, engaging public attention with varying results, the antithesis between the land and the sea seems to have, for long, suffered neglect because *Out of sight s out of mind.* The seafaring people spend most of their time away from their home and their requirements and handicaps are seldom realised by those that lead a settled life on land. Nevertheless, even in India, which is not very prominent in her maritime activities and enterprises, as many as 600,000 persons [14] spend more time on water than on land. Even if their case is brought to our mind, the problem of giving EVERY MAN AT SEA HIS BOOK bristles with difficulties. In the words of the Executive Committee of the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust, "conditions inseparable from life at sea combine in creating obstacles to an organised service The impracticability of financial support from local rates the constant changes except in large companies, in ships crews uncertainties in the movements of tramp ships the need for exchange facilities in many of the principal ports of the world—all these factors contribute to the difficulty of the problem." Still the Second Law of Library Science insists that such difficulties

are not insurmountable, and should be solved. In response to its insistence, England founded in 1919 "the Seafarers Education Service which attempts to supply ships with books on an ambitious scale as regards both organisation and choice of books. In May of that year the World Association for Adult Education called together representatives of the owners and maritime trade unions and the mission societies. A permanent commission was thereupon appointed to undertake the work of providing libraries as part of a complete educational scheme for seafarers".[1]

261 Reading of the Crew

Experience soon showed that seafarers would read the best books and would treat them with respect. On long voyages especially most of the books get into use and it is estimated that nearly 75 per cent of the crew take to reading, while hardly 10 per cent of those on land are inclined to do so. At the end of 1928, the total number of ships thus served was 1276."

262 Finance for Seafarer's Library

The problem of putting the supply of books to seafarers on a proper financial basis has been fully discussed by the Public Libraries Committee.[2] It starts with the message of the Second Law Books for All, Whether on Land or on Water —the seafarers have no less right than their compatriots on land to a service of books paid for out of public funds. The only question is whether the responsibility for meeting their needs should be met by the State exclusively by co-operation between the State and the local bodies of the port towns, or by the latter alone. The members of the Committee do not regard the last alternative either as reasonable or as practicable. Nor would they recommend that the State should be saddled with the entire responsibility. On the other hand, they would suggest that the task should be divided evenly between the shipping companies, the seafarers themselves, the library authorities of the seaports and the State

The Committee makes the following analysis of the library income of the Seafarers Education Society during the first five years —

	£
Shipping Companies	6 899
The Chamber of Shipping	500
The Maritime Trade Unions	590
The Carnegie United Kingdom Trust	2,385
Sundry bodies and individuals	390
Sale of literature, etc.	84
	10 848

This analysis discloses the significant absence of the State and the Local Bodies The Committee would invite their attention to the call of the Second Law and urge them to put in their quota, not necessarily as money but perhaps better as books the books on the shelves of the Central Library of the State and the books on the shelves of the Municipal Libraries of the ports.

263 LIGHT HOUSE KEEPER

The keepers of light-houses stand in need of books no less than the sailors themselves. The fate of most of the men confined in the solitude of light-houses is as hard as that of Robinson Crusoe in his desert island Or perhaps worse While Robinson Crusoe had the freedom to wander about, even that freedom is denied to them While the fate of the ships and their passengers as well as the prosperity of the merchants on land depend on their vigilant and selfless services, it is but reasonable that the call of the Second Law on their behalf should be heard with the greatest willingness. While shore light houses may be served by the District Libraries or the Municipal Libraries, as the case may be, there should be a special central organisation for catering to the needs of isolated rock light-houses and light-ships. The total

number of light houses and light-ships that are thus regularly served with books in Great Britain and Ireland is nearly 300

27 The Adult and the Child

But the struggle of the Second Law takes the most puzzling phase when it has to negotiate the antithesis between the adult and the child It has been, for long, held by all—and it is even now being held by some—that the child has no right to any books other than text books and that it is only n ver do-well s that will "waste time in extra reading." On the other hand, it has been—and by some even is—at the same time believed that one who has completed formal schooling has already made the closest possible approach to the omniscience that books can supply One has only to witness, from the Cauvery Bridge at Kumbakonam, the surface of the Cauvery water bestrewn and bedecked with the printed pages of torn books, cast away by the candidates coming out of the College-Hall after the last of the University Examinations This casting off is meant by many as a ceremony to symbolise that they have passed the stage of books

271 Perpetual Education

This belief that the educated adult does not need books any longer can really be traced to what may be called 'the Camel Theory' of education—that before we start on the journey of life we can be given all the mental food necessary to carry us through the whole way It does not recognise that maturity has its educational aptitudes, aspirations and urgencies But this theory that education has primarily to do only with the training of children, has, however little basis in psychology and gets little support from practical experience Of course children must be educated. But an educational system, that does not recognise the perpetual need of the adult for the tools of education, is a mere futility In any dynamic democracy that is constantly evolving newer and better order of things, the definite task of Public Education is that of constantly educating the adults to participate intelligently in this new

order of life. Adults must first learn how to live the new order before they can teach it. It is the unfortunate neglect of this factor that has led to the clock of our educational curriculum being blindly but harmfully set back every now and then, at the instance of powerful politicians, who insist on having their fingers in every pie, but who, in the plenitude of their ignorance, would know of no curriculum other than what they were themselves drilled through in their own far off boyhood. Out of the practice of living must come the understanding that can translate this kind of living into education for the children. Hence, even though a man has as many degrees as a thermometer, even though he be graduated with the highest honours, he is grossly uneducated, or will soon become so, if he stops his reading and lets his brain grow rusty from the day of his convocation onwards. Education really begins at the cradle and ends only at the grave. All the educated adults are therefore comprehended in the ALL in BOOKS FOR ALL.

272 SERVICES TO ALUMNI

Persuading the graduate adult to submit himself to the sway of the Second Law is only one side of this phase of the struggle. The Second Law has an equally up-hill task to do to convince the University that her interest in the education of her *alumni* should not end on the day she confers her degrees on them. Although she has no right to force on them any more of formal teaching, the duty of continuing to educate her *alumni* through the books of her library is cast on her. One of the achievements of the Second Law of Library Science is the driving home of this new duty in which progressive Universities and their libraries are beginning to take an increasing part. The Second Law would even offer a threat to the University saying, "You cannot retain the interest and the loyalty of your graduates, unless you strengthen this new service to them through your books. There must be this higher intellectual bond. Nay viewed from the national point of view—and after all it is the National Exchequer that main-

tains you—such service to *alumni* is essential if the money spent on under graduate education is not to be thrown away for lack of proper follow up work after graduation "

273 Re-Orientation of Instruction

This brings us to the new orientation which the Second Law has brought about in the methods of instruction It tells the Universities, "The best thing that you can do for your raw under-graduate is to awaken in him a zest for thinking and the habit of reading. Remember education does not end in your class-room I have to begin where you leave It is easier for me to keep the reading undergraduates reading, than to catch them when they are men and women and start them afresh to read. In return, I have no objection to your relying upon me more fully in your class-room teaching indeed, I am quite prepared to be by your side in your daily task and take the undergraduate by hand and walk alone with him when he leaves you behind. Similarly it tells the schools,

The hope of the future lies in the children of to-day Remember that a large proportion of children walk straight from your care to mine There is no University for them Hence, it is imperative that you should give them the widest opportunity in your school-library to form the correct reading-habit. You know that the child, who forms a deep love of reading in the school, is more likely to continue that reading habit in after life Hence reinforce the library-work at school so that I can reinforce the library-work of the future In its attempt to scale over the perplexing antithesis between the adult and the child such is the reconciliation and understanding that the Second Law is achieving between the old and the new instruments of education, *viz.* the Schools and Colleges, on the one hand, and the Library on the other

28 Unlimited Democracy

Thus the struggle of the Second Law of Library Science was largely due to the unlimited democracy and the universality of its appeal. The vagaries of Nature may militate against

the rule of democracy in many spheres of life. No political or ethical creed can equalise the differences of physique temperament and intelligence any more than the differences in height or colour But, the Law "BOOKS FOR ALL," has proved to be more than a match to the mischievous whims of Nature She may blind the eyes of some she may tie up the tongues of others she may cast the lot of still others in solitude she may subject the majority to the grind of poverty And yet, the Second Law would treat them all alike and give to EACH HIS OR HER BOOK. It would scrupulously maintain the principle of equality of opportunity for books, of opportunity to learn, and of opportunity to enjoy It will not rest until it has gathered up one and all—the rich and the poor the men and the women, the land men and the seafarers, the young and the old, the deaf and the dumb, the literate and the illiterate—one and all, from all the corners of the earth until it had led them into the temple of learning and until it has secured for them that salvation which flows from the worship of Sarasvati, the Goddess of Learning.

281 SAMBANDHAR EPISODE

For a parallel to this universal sweep of the Second Law one has to go to Sambandhar and the 7th century Shiyali his birth place still treasures the memory of his last act. On the day he was married in the neighbouring village of Achalpuram, while he walked round the Temple with his newly wedded spouse, seeing the gates of heaven open suddenly he first gathered together his parents and kinsmen, his friends and visitors, his servants and retinue—and not only these but all the residents of the place, all the men of all the religions, whether moving with the crowd or not, whether blind or lame, whether young or old, whether willing or unwilling—he gathered one and all, first made them pass into the gates of heaven, and himself entered last with his beloved wife and became At-One with the ONE, in company with all the others. This last act of Sambandhar would, in its expression of universal brotherhood, serve as a symbol of the Second Law of

Library Science This last act of Sambandhar is described in detail by Sekkilar a famous biographer of the Tamil country in the twelfth century

சீர் பெருகு நீலநக்கர் திருமுருகர் முதல் தொண்டர்
ஏர் கெழுவு சிவபாதவிருதயர் நம்பாண்டார் சீ [துணோர்
ரார் திருமெய்ப்ப பெரும்பாணர் மற்றெனோர் அனைத்
பார் நிலவு கிளை சூழப் பன்னிகளோடுடன் புக்கார்

அணிமுத்தின் சிவிகை முதல அணிதாங்கிச் சென்றார்கள
மணிமுத்த மாலை புனை மடவார் மங்கலம் பெருகும்
பணி முற்றும் எடுத்தார்கள் பரிசனங்கள் விளைப்பாரம்
துணி வித்த உணர் வினராய்த் தொழுதுடன்
[புக்கொழிந்தார்

ஆறு வகைச் சமயத்தில அருந்தவரும் அடியவரும்
கூறு மறை முனிவர்களும் கும்பிட வந்து அணைந்தாரும்
வேறு திரு அருளினால் வீடு பெற வந்தாரும்
ஈறில பெரும் சோதியினுள் எல்லாரும் புக்கதன்பின்

காதலியைக் கைப்பற்றிக் கொண்டு வலம்கொண்டு
நீதி அகற்ற வந்தருளும் திருஞானசம்பந்தர் [அருளிச்
மாதன் எழில் வளர் சோதி நண்ணி அதனுடன் புகுவார்
போத நிலை முடிந்த வழிப்புக்கு ஒன்றியுடனானார் [1]

CHAPTER 3

SECOND LAW AND ITS DIGVIJAYA

30 Scope

In the last chapter we witnessed the slow struggle of the Second Law from trench to trench and barrier to barrier In this chapter we shall see the sweeping success of BOOKS FOR ALL, in its unimpeded *Digvijaya* or world-conquering expedition. The last chapter enumerated the varied vested interests entrenched against the march of the Second Law the present chapter will take us round the world in the wake of the majestic conquest of the message BOOKS FOR All. Till now we witnessed the spread of the Second Law into the different strata and sections of society we shall now witness the spread of BOOKS FOR ALL into the different continents and countries of the world. BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW had existed ever since books came to be written. But, BOOKS FOR ALL is a new concept. While libraries have existed from time immemorial, the Library Movement had its origin only within the memory of some of our octogenarians. It is not our object, at present, to trace the history of libraries that were built either to hoard books or to serve books, at most, for a select few Our attempt, on the other hand, will be to make a rapid survey of the growth of the modern Library Movement in as many communities as possible It is not with stray individual libraries, however big, that we shall deal here but, on the other hand, we shall have to deal with libraries in mass—with the out burst of myriads of libraries, many of them though tiny little ones, throbbing with the life and radiant with the effulgence due to the possession of the democratic gospel of the restless Second Law

31 America

The Second Law of Library Science dropped the seeds of the Library Movement all through the world. Some fell on

stony places, some among thorns, and some into good ground. But the seeds, that fell on the field of the New World, appear to have been the first to sprout They seem to have already reached the fruiting-stage and appear to have even commenced to scatter fresh seeds, far and wide As the first gardeners of this new family of plants, the Americans have had an opportunity of doing not a little pioneering work They have exercised this unique opportunity with unique success. The energy the enthusiasm and the resources of the New World came to be placed unreservedly at the disposal of this newly sprouting species, the Library Movement. New grounds were constantly prepared, new transplanations were frequently made, new species were boldly cultured, new classifications were carefully ventured, new techniques became necessary and were invented and new votaries were easily found in ever increasing numbers. A canny Scot, who had made a mountain of dollars, freely scattered his wealth in the cause of this Movement. This concatenation of circumstances is by far the luckiest that has ever occurred. The result has been that America has come to be rightly regarded as the land of libraries If we ask the nations of the world what they feel uppermost about their own Library Movement, most of them begin by saying, " We are following the lead of America. We are adopting American methods. Hence, it would be proper for us to commence our study of the *Digvijaya* of the Second Law with a brief survey of its exploits in this the first home of Library Movement

311 American Library Association

1876 appears to have made a distinct epoch in the progress of the Library Movement in America. That was the year in which the American Library Association was founded. Speaking at the Fiftieth Conference of that Association under the caption *Seed time and harvest* Mr R. R. Bowker one of its surviving founders, said, " Half a century ago there came together in New York three young men of ideas and ideals, brain seed which finds rich harvest in this assemblage, in the

American Library Association, and in the development of the Modern American Library system, whose methods, this International Conference indicates, have found their way around the world."[18] On October 4 1876 these three young men secured a gathering of ninety men and thirteen women, who formed "the American Library Association in which Mr Melvil Dewey the first Secretary proudly enrolled himself as No I and to which he gave the motto "The best reading for the greatest number at the least cost." At the Second Conference held in 1877 the attendance fell to sixty-six, and in a later one even reached as low as thirty However with the exception of the next two biennial conferences and the gap in 1894 the American Library Association has been holding conferences every year reaching the thousand mark in 1902 and the two thousand mark in 1926. The membership roll which began with 103 names has now swelled to 11,833 Again, in 1850 America had only 644 libraries of which many were open only to a select few But to-day there are no less than 6,500 libraries—all of which keep their doors open for all

302 LIBRARY SURVEY

Can we infer from such astounding figures that the Second Law has seen the end of its mission in America? The American Library Association was not sure of an answer to this question and hence, with the aid of a small grant from the Carnegie Corporation of New York, it engaged, in July 1925, an experienced special officer to make a survey of the situation. The definite questions that were put to this special officer were[14] :—

(1) How many of the people of the United States and Canada have access to public libraries?
(2) How many are still without public library service and where do they live?
(3) How far have public libraries grown since the American Library Association was founded?
(4) How far off is the goal of universal library service?

3121 Findings

The Second Law was vitally interested in the report of the special officer The survey was done with the utmost rapidity possible and the report of the officer saw the light of day in July 1926. What were the findings of the survey on the four fundamental questions? Here is a summary —

(1) About 64 millions or 56 per cent of the people live in library areas.

(2) About 50 millions or 44 per cent of the people are still without public library service and, of these, 3 millions live in towns and the remaining 47 millions live in rural areas.

(3) Since the American Library Association was founded, one of its purposes, as set forth in its Charter of 1879 *viz* "Promoting the library interests of the country by disposing the public mind to the founding and improving of libraries," is being steadily worked out. About 6 000 new libraries have been brought into existence. In place of the 2 million volumes, 70 million volumes have come to occupy the shelves of the public libraries. About 240 millions of volumes are being issued annually and a sum of about 90 million rupees is being spent per year on public libraries.

(4) The goal of universal library service has been reached only half way Apart from 44 per cent of the people being without library service, the existing number of volumes is entirely inadequate It gives only six tenths of a book per head of population. The number of volumes issued per year amounts only to 2 per capita and the amount annually spent on public libraries is less than a rupee per capita of the whole population This meagre supply giving such poor averages, is all turned to one half of the population, leaving the other half in the cold.

3122 Implementation

The Second Law protested that such inadequacy and the consequent inequality of library opportunity are too undemocratic and it asked, "The problem of providing public library service for the 50 million people, now without it, is large enough to challenge the best thought and effort you are capable of You had the proud privilege of initiating the Library Movement in the world Are you going to suffer that proud position to be lost?" "No I shall buck up," said America and the American Library Association straight away charged [illegible] its Standing Committee on Library Extension with the task of making "an organised effort toward the goal of *adequate public library service within easy reach of every one in the United States and Canada*, and directed it to carry on this effort in the closest co-operation with the League of Library Commissions, and all other interested agencies, through any or all of the following or similar methods —

(1) Field agents for assistance in the establishment of State library extension agencies, county libraries, and local libraries and the improvement of existing libraries.
(2) Publicity especially through rural social agencies and educational medium
(3) Free and wide distribution of publications to encourage library development
(4) Surveys of library conditions and needs, to develop state-wide or local library programmes.
(5) Study and compilation of library laws, drafting of model legislation.
(6) Encouragement of demonstrations and experiments, especially in the State and county fields.
(7) Encouragement of private subsidies as an aid to library extensions.
(8) Further study of library extension problems."

3123 Achievement

A brief account of the activities of this Library Extension Committee [illegible] in 1929 may give an idea of the earnestness

with which the challenge of the Second Law has been taken up If the amount appropriated by the Committee can be taken as an index, it may be stated that it was as much as half a lakh of rupees in addition to several subventions granted by the Carnegie Corporation for specific purposes. It held a conference in Chicago and ran a Summer Institute in the University of Wisconsin, as a refresher course for field workers. On the side of publicity it had many popular articles published in farm journals, like *American farming* *Prairie farmer* and *Southern planter* in women s magazines like *Farmer s wife* and *Women s home companion* and in educational periodicals like *Illinois teacher* *School life* and *Texas parent teacher* The total number of pieces of printed matter distributed free among the people was 75 670, in addition to considerable mimeographed matter Six exhibitions were held and several talks were given in group conferences. It helped in the enactment of permissive legislation in five States and library bills were drafted for five other States. It secured financial aid from a charitable endowment for founding fifteen new county libraries and for strengthening thirteen existing ones.

3124 Application to India

If the original home of the modern Library Movement has need for such publicity for so many conferences and for such an expenditure " to dispose the public mind to the founding and improvement of libraries, what should be the need for similar work in our own country where the Library Movement is still only a name? Not only have we no Carnegie Corporation at our back no angel with his *Akshayapatra*, to give unending financial help, but, on the other hand, we have the demon of inertia, which seems to be a clever *Kamarupi*. This monster takes as many different shapes as Proteus. It is now a mob scoffing at library publicity as vulgar now a cynic trying to trace all public service to some ulterior personal motive and again a misanthrope cursing that no good can ever come to us it appears as jealousy or as benumbing philosophy

Such an atmosphere is not congenial to the growth of Library Movement. Relief can come, perhaps, only from the State. Once the prestige of State action clears the atmosphere, the Library Movement may get a chance to properly dispose the public mind and find its further food in the natural soil of public opinion

313 Mexico

A step to the south takes us to Mexico Here the seeds of the Library Movement appear to have been lying on barren soil until the Revolution of 1910 created aspirations for popular culture. The earlier efforts, made to see that culture and education might not be the close preserve of the upper classes, did not however prove effective until a Ministry of Public Education was created by the Act of April 1917 This Ministry was charged by the President with the task of bringing about the much needed "social transformation." Accordingly it attempted, for the first time, to construct a bridge across the cultural gulf between the classes and the masses. Before long, it discovered that the only suitable bridge was that of Public Libraries and established a Department of Libraries in September 1920 Finding that the majority of the people were illiterate, the ministry had to adopt rapid methods for the removal of illiteracy with the aid of what were known as "cultural missions." The work of the Department has been already so successful, that Mexico has now about 1,500 popular libraries, 1,000 school libraries, 800 industrial libraries and 500 rural libraries. It sent out in 1927 nearly 700,000 volumes to the libraries in the rural areas. The amount appropriated varies according to the condition of the public treasury It was nearly Rs. 700,000 in 1923 but only about Rs. 60,000 in 1927 The number of readers crossed the million mark in 1927 The technical section of the Department is maintaining a union catalogue of the book-resources of the whole country and runs a bibliographical magazine entitled *El libro y el pueblo*

3131 Difficulties Overcome

The difficulties that confronted the Ministry of Education in this mission of 'social transformation were not a few Mexico is a country of many races, many climates and many opinions. It is likewise a land of castes and social orders Great distances and slow communications make it very difficult to mobilise public opinion The inferiority complex of the Indian face to face with the European hinders the progress of national integration."[114] Such a variegated Mexico is now being integrated by the Ministry of Education through the agency of the school and the library The libraries are maintained, some by the Federal Government and some by the State Governments Their stock of books aims to satisfy everybody's taste and to meet everybody's needs. It includes, not only books of the ordinary educational type, but also industrial manuals, agricultural hand books and books on Home Management, in accordance with local requirements. Lecturers equipped with cinema reels and lantern slides are sent even to the remotest villages to attract the people to the libraries. Children's rooms are opened to induce the reading habit and love of books, even before habits become rigid. Thus, Mexico has demonstrated what can be done by a handful of officials, working with enthusiasm and devoting all their energy to a task full of obstacles, if they have at their back a willing popular ministry

3132 Carnegie Help

In 1926 the Second Law induced another *Akshayapatra* bequeathed by Carnegie—The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace—to go to the help of the veteran Library Association of the neighbouring United States, saying Why should you not occasionally cross the southern line and help the new plant that is sprouting in the Mexican fields ? I shall bear the cost." The American Association zealously seized this offer and appointed a Committee for Library Co-operation with the Hispanic Peoples to devote its undivided attention to this brotherly act. This Committee began its work with great

seriousness and with the aid of a subvention of about Rs. 3,500 received from the Carnegie Endowment, sent an influential deputation of American Librarians to attend the Second Annual Library Congress held at Mexico city in April 1928 This friendly visit was reciprocated by a Mexican Commission which attended the West Baden Conference of the American Library Association. This Commission utilised its sojourn as fully as possible to inform itself thoroughly of the American library methods. They visited several libraries, large and small, and no effort was spared to make their visits as informing and helpful as possible. One interesting outcome of a visit to the Library of Congress was that the librarian of the latter announced that a complete set of the Library of Congress printed catalogue cards would be deposited in the Mexican National Library As the Library of Congress had no appropriation from which the cost of packing and transmitting this invaluable bibliographical tool could be met, the Carnegie Endowment for International Peace gave a sum of Rs. 5 000 for the purpose, in addition to the Rs. 10 000 it had granted to cover the expenses of the Commission.

3133 Library Manual

This exchange of visits acted as a fillip to the growth of the Library Movement in Mexico and the problem of keeping up proper standards of administration became very acute on such a rapid growth of libraries. To meet this situation the Carnegie Endowment readily voted a sum of about Rs. 12,000 towards the cost of printing 5 700 copies of Dr Ernest Nelson s *Las bibliotecas en los Estados Unidos* for free distribution among the libraries of Central and South America. [19] This is a carefully written hand-book, describing the methods of library management prevalent in the United States. Mexico gave it a cordial reception as a helpful source of information In fact, the demand for copies was so great that a second edition had to be issued in 1929 Thus the Second Law saw the Library Movement grow vigorously from day to day among the Mexican people As a result of its successful

growth coupled with the spread of rural schools, "a Mexico different from the one that existed before the revolution is being forged."[19] When the nation shall finally come of age the students of its history will find that not a small part of the credit for its maturing should fall to the mission of the Second Law of Library Science

314 Central and South America

The Library Movement in the remaining countries of Latin America is still in its infancy It is only now that the ideas about the necessity of spreading education among the masses are getting broadened in most of these countries. The rich men and women in Latin America have not yet realised the need for or the wisdom of bequeathing money either for libraries or for other educational purposes, their donations going rather to religious and charitable bodies."[21] Hence the cost of nurturing the Library Movement has to be met by the Governments themselves.

3141 Help of U S A.

However the message of the Second Law of Library Science is being slowly spread in all the 20 Republics constituting South America. The American Library Association's Committee for Library Co-operation with the Hispanic People is extending to these Republics also the same co-operation as it is showing to Mexico. At the 1929 Conference held at Washington and attended by all the South American ambassadors the ambassador of Colombia stated, "Before the Committee on Library Co-operation with the Hispanic Peoples lies a field destined to yield an abundant harvest Those who are acquainted with the problem of literary Commerce recognise after careful study that the United States is destined to be the book centre for the Southern Continent The South now more than ever needs to read."[22]

3142 Pan American Union

Another important organisation which is trying to bring

about a uniform spread of Library Movement in South America is the Pan American Union, which was organised on a permanent basis by a convention unanimously adopted by the Sixth International Conference of American States, held in 1928. One of the functions of this Union is "to assist in the development of cultural relations, between the American Republics" as specified in the sixth Article of the Convention. " This Union which is housed in a palace presented by Carnegie, works in close co-operation with the American Library Association and the Carnegie Endowment for International Peace and much good is expected from its work in the propagation of the message of the Second Law of Library Science in all the twenty nations of South America.

315 Lucky Alliance

It can be seen from the above that an outstanding factor that has characterised the expedition of the Second Law in the New World is the incessant help rendered by that constant ally Carnegie, and his benefactions. It is extremely doubtful whether the New World could have carried away the palm in the world s library race but for the phenomenal service rendered by Carnegie to the mission of the Second Law Hence, it may not be out of place to devote some space to Andrew Carnegie himself before we take leave of the New World.

3151 Andrew Carnegie

The son of a Scottish handloom weaver who used to come home at night in utter despair with the distressing news, "Well, Andra, I canna get nae mair work" and of a shoemaker's daughter seeking to improve the family fortunes by keeping a "sweetie shop" at Dunfermline, Andrew Carnegie began life at 13 on Rs. 13 a month as a bobbin boy in a cotton factory of the United States,[14] and finally "emerged from the mephitic glooms of Pittsburg and scattered largesse over all the earth," " as a God-sent ally of the Second Law of Library Science

3152 Two Carnegies

It has been pictured by A. G Gardiner that there were two Andrew Carnegies in one body and with one soul—the business man making millions and the philanthropist spending millions—without any conflict whatever between the two each coming into action on the word of command and vanishing when his task was done Business!" and up sprang the Iron king, keen as a razor "Humanity!" and up sprang the Philanthropist bursting with benevolence His remarkable business capacity his tireless industry and his clear pre vision enabled Andrew Carnegie to amass a fabulous fortune

3153 Gospel of Wealth

His own "*Gospel of wealth* —first formulated in the *North Atlantic review* of June 1899 in the words "This, then, is held to be the duty of the man of wealth To set an example of modest, unostentatious living, shunning display or extrava gance to provide modestly for the legitimate wants of those dependent upon him and, after doing so to consider all surplus revenues which came to him, simply as trust funds, which he is called upon to administer in the manner which, in his judgment, is best calculated to provide the most beneficial results for the community the man of wealth thus becoming the mere trustee and agent for his poorer brethren" " —thus, his own *Gospel of wealth*," made him give away in Raghu s fashion, practically all he saved, for the improvement of mankind."

3154 Carnegie Corporation

The amount he gave for public benefactions was as much as a hundred crores of rupees. A large share of this colossal sum was put into the hands of the Carnegie Corporation of New York created by an Act of the State of New York, embodied as chapter 297 of the laws of 1911 "to promote the advancement and diffusion of knowledge and understanding among the people of the United States, by aiding technical schools, institutions of higher learning, libraries, scientific

research, hero funds, useful publications, and by such other agencies and means as shall from time to time be found appropriate therefor "[1]

3155 Library Gift

Although he stated in his letter of gift that "no wise man will bind trustees for ever to certain paths, causes and institutions," [18] he disclosed his mind by adding the rider "My desire is that the work which I have been carrying on shall continue during this and future generations." [18] It is well known that the work which the public associates with Carnegie's name is the work which he has done as an ally of the Second Law and of the Library Movement generally Indeed it has been said that when he put his fingers into his waist coat pocket one might expect he was going to fetch out a library " [14] Probably deep in his own mind his innumerable library gifts took precedence over all others in importance There was only one genuine remedy he believed, for the ills that beset the human race and that was enlightenment. "Let there be light" was the motto that in the early days, he insisted on placing in all his library buildings. He sincerely believed that the light can be made to reach all only by providing BOOKS FOR ALL. It was this sincere faith in the message of the Second Law that made him such a staunch supporter of Library Movement and brought about such a lucky alliance between him and the Second Law

3156 Extension to British Colonies

By an Amending Act of 1917 the Carnegie Corporation of New York was further "empowered to hold and administer any funds given to it for use in Canada or the British Colonies for the same purposes as those to which it is by law authorised to apply its funds to the United States." [14] The first result of this broadening Amendment was for the Carnegie Corporation to carry the gospel of the Second Law into Canada. But, in 1928, finding that the whole American atmosphere was well charged with the message, BOOKS FOR

ALL, the Carnegie Corporation wanted to carry that message into the Eastern Hemisphere as well. Prompted by this desire, looking eastwards from its home in New York, it surveyed the immediately visible regions of the Old World. First it espied a tiny little red spot standing out from the mainland of Europe It was the United Kingdom. But finding that the canny Scot had made a separate and exclusive settlement for the land of his birth, its eyes began to sweep the Atlantic coast in search of another red spot. How one wishes that India had an Atlantic sea board! At last, it spotted out a real red region at the southern end of the dark continent. That very moment, it urged a special commission to jump Hanuman like across the vast Atlantic, and come back speedily with a definite scheme to usher in the era of the Second Law in that important southern outpost of the British Empire.

32 South-Africa

321 Carnegie Commission

Accordingly the Carnegie Library Commission, consisting of one American Librarian and one Scottish Librarian, landed at Cape Town on August 20, 1928 It toured the Union for three months and found it in complete possession of the Second Law's rival, *viz.*, BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW No doubt it found some 211 libraries.

322 Subscription Filter

But they were all screened "by the fine meshes of a £1 subscription sifter" The result was that readers were so few that the shelves showed little empty space even when every reader had his full quota at home and that the libraries were crying out for additions to shelving, whereas, if the Second Law had been heard, relief would have come through a considerable number of books being constantly in the hands of people and also through the larger percentage of books getting worn-out and discarded. Thus the poorer Whites were kept out of the benefits of the libraries by this £1 sifter

323 COLOUR BAR

The Blacks and the Browns, that formed the majority of the population were utterly denied the use of books The Commissioners describe this big blockade on the path of BOOKS FOR ALL in quite unmistakable terms —"The South African is willing—perhaps has no other way out—for the native to cook his food, care for his children keep his household in order serve him in a personal way carry his books to and from the library but he would feel that an end of his regime were at hand if this same servant were permitted to open these books and read therein." [3]

324 STATUS OF LIBRARIAN

The commission found that all the evils that follow from the negation of the first two laws of Library Science were abundant in the Union of South Africa. The person selected as librarian was usually some local person with the generally accepted qualifications of a love for books or the need for a job" The laymen constituting the library committee invariably arrogated to themselves the capacity to discharge "all of those executive functions" which are usually considered "as the reasons why librarians are trained employed and paid for" Under such circumstances, "Librarianship is usually not held to be a profession it is merely a custodianship The ridiculous result of the prevalence of such a conception of librarianship is seen in the following experiences of the Commissioners "*For example, in one fair sized town where* as invariably we were received with unimpeachable hospitability tea was served in the midst of our deliberations—served by the librarian and her assistant who their duties nicely performed retired and were seen no more. In other places the librarian was not even introduced—not, be it insisted upon, through any intent of discourtesy on the part of the Committee."

325 WRONG STANDARD

Again the Commissioners found the library buildings

"poorly planned, highly inconvenient and utterly unattractive" They also observe that "Fittings are made seemingly with no knowledge of plans elsewhere found practicable. Shelving too often starts two feet from the floor and runs to the ceiling, thus making ladders a necessity" The same books were stocked in every library but all unread. This tendency for every library to buy every book which its readers may occasionally require, with utter disregard of library co-operation and co-ordination, led to a sad waste of money tied up capital in unproductive books and made it impossible for the people to have important special books which could have a direct bearing upon their success in opening up an undeveloped country

326 Academic Libraries

College libraries were found to have suffered most, from the absence of a strong championship of the Second Law The Commissioners have recorded "The Universities of Pretoria and Grahamstown have fewer books than one could reasonably expect to find in a good high school in America.

The quite ambitious University of the Witwatersrand at Johannesburg offers the unique example of an institution of higher learning without library and without librarian Classification Cataloguing and those aids in the use of books which are to-day considered an essential part of a college library are either lacking or indifferently done Every staff is almost hopelessly undermanned and quite generally with no one who has had library training The books are kept under lock and key"

327 Application to India

Such a lengthy extract from the findings of the commissioners has been given because it seems to describe the Indian conditions with great accuracy The hope that the commissioners strictures on such conditions may perhaps, open the eyes of those that have to do with the management and maintenance of libraries in India is the only justification for

such a long digression. Switching back to the main purpose of this chapter let us enquire how the Carnegie Commission has prepared the ground for the easy and certain progress of the Second Law in the Union of South Africa

328 RECOMMENDATIONS OF THE COMMISSION

The Commission s trips about the country made it possible to convey the message of the Second Law to the Library Committees, especially to school authorities, to government officials and, in short, to every person and organisation that could be induced to stop and listen. With rare exceptions, the people concerned recognised the faults in their scheme and often expressed astonishment that they had never noticed them before When the work of the Commission culminated in the Conference at Bloemfontein on November 15-17 1928, the dead weight of "BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW" was buried without tears and without discussion and the only business that had to be transacted was to work out details on the assumption that the Law "BOOKS FOR ALL" was to be given possession of the land and, in fact, a scheme was finally forged with the usual Carnegie touch

(1) The Union Government was urged to recognise the need for encouraging all school-children in the habit of reading books by giving them guidance in the use of books and to recognise the provision of library facilities as a legitimate charge on the public revenue of the State, so that the educational services founded by the State may prove effective and give a fair and lasting return on the amount spent on them

(2) The Union Government and the Carnegie Corporation should each contribute an annual sum of Rs 1 70 000 up to a specified period, after which the Corporation is to withdraw step by step and finally turn to other lands, leaving the entire responsibility on the shoulders of the Government.

(3) The National Library Scheme should consist of one main centre, six secondary centres, several minor centres and innumerable distributing stations scattered throughout the country—in village schools, police stations, post offices, Y M C A. s and so on.

(4) Representations should be made to the South African Railways and the General Post Office to assist in the development of free library service by free transportation of books.

(5) Books should be served free to one and all irrespective of the colour of the skin

(6) A Library Association should be formed to maintain proper professional standards and to propagate Library Movement.

(7) A suitable library legislation should be undertaken to place the sway of the Second Law on a permanent footing.

(8) And last but not least the Commission would recommend that "it is highly desirable for a director or an organising director to be on the ground" immediately to plan the proper working of the scheme in association with a National Library Board

The Commission emphasised the grave importance of the last mentioned initial step with the words "Whether the funds of the Corporation and of the Union are to be wasted or whether they are to become golden seeds which shall produce nourishing crops year after year will depend very largely upon these first principles of library culture."

3281 Book Production

Before we leave the Union of South Africa, the present conditions of the Indian book world call for a special mention of a step of far-reaching importance taken by the Carnegie Corporation at the instance of the Commission The Corporation gave a grant in-aid of about Rs. 26,000 to an

existing native press to enable it to increase the quantity as well as to improve the bibliographical quality of the books in the indigenous Bantu languages

3291 East Africa

The Carnegie Commission has made similar recommendations to prepare the way for the entry of the Second Law into the Rhodesias and the Kenya Colony But we may skip over the remaining parts of Africa

33 Eastern Europe

The outburst of enthusiasm that has characterised the post war reception of the Second Law in every other important country of Europe is quite unmistakable This has been due not a little, to the grim light that the fiery furnace of the Great War threw on the fatal results of providing unequal opportunities for self-education, under the spell of the antiquated twins, EDUCATION FOR THE CHOSEN FEW and BOOKS FOR THE CHOSEN FEW The democratic ideals and the social aspirations that were generated by that upheaval led to the banishment of these two mischief makers in company with some of the crowned heads of Central and Eastern Europe. The new mental stir of the newer nations just liberated from age long repression seems to have spread into the older and the neutral countries as well. They seem to have all vied with one another in making the quickest preparations possible for the reception of the Second Law of Library Science in their midst. New Acts were forged or old Acts were amended to carry out its message with the least possible delay BOOKS FOR ALL was one of the cries that rent the European sky in the decade that followed the Treaty of Versailles. But the manner in which Library Movement worked its way varied from country to country

331 GREECE

We need not linger long over worn-out Greece which greets us in her faded glory as we cross the Mediterranean Sea

332 BULGARIA

The vehicle, that it adopted in the first country that we reach as we proceed north from Greece, is of special significance to India Bulgaria seems to show us how to put new wine in old bottles She had in her possession a peculiar old institution called *Chitalista* which is a sort of library combining the activities of a Theatre Movies, Social Hall (Community Social Hall) and library " This time honoured institution, which is held by the people in great affection is the agent selected to distribute BOOKS TO ALL. The innumerable lectures it organises on subjects of current interest, such as Hygiene Agriculture, Sociology Science, Religion and so on lead to the popularisation of books, especially among the young. The Minister of Education who is a great library enthusiast had a law enacted in 1928 which has resulted in rapidly increasing the number of *Chitalistas* which were already as many as 1984 He further appointed a library-organiser and had her trained in England and America. She has a place in the National Council of Education The expert knowledge and the unbounded enthusiasm of this library-organiser are proving to be fitting lieutenants of the Second Law in its expedition through Bulgaria.

333 RUMANIA

Bulgaria s northern neighbour Rumania, has also adopted a similar plan. When the time came to house the Second Law she easily adapted her *Astras* and *Atheneums* for the purpose. These old institutions seem to have readily taken to the modern library idea as ducks to water The *Astra*, which is but a short name for The Association for Rumanian Literature and Culture " conducts courses for illiterates, organises study circles and maintains libraries It has to its credit as many as 3,000 libraries. The financial handicap experienced by the Ministry of Education has led it to rely largely upon such old institutions and on private benefactions for the spread *of the message of the Second Law*

3331 Two Birds at One Stroke

The financial handicap has also led the Ministry of Education to take another interesting step, which seems to be worth adopting in our country where, in province after province the Finance Member raises the bogie of financial commitments, the moment the question of a Public Library Bill is raised. The Rumanian Ministry of Education seems to have attempted to hit two birds at one stroke The 8,000 and odd school libraries with over a million of volumes which came to be established during the last few years, have been thrown open to the Public at large. The economy in administration and the intensive use of the book resources that will result from such a step will afford great financial relief to most of our provinces for many years to come

3332 Relapse to Illiteracy

Another great lesson that the experience of Rumania teaches us is the futility of and the wastage involved in having a scheme of compulsory education, without making any provision side by side to supply the books that are necessary to keep up and give exercise to the literacy that is purchased at a heavy cost. In spite of the Cuza Constitution of 1866 having had a section on free compulsory education, the census of 1899 disclosed that 78 per cent of the inhabitants above seven years of age could neither read nor write, the number of women illiterates reaching 90 per cent." * Such was the havoc of relapse to illiteracy due to the absence of library provision Hence it can be seen that it is only the most reckless custodian of Public Finance that will say "I have just enough money to spare for compulsory education but none for library provision "

334 YUGOSLAVIA

The three new nations of Central Europe which form the western neighbours of Rumania have taken to the modern library movement with great avidity In each of these countries, the Ministries of Education have, from the beginning,

understood their primary duty to lie in the removal of illiter acy and the provision of public libraries to keep up the literacy so acquired. In Yugoslavia, for example a special Department has been established in the Ministry of Education to develop this new instrument of popular education. The Department has already organised more than a thousand village libraries " and nearly 700 courses for illiterates, in which hundreds of men and women are learning to read and write The collections in such village libraries contain not only books intended for recreation but also those that relate to Household Work, so that the villagers may by reading them lead a happier cleaner and brighter life

335 Hungary

In Hungary things have not yet taken a final shape. She is yet too poor to provide Books for All, as she has not yet fully recovered from the consequences of the war the revolution and the dismemberment of the country Still, the Second Law is making its best efforts even there. The Minister of Education inaugurated in 1923 an elaborate enquiry into the needs and the means of effective popular education As a result of this enquiry an Adult Education Bill has just been drafted. The third chapter of the Bill deals with the library movement. It makes it obligatory for villages and towns to found libraries. Provision is also made for such places, as are too small and poor to maintain a library of their own to be aided by travelling libraries maintained by the County Councils and aided by the State.

336 Czechoslovakia

But the greatest success has attended the expedition of the Second Law only in Czechoslovakia. As soon as she escaped from the clutches of Austria—a name that meant to her "every device that could kill the soul of a people, corrupt it with a modicum of material well-being, deprive it of freedom of conscience and of thought, undermine its sturdiness, sap its steadfastness and turn it from the pursuit of its ideal" "—

the teachings of one of her awakeners " Palacky rushed to her mind One of his teachings was Through education alone could the way of salvation be found " and education was interpreted not merely as putting the children in school but as a life-long process. Such an education meant the provision of BOOKS FOR ALL and hence With all the problems of a new nation to face Czechoslovakia made public library service compulsory in cities and villages by the Act of July 1919 Very small communes were given ten years of grace By 1929 there was very nearly universal library service " "

3361 Library Act

The provisions of the Act were drawn up with the greatest regard for practical details It provided for a graded system of libraries. Communes with more than 10,000 inhabitants should have a trained librarian should have all the departments of a public library and should keep them open on all days. In smaller communes, a few of the departments may be dropped, the library may be closed on a few days of the week and a librarian who has undergone only a rapid one-month s course in library science may be emyloyed. In small parishes, the village teacher may administer the library with the aid of a practical handbook supplied by the Ministry of Education. The finances of the libraries are to be ordinarily found from special local rates. The poorer communes, however are to be aided by the Ministry of Education by a free supply of suitable books. The Ministry should also maintain a School of Library Science for the creation of a competent library corps to enforce the rule of the Second Law and arrange for the periodical inspection of the libraries for the maintenance of proper standards.

3362 Achievement

As the result of such a carefully framed Library Act, the number of libraries has risen from 3 400 in 1920 to 16,200 in 1926 There is, on an average, one library for 894 inhabitants and 44 books for every 100 inhabitants. 7 1 per cent of

the population have become constant readers, the average number of books read by a reader in a year being 18 3 [14]

3363 Application to Madras

The area of Czechoslovakia is comparable to that of Tamil Nadu, while its population is about two-thirds of that of the Tamils Hence a comparison between the two countries cannot be said to be invidious. Czechoslovakia does not regard an annual public library expenditure of about Rs 15 00,000[14] extravagant In fact it works out to be only a little short of 2 annas per capita. The great importance that she attaches to libraries can be seen by comparing this amount spent on libraries with the total annual expenditure of the State, which is about Rs. 10,00,00,000 [14] Now the annual expenditure of Madras is nearly Rs. 17 00 00 000 One is curious to ask what is the total public library expenditure of Madras Is it, at least, Rs. 1,00 000 ? Whereas Czechoslovakia spends nearly 1 5 per cent of her revenue on public libraries, Madras does not set apart even ·05 per cent of her revenue for library provision.

3364 Linguistic Minority

Another feature in which Czechoslovakia resembles our land is in the heterogeneity of its people They are made up of several races, which speak different languages. But she has shown that these features need not be regarded as standing in the way of our carrying out the mandates of the Second Law She has, in fact, met the situation by a generous provision in the Library Act, that any minority community that is at least 400 strong in a commune should be provided with a special public library of its own, whose managing committee should be made up solely of members of that community The interests of the communities, whose strength falls short of this minimum, are to be borne in mind by the main library of the commune, in its book-selection.

3365 Book Production

Another interesting matter in which the Czechoslovakian Government sets us an example lies in the interest with which it fosters the creation of books suitable for library use Mr T G Masaryk the first President and in a sense the maker *of Czechoslovakia, created a fund of about Rs. 4,00 000* for the institution of a quasi public organisation "*in close relation to the central offices of the State*" for the direc tion of the cultural activities of the nation It has been appropriately named the Masaryk Institute and has been func tioning from April 1925 One of its activities is the provision of "books such as are suitable for libraries under advantage ous conditions Through specially drawn-up questionnaires it studies the psychology of the reader and the power and influence of the printed word," and "interests itself in finding good books for the young, for school libraries and for youth in general It publishes a critical monthly *Unor* specially devoted to literature for the young issues lists of good books for youthful readers and organises every year exhibitions of suitable reading matter for young people." [14] This is a fine example of all that will be done to further the library move ment, by a State which sincerely believes in the message of the Second Law

337 POLAND

Now a further step to the North takes us into Poland—the persecuted Poland—which regained its full freedom only after the Great War The moment Poland recovered political independence in 1918 and "the reunited Polish nation regain ed control of its destinies, the cause of education became one *of the principal concerns of society and of the reborn Polish* State" [15] At the initial stages many voluntary bodies like the Society of People's Libraries, and the People's School Association, came into prominence and carried the torch of library movement with willingness and enthusiasm. The former is responsible for the establishment of about 1,300 libraries, while the latter has to its credit about 500 stationary

libraries and about 800 travelling libraries. Local authorities too are taking their part. The city of Lodz, for example, has one adults library and five children s libraries. These libraries are also centres of educational work carried on systematically by popular lectures and readings illustrated by music and pictures. In many of the children s libraries, self-government and self management are being introduced.

3371 Library Legislation

The State has, by now realised that such voluntary enterprises are too inadequate to meet the library needs of the country and that the mandate of the Second Law can be properly carried out only by legislation A Library Bill that has been recently drafted makes it obligatory for every commune to establish a library the smaller communes being served by travelling libraries provided by the central library of the District. The necessary funds are to be got by a special library rate. The Union of Polish Librarians, with its headquarters at Warsaw is doing its best to further this legislation When the Bill is passed into Law about 15 000 libraries will come into existence [14] and the Second Law will establish its permanent sway in Poland

338 Soviet Union of Russia

A step to the East lands us in Russia—that vast territory which stretches across the entire breadth of two continents. As a certain amount of scepticism seems to lurk in the minds of people about recent happenings in Soviet Russia, it may be well to begin the description of the Second Law's great achievements in that land of mystery with an illuminating quotation from the honest expression of opinion of an impartial observer—Professor Paul Monroe, Director of the International Institute, Teachers College, Columbia University—based on his experiences of a recent sojourn among the Russians. His description of the manner in which the Law Books for All is spreading into the remotest corners of Russia is contained in a section entitled, *The village culture*

centre cottage library or the people s house in a paper he has contributed to *International conciliation*

" The village and rural population not much interested in theory and not well informed is the most difficult to reach. One instrument invented for the education of the peasantry is the *cottage library or culture centre or People s House* A building is set aside for the culture use of the little community In this are to be found a few books, many pamphlets, newspapers and posters. Much of the population education is carried on by posters, issued by the central government as well as by other agencies. These relate to all sorts of subjects. care of children nature of diseases and especially of infections propaganda against the fly mosquito hookworm and other infections or carriers of infection There are posters on the use of farm machinery on the selection of seeds, on methods of land fertilization and cultivation, such as deep plowing posters on anti-alcoholism and anti-religion, on the subject of foreign religion, on the subject of foreign relations and on all communistic doctrines. These cottage libraries always are used for the gathering of peasants in the evening Many of these culture centres have radios, and the broadcasting from Moscow is excellent.

Most of the centres contain a small stage for dramatic performances and serve as centres of recreation. The dramatic performance is one of the approved methods of instruction as well as of amusement.

" The cottage libraries are conducted by committees, each having charge of one specific activity In such work is found also one of the chief educational agencies for improving the condition of the adults. One very popular form of performance *is the dramatization of the news of the week by selected groups.*

" In this centre also meet the various committees that have charge of the various interests of the village and its government health, agriculture, schools, roads, relations with the county or district government communistic education and propaganda young communist organizations, etc.

"The question of the extent of the welfare and educational activities arises again in connection with these institutions, as it does with the schools. I can only give my own experience In the district of Leninakan 2,000 miles from Moscow which I visited, there are 201 villages. The district government reports that in 65 of these it has established culture centres that 65 other villages have established such centres of their own volition leaving about a similar number yet unreached. I personally visited six villages. All of them had schools all had cottage libraries " "

3381 Lenin s Proclamation

As a matter of fact, as soon as the New Russia emerged from the October Revolution the spirit of "EDUCATION FOR ALL" rushed into it with eagle speed in company with the Second Law of Library Science. Russia drank deep of the Pestalozzian conception of social education as "the polishing of one link of a large chain, which unites all humanity into a single whole and the errors in the education and guidance of men consist for the most part in that separate links are isolated from the chain and one begins to philosophise over them as if they alone existed and as if in the quality of rings they did not represent the property of the whole chain."[1] Lenin proclaimed at the 1921 All-Russian Congress of Workers for Popular Enlightenment, "You must remember that an illiterate uncultured people cannot conquer It was held "Unless the masses are enlightened, a rigorous heightening of their economic welfare is impossible co-operation is impossible and a genuine political life is impossible. Hence the first fact to which the energy of the new government was turned was the alarming illiteracy and ignorance of the people "According to the census of 1920 sixty-eight per cent of the inhabitants of the Soviet Union were illiterate One of our primary tasks has consequently been the abolition of illiteracy By 1933-34 the ability to read and write should be the possession of every citizen of the Soviet Union " In the words

of the President of the State University of Moscow such was the resolve that was made [144]

3382 Service to Neo-Literates

Thus the immediate education of the adult population became a most important part of the work of the Commissariate of Education The work involved the creation of "centres for the liquidation of illiteracy political-cultural clubs and reading rooms (Lenin Corners) workers and peasants houses permanent and itinerant libraries self education centres and magazines propaganda work (including tableaux, plays, etc.) for special campaigns Quick learners help the slower semi-literates the illiterates As soon as they can read a little they are encouraged as semi-literates to go to the local cottage reading room (Isba) or club and then to the library After six months of such work a school is set up to prepare abler persons for a Rabfac." [145]

3383 Achievement

The tenth anniversary of the October Revolution was made an occasion to take stock of the achievements of EDUCATION FOR ALL and BOOKS FOR ALL in a decade s expedition in Russia. It was found that "approximately ten million persons were taught to read and write The number of stationary libraries increased from 4 640 to 6 414 of urban moving libraries from 3,054 to 25,579 and of village moving libraries from 3 167 to 4,343 In the Russian Republic in 1926, there were 7,250 circles in which 120,000 persons were studying." [146] The latest year book on hand makes mention of 46,759 schools for illiterates and 50,000 travelling libraries.[147]

3384 *Journal for Neo-Literates*

This phenomenal spread of Library Movement has resulted in such a wide-spread love of reading that a reading room is not infrequently found even in the lobbies of cinemas, where the audience waits for the next performance. To satisfy the craving for reading, that is evinced by those that

are just emerging from the grip of illiteracy a monthly journal is published under the title *Down with Illiteracy* the extensive use of illustrations and diagrams throughout the text makes it possible to put elementary articles on political and economic subjects before those who are just beginning to master the technique of reading.

3385 Book Production

The activities of the Publication Department of the Soviet Union illustrate the part that the State should play in the regeneration of a country like ours where more than half a century a divorce between the intelligentsia and the mother tongue has crippled the latter and has hence left the masses in utter ignorance of the recent transformation of the scientific, economic, political and cultural world The Soviet Union has evolved a novel institution of what are called Village Book Correspondents. "These correspondents have arisen in answer to a realisation on the part of the peasants of the part played by books It is the mission of the book correspondent to keep the State Printing Office informed as to the types of books which have been most useful to the peasantry most of whom are just beginning to read the illustrations which have proved most effective, the subjects on which books are needed, etc This is only the beginning of the work of our book correspondents in the spreading of literature in the village "[14] The systematic preparation of a literature for children is also in the first stages of progress.

3386 Application to Madras

This intimate and active interest that the Soviet State is taking in the production of the necessary books to facilitate the supply of EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK in accordance with the requirements of the Second Law stands in sharp contrast to the conditions obtaining in our own land. The Madras Library Association found that grave difficulties were experienced by its Tamil Book Selection Committee as a result of the dearth of Tamil books dealing with current

thought. The Council of the Association stated, "The present state of our country demands imperatively that books of an informational nature should be circulated in large quantities by our libraries. But, as has been remarked there are very few such books in Tamil. No doubt the law of supply and demand will govern the solution of this problem also. However the Committee feels that the establishment of an appreciable number of public libraries would strongly create the necessary demand.

"The Council would also appeal to the Government and the Universities of the Province actively to foster the creation of the necessary supply during the initial stages. This is a legitimate and primary duty of the State which is responsible for the general welfare of the citizens and of the Universities one of whose main functions is the dissemination of knowledge. At any rate, the difficulties at the initial stages are too great to be overcome by any agency other than the State and the Universities. The experiences of other countries in similar circumstances go to confirm this view." [144]

3387 Resistance by Government

The Universities might excuse themselves saying that the extension, rather than the dissemination, of knowledge was their primary duty and that, as they had not yet fulfilled even that primary duty owing to their absorption in the constant turning of the examination wheel, there was no near prospect of their developing an extension side. The Finance Minister of the Government, who seems to have been scared by the probable year-to-year profit and loss account of such an adventure, was unwilling to be convinced and pronounced that "The connection between the responsibility of the State for the general welfare of its citizens and the fostering of the publication of suitable books for their use is more rhetorical than convincing." [145]

3388 Educating the High Placed

Under such circumstances, the Second Law of Library

Science will have to do a good deal of lobbying in ministerial chambers and academic cloisters and first educate the high-placed and the learned with its experiences among other progressive nations, before it can hope to supply EVERY INDIAN HIS OR HER BOOK.

34 Scandinavia

341 FINLAND

Let us now move westwards and have a look at Finland and her hospitality to the Second Law One might hastily exclaim, What can that cold, far-off sparsely populated little known land have to teach us. Finland is no doubt far off In fact, she is largely confined to the Arctic circle This no doubt makes her bitterly cold. She does not even see the sun for several days in the year She is also very sparsely populated With an area nearly as large as that of our province, she has barely three fourths of the population of our District of Malabar But, if she is little known, it is not her fault. She does not prevent us from knowing her But "No one who knows anything of the Finns will deny that they are the best-educated nation in the world. Neither Germany nor America can claim an equality with them in this respect The love of learning thus fostered has remained a prominent feature of Finnish character unto this day and is in part responsible for the progress of the people There are very few of the lower classes that cannot read "[143] Indeed, we are told that in 1920, only 0·7 per cent of persons who had completed their 15th year could neither read nor write [144]

3411 Library Act

Even in the centuries of her subjugation under a foreign yoke Finland had seen the wisdom of following the Second Law of Library Science But, till she regained her independence in 1917 the Finnish language had been superseded by a foreign tongue. It was only after the Great War relieved her from this handicap that the national language regained its legitimate place and that there was "a marked increase in the

number of books adapted to the needs of the agricultural and working classes and now there is no dearth of scientific and other educational literature. [16] Again, till she got her freedom from her foreign masters, the few libraries, that were separated by long distances, had to be linked together only by the voluntary efforts of the Library Society of Finland. But by an Executive Act of 1921 and later by the Library Act of April 1928 the State has now taken upon itself the furtherance of Library Movement.

3412 Achievement

This Act has brought all the libraries under the direction of a State Library Board presided over by a member of the Ministry of Education. The executive of this Board is termed the State Library Bureau and is managed by the Library Director. This Bureau does library propaganda, trains librarians, publishes bibliographical tools and improves library methods in all possible ways. Due to its fostering care, the 537 rural communes of Finland are now served by nearly 1,000 libraries. Of her 38 towns and 18 boroughs, nearly 80 per cent have public libraries of their own. Her chief town, Helsinki, which has a population of 227,375 lends out more than 700 000 volumes in a year.

3413 Library Finance

The Library Act provides for a library rate, which usually amounts to about 6 pies per capita. But an important feature, which is *of interest to us whose central taxation is disproportionately high*, is that of the "half-grant-system." The State gives a grant of 50 per cent of the expenditure on *books salaries rent etc.*, in addition to special building grant.[17] The amount of library grant thus disbursed in 1928 was nearly Rs. 70 000. It can be realised that this State-grant is not as small as it looks if we remember that the population served is less than that of one of our districts.

342 Norway

We may begin our study of the progress of the Second Law in the Scandinavian Peninsula with a short review of the reception accorded to it by Norway. Although the Government of Norway has been subsidising libraries from 1830, it is only in the present century that her library provision has reached the level demanded by the Second Law. She has now about 60 municipal libraries and over a thousand rural libraries. There is a Library Office attached to the Ministry of Education. Its chief function is to disburse the State grant and see to the maintenance of proper standards in the libraries. It also maintains a few travelling libraries and particularly the circulating library for seamen which has deposit stations in all the Norwegian ports. Mention has already been made (see section 2171) of the part played by one of these deposit-stations in a fishing village of the North Coast in advancing a neglected fisher boy to a Professional Chair.

343 Sweden

The eastern half of the Scandinavian Peninsula bears a more marked testimony to the advent of the Second Law of Library Science. The history of the Swedish libraries illustrates in a splendid fashion the transformation that will come over an old library system as soon as its message vitalises it. Here is an authentic account of the effects of its advent as given in a responsible hand-book published by the Swedish Government in 1914. "The old parish libraries which had long existed in many places were rummaged in 1900. It was found that they either consisted of the decayed remnants of originally good collections, or that books were in good condition, but hardly ever used. State aid to the people's libraries was first resolved on by the Rocksdag in 1905. In the Ecklesiastik-departementet there are since 1913 two *library experts* (*bibliotekskonsulent*), who report to the Department, advise the general public as to books, etc., and superintend the State-aided libraries." [11]

3431 Achievement

Thus the Second Law has been successful enough in Sweden to entrust the furtherance of the Library Movement to the State itself Of the two *library experts*, one is in charge of the public libraries and the other of the school libraries. The expert in charge of public libraries ha brought about a thorough reorganisation of the library system by the introduction of Open-access, by the establishment of children's departments, by the modernising of library buildings and by the steady raising of the professional equipment of the library staff The advantages accruing from the modernisation had such a good effect on public opinion that the year 1929 saw the easy passage of a Library Act through the legislature This Act "*provides for a reorganisation of the service and a program* of district (lan) library organisation corresponding to the American County Libraries The Government will give 10,000 Kroner[1] annually to each district (5,000 if the district establishes a library 2,500 if its librarian is trained, and 2,500 additional if its reference collection is adequate) The library adviser expects to organise two libraries each year and to cover each of the 24 districts in 12 years." Apart from this new district library scheme, Sweden has already got about 8,500 libraries including the 1,299 school libraries, which receive annually a sum of about Rs. 15,00,000 from the Local Bodies and, in addition a State grant of about Rs. 3 75,000 while the annual issue exceeds 7 million volumes.

3432 School Library

On the side of school libraries there has been an equally great activity Education has been planned more and more in such a way that it is directly linked up with the school libraries. Special instruction in the use of the library and its tools is given to the pupils. The School Reform of 1928 requires increased self-activity on the part of pupils in close association with libraries and this has already caused an in

(1) The Indian equivalent is approximately Rs. 7,500.

crease of grant to the school libraries In the place of the 279 school libraries of 1913 there were 1,299 school libraries in 1927 In the place of the three hundred thousand volumes lent in 1923 two million volumes were lent to pupils in 1927

It would be educative if corresponding figures are worked out for Madras

344 Denmark

Of the trinity of Scandinavian countries it is Denmark that has benefited most by providing Education for All and Books for All With the aid of a system of schools consciously directed to the upbuilding of industrial resources—particularly the unique system of Folk High Schools—and of a carefully co-ordinated system of progressive public libraries, Denmark, though endowed by nature with comparatively little agricultural wealth, "is now producing immense crops and making herself felt in the markets of the world (and has happily) stopped the city-ward tide of the rural population and built up a rural social life wherein many of the social problems confronting rural communities in other lands have been cleared away This successful demonstration on the part of Denmark should open the eyes of our provinces in good time to the one sure remedy against the devastating "city-ward tide of the rural population" that is already setting in.

3441 Library System

There is another lesson that Denmark can teach to those that are anxious to fulfil the exacting demands of the Second Law with the maximum possible regard for national economy Her library system is characterised by the most complete scheme of co-ordination possible The national library chain begins at one end with the two reservoir State Libraries —the Royal Library and the University Library—at Copenhagen. They are, by mutual consent, specialising in the Humanities and the Sciences respectively The next link in the chain is the group of 80 town-libraries, of which 27 placed at railway junctions, act also as central libraries or secondary reservoir libraries. And at the other end of the chain we find

nearly 800 village libraries scattered throughout the country The system of inter library loan al ng this chain makes all the book resources of the nation a ailable for a reader no matter where he may live, and reduces the duplication of books to a minimum consistent with actual demand. This wonderful co-ordination is one of the results of the Library Act of 1920, which, in a sense nationalised the libraries of the country and placed their development and supervision in the hands of a State Library Director assisted by a strong Library Inspectorate

3442 Library Finance

The same Act entrusted the care of the town libraries to the respective municipalities and that of the village libraries to the parish councils of the respective communes The library funds made up of the local rates are supplemented by a State-grant, which is equal to the local contribution in the case of the smaller libraries. The State Library Director disburses the grants, prescribes the standards of equipment and work gives bibliographical advice and arranges for the professional training of librarians. The State grant paid in a year amounts to about Rs. 7,00,000 and the money found from local rates and other sources amounts to nearly Rs 12,00,000, thus bringing the annual library expenditure of the nation to about Rs. 19 00,000.

3443 Achievement

There are more than a million volumes in all the libraries taken together and the annual issue is nearly five million volumes. Care is taken to induce the library habit even in the school stage In fact, "at each school there is a lending library which is more and more appreciated by the children." [17] Thus the Second Law of Library Science is being entertained by the Danish people in an ideal manner

35 Western Europe

351 GERMANY

E south into the Republic of Germany it is highly f ti e to spend some time over the wonderful organisation t Scientific Libraries of Prussia which were in existence ven before the advent of the Second Law This organisation was actuated by a desire to EVERY SERIOUS STUDENT AND RESEARCH WORKER HIS BOOK. It is characterised by the same thoroughness of detail, which is visible in the unique scientific Handbuchs that Germany alone of all the countries, publishes in such large numbers

3511 State Central Library

The centre of this organisation is the Prussian State Library Berlin. Its stock of two million volumes is added to each year by about fifty thousand new volumes, while the number of periodicals current is about 20 000 The basement area of the Library building, which is in thirteen storeys, is nearly 200,000 sq ft. The classified catalogue is in more than 1 000 volumes, while the alphabetic index runs through 3 000 volumes to which about 90 are added annually The staff is 320 strong, of whom 76 are specialists in different branches of Science, engaged in classifying the books and helping the readers in finding their references

3512 *Library Co-operation*

The libraries of the ten Prussian universities and four technical high schools, which are similar in organisation but smaller in scale work in close co-operation with this Central Library By mutual agreement they specialise in different branches of knowledge so that the library finances of the State as a whole are pooled together effectively and made to secure as many different publications as possible. This feature should be of special significance to us, where even the different departments of one and the same university tend to fritter away their meagre library allotments, by each department insisting on the purchase of a copy of one and the same book

for its exclusive use even though it may be required only occasionally

3513 Union Catalogue

The State Library maintains Union Catalogue of the resources of all the Scientific Libraries of Prussia and an Information Bureau which helps the worker in any part of Prussia to get the materials he wants, through his local library from any library whatever in the State It cannot be denied that such a carefully built system of scientific libraries has been one of the factors that have contributed to the enormous output of scientific work in Germany

3514 Popular Library

But, it can be easily seen that such libraries can serve only a select scholastic and professional few—the intellectual aristocracy so to speak While they serve their purpose in an admirable way they fall short of the ideal preached by the Second Law viz., "Books for the wrangler and books for the bungler" The modern Library Movement of Germany is only some thirty years old while it assumed a phase acceptable to the Second Law only after the revolutionary social changes which came in the wake of the Great War The Union of German Republic Librarians, founded in 1922, is carrying on a strenuous propaganda on behalf of the Second Law and is trying to bring home to the Local and State Administrations the need for strengthening this new instrument of Universal Education to make democracy safe.

3515 Leipzig Institute

By far the most outstanding contribution of Germany towards the fulfilment of the requirements of the Second Law is a piece of work that is being carried on by the Leipzig Institute. This Institute for Readers and Reading owes its foundation to the persistent efforts of W Hofmann who has been pleading that a mere collection of books on the one side and a crowd of unaided readers on the other will not consti-

tute a modern Public Library which should help EVERY READER TO FIND HIS BOOKS readily. He emphasised that the human agency capable of establishing contact between the right book and the right reader at the right time and in the right manner forms a necessary third factor. To equip recruits for this work is no ordinary task and it is not every recruit that will have the requisite scholarship, temperament and personality for this advanced but necessary form of library service. Hofmann pointed out that an intimate knowledge of the psychological basis of reading is as important as a knowledge of books. The purpose of the Leipzig Institute is to give the necessary training to the library staff in this work—reference service as it is called.

3516 Application to India

Even the most advanced workers stand in need of this kind of personal service while it is still more so with the common people and the students. When proposals for this vital side of library service are made, laymen, who have spent their youth in the pre-Second Law days, would find slogans like *spoon-feeding* and *mothering* to turn down such proposals. Many Hofmanns are needed in our country to convince our library authorities of the imperative need for such personal service and to knock out of their heads the anti-deluvian notion that semi-literate attenders, who can just read the backs of books and hence need not be paid more than *Maistries* or head peons, can constitute an adequate library staff.

352 ITALY

Going south we may skip over Austria, which is not different from Germany for most academic purposes, and enter Italy. Although Garibaldi had the foresight to see the need for libraries and founded several people's libraries, most of them soon fell into disuse. It is only in the present generation that they have been revived and largely multiplied in number. For example, in the place of the four libraries Milan had in 1905 it has now got twenty. During the last decade several

travelling libraries (nearly 2,000 in number) were also instituted to serve the rural areas.

3521 Federation of Public Libraries

The Italian Federation of Public Libraries founded about two decades ago has been doing yeoman service to the cause of the Second Law It has induced the formation of several libraries, promoted the publication of books suitable for popular use persuaded private benefactors, political associations, Local Bodies and the State to render financial assistance to the libraries and arranged for the professional training of librarians.

3522 Government's Action

In recent years the Fascist Government has begun to take direct interest in the furtherance of the Library Movement. Its Institute of Fascist Culture has begun to finance the publication of books for popular use and to distribute them freely to the poorer libraries. The Government has also appointed a Director-General of State Libraries to reorganise the library system of the country It has also established a Library School at Florence in addition to the schools maintained by the Universities of Padua and Bologna.

353 FRANCE

Moving westwards, we need not linger long over France, since in spite of her having many valuable collections, the library system as a whole is disorganised and poorly developed from the point of view of the Second Law It is only since the post-war years that some effort is being made to introduce some suitable reforms. The dismal note struck by the President of the Association of French Librarians, in the concluding paragraph of the note he sent to the Semi-centenary Conference of the American Library Association proves clearly that there is much scope for work for the Second Law He says, "On the whole France does not lack scholarly libraries, which offer an infinite variety of intellectual resources,

but which need active efforts to increase their effectiveness Public reading facilities need to be organised in more democratic fashion and to reach town and country workers—in a word it is necessary to multiply "Libraries for all"[1]

354 Belgium

Going north, we meet Belgium which nearly equals our Kerala country (*i.e.*, Travancore, Cochin and Malabar taken together) in area as well as population. The Second Law stepped into Belgium with the enactment of the Destree Library Law in 1921 But already its expedition into that little country has achieved much Even in 1928 Belgium had as many as 2,154 libraries, which house on the whole 3 615 494 books There were 517 822 readers, who used 7,518,630 volumes.[17] A measure of the achievement of the Second Law can be got by comparing these figures with those of the 1,200 libraries issuing only 2,650,000 volumes in 1921 What work still remains for the Second Law may be seen from the fact that out of the 2,675 Belgian Communes 946 are still without Library Service.

355 Holland

A further step to the North would take us to the Netherlands. Her library system is quite out of the way in its organisation. Historically the Society for Public Good founded in 1784 and commonly known as the *Nut* spread its branches throughout the country and had an organisation for lending books so that the public of most of the towns began to establish libraries by subscriptions and donations without waiting for the Local Bodies to take the initiative. It is such privately managed libraries that are usually known as Public Libraries in the Netherlands. These libraries which are about 100 in number get monetary help from the Local Bodies and the State after they are once firmly established. The Central Public Library Association, with headquarters at the Hague is an influential body on whose recommendation the Depart

ment of Education usually disburses its grants. Some of these Public Libraries send supplies to rural areas and in return get additional grant in-aid from the county authority. One defect of this system is that the income of a library is not steady but inconveniently fluctuates from year to year in accordance with the number of subscribers and the financial position of the State and the Local Bodies.

356 The United Kingdom

Crossing the English Channel, let us land in the British Isles and examine how the expedition of the Second Law has been faring there. Though the seed of the Library Movement sprouted with the Ewart Library Act of 1850 the growth of the seedling was extremely slow for a long time except for the slight encouragement given to its support by the Queen's Jubilee collections. But the twentieth century saw it manured by Andrew Carnegie in a generous but judicious manner. This made the sickly unpromising seedling bloom forth suddenly in all its strength into a *Kalpaka* tree, shedding its fruits uniformly into every nook and corner of the United Kingdom,

Years.	County Library Authorities beginning to function.	Other Library Authorities beginning to function.	Total of Library Authorities beginning to function.	Remarks.
Prior to 1850	0	1	1	
1850—1859	0	22	22	
1860—1869	0	17	17	
1870—1879	0	43	43	
1880—1889	0	73	73	Queen's Jubilee.
1890—1899	0	139	139	Carnegie's entry
1900—1909	0	132	132	
1910—1919	0	27	27	
1920—1927	37	26	83	Carnegie County Library Scheme
Total ...	57	480	537	

while the State was watching from a distance with a smile of complacence at this good luck of the nation

3561 Carnegie

The table on page 177[1] will show the effect of the appearance of that lucky ally of the Second Law on the English soil —It can be seen from this table that 71 per cent of the Library Authorities were coaxed into activity only by Carnegie s gift.

3562 Carnegie and County Library

The following speech of Sir William Robertson, Vice-Chairman of the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust, will show that the entire county library scheme was due solely to the initiative of that Trust —

"We made it quite clear—I happened to be one of the deputation and can speak from first hand knowledge—that unless the Government were to endow the counties with powers to continue these schemes (the experimental county library schemes financed entirely by the Carnegie United Kingdom Trust), we would have to reconsider our attitude altogether and withhold the giving of encouragement to counties to continue this work It was, of course, absurd to encourage a county to come along and run this scheme for two or three years and then that the whole thing should lapse we therefore put it strongly before the Board of Education that, unless they brought forward an Act empowering the authorities to continue the work, the trust must curtail its activities. The result was the Act which enables you to go forward and continue the work which we have enabled you to begin." [71]

3563 Government s Passivity

Again the characteristic passivity of the British Government in the furtherance of the Library Movement and in the reception to the Second Law was pointed out by Viscount Haldane, the then Lord Chancellor in his speech welcoming

the delegates of the Second County Library Conference He said, "Matters like Education instruments like Libraries, we leave to take care of themselves The State of course, will have to take it up but it does not take things up until it finds things going. Then it will say "Here is a good thing, a popular thing let us develop it and thereby attract votes to those who administer its affairs!" I am in hope that the Educational movement generally has got to that stage Library Movement has hardly done so though I think that there are signs that it is getting near it. "

3564 Achievement

But whatever be the agency at work the expedition of the Second Law has now attained the greatest success in Great Britain The ideal BOOKS FOR ALL has been nearly reached For example 96 3 per cent of the population of England and Wales have now easy access to the books they want. Nearly 13 million volumes are to be found among the urban and county libraries, while the annual issue is approaching 80 millions. About 15 per cent of the population have become regular readers while the annual library expenditure for the urban and rural libraries taken together is about one and a half crores of rupees, which works out to nearly 10 annas per capita This is raised by a special library rate, whose median value for urban areas is about 2 pies in the rupee while that for the rural areas is less than half a pie.

3565 Phase of Consolidation

In fact, the expedition of the Second Law has already become such a complete success in the *United Kingdom*, that its Library Movement has now entered into the final phase of consolidation and co-ordination on a national basis.

36 Pacific Ocean

361 AUSTRALIA

Taking leave of the island centre of the British Empire, we may begin our exploration of the East, by a peep into the

island continent of the same Empire This colony is emulating the mother country in its hospitality to the Second Law of Library Science subject to the limitations due to the absence of Carnegie s alliance There are about 1,200 libraries in the whole country aided by the Local Bodies or the State as the case may be The book-needs of the widely scattered rural population are generally looked after by what are called County Institutes, of which there are about 230 to serve the two hundred and fifty thousand people who live in the country With the aid of suitable subsidies from the State they are doing good work and have collected a stock of about 600,000 volumes which are in constant circulation

362 The Hawaiian Islands

From this mighty island, we shall pass on to a tiny group of islands in the middle of the Pacific. The Hawaiian Islands demonstrate the good old adage, Where there is a will there is a way The natural handicaps of Hawaii in providing Books for All are many Standing as it does at the cross-roads of the Pacific, it is a melting pot of nations. Its population is made up of Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese, Filipines, Spaniards, Germans, Russians, British, Americans and several others. This polyglot population is scattered over eight major islands and several tiny ones Such linguistic and transport handicaps have not hindered Hawaii from coming up to the highest expectations of the Second Law of Library Science

3621 Achievement

In fact, it has provided universal public library service of a very high grade through four county libraries, which serve through 246 delivery stations. The finances of the library system are provided entirely by the State the annual allotment being about Rs. 3 00,000 The librarians frequently go round the islands and get into personal touch with the readers to enable them to understand their needs and to lead them on to a wider range of study About 700,000 issues are made in each year The intense reading habit that this implies can be

realised if it is remembered that the total population of Hawaii is only 250,000 It is said that even the remotest island which is inhabited only by fifteen men in charge of a cable station, gets its quarterly exchange of books This is indeed a literal fulfilment of the Law BOOKS FOR ALL "

37 Asia

371 JAPAN

Now it is time we approach the Asian continent. Before reaching the mainland, it is proper that we take a look into *the progress of the Second Law in the Far East Japan, which* is fast approaching the front rank among the Powers of the World. The rapid progress that the modern Library Movement has made in Japan during the present century is at once the cause and effect of "her rapid transition into industrialism of her newly acquired wealth and the effect of Western political ideas upon the masses" and of the successful way in which "the masses of the people are gradually being fitted to take their part in the expression of public opinion" [M]

3711 Awakening

After the middle of the last century "when Japan broke with the policy of seclusion and looked upon the world, she was amazed to see floating on the opposite shores of China, a number of unfamiliar flags—the Tricolour the Union Jack, and, nearest to her the Double-headed Eagle." [M] She saw also visible signs of threatening encroachments on her shores. This led her to say to herself "*Change as the world doth change.*" She sent her best sons into the world to find out what she lacked and what she should do When these sons returned with their reports she said, "Very well mere sartorial revolutions and the indiscriminate bodily importations of impossible theories, made in Germany France or America will not produce the necessary change The only thing that can be effective is the slow but steady transmutation of the soul of every citizen, with a definite purpose and on a definite plan." Accordingly an Imperial Rescript proclaimed in 1872,

"It is designed henceforth that education shall be so diffused that there may not be a village with an ignorant family nor a family with an ignorant member" [14]

3712 Growth of Library System

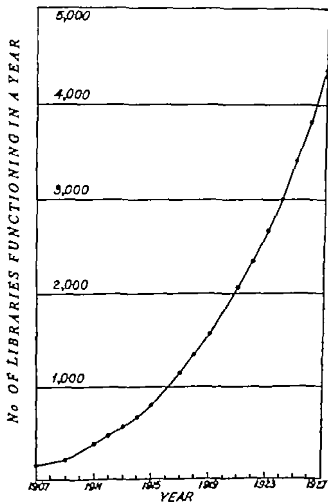
After EDUCATION FOR ALL, thus ushered in under Royal auspices, had struggled to work its way single-handed for about a generation, it realised the need to seek the active aid of BOOKS FOR ALL. Accordingly 1899 saw the issue of the first Library Law authorising prefectures, towns and villages to establish public libraries. From time to time, the Ministry of Education issued informal instructions to the governors of the prefectures to encourage the establishment of Public Libraries This has led to a rapid growth of libraries during the last thirty years, as shown by the graph on the opposite page "In 1926-27 there were 4,337 libraries in Japan with 7 623,371 volumes." [14]

3713 Agencies for Promotion

The Ministry of Education issues a half-yearly list of books suitable for popular use It is also running a library school, in association with its Imperial Library for the training of library staff The Japanese Library Association, founded in 1912, is the non-official body that furthers Library Movement. It does much publicity work and celebrates annually a Library Week, which is observed with the greatest enthusiasm throughout the country

372 MANCHURIA

We can witness a novel agency that the Second Law has engaged to provide BOOKS FOR ALL, if we enter the Mainland of Asia at Manchuria. The South Manchurian Railway Libraries stand in a class by themselves. The railway company is maintaining a fairly large library at its headquarters, Dalren, for the use of its servants as well as the public at large It has a stock of more than 120 000 volumes and annually sets apart a sum of about Rs. 25,000 for the upkeep of the library


No OF LIBRARIES FUNCTIONING IN A YEAR
5,000
4,000
3,000
2,000
1,000
1923
YEAR

It has even undertaken the translation of foreign books for the use of its clientele. It has further established about twenty public libraries in the chief towns and cities and delivers books at all the stations along its line which is about 700 miles long.

373 CHINA

Coming to China we find that Library Movement has received a great impetus in the hands of the Republican Government. One of the Departments of the Ministry of Education is that of Social Education. This Department is in charge of Public Libraries and schools for illiterate adults Another important agency that helps the cause of the Second Law in China is the National Library Association, founded in 1925 The Chinese Library Movement is being further fed by generous donations from America and from some Chinese merchants While China has for long been sending most of her librarians to the New World to get their professional training, the Boone University has recently started a library school under the auspices of its Faculty of Arts and its work is supplemented by several Summer Courses offered by other Universities.

374 PERSIA

Scaling the Great Wall of China we do not find any trace of the Second Law as we wander through Turkistan, Persia and Afghanistan. In a paper on the libraries of Persia contributed to the Library Service Section of the First All Asia Educational Conference of 1930, Mr Herrick B Young, the Librarian of the American College of Teheran, stated that Library Movement " is yet to really begin in this ancient land Requests from government departments who can organise their respective libraries and the interest with which the young Persian student is contemplating library service as a career give hope that such a movement is here in its first stages." [1]

38 India

381 PUNJAB

But, as we enter our own country through the historic Kaiber pass, we find the Land of Five Rivers marked here and there with the fresh footprints of the Second Law The ancient valley of the Sindhu has been the accredited cradle of many an Indian institution As if to respect this ancient tradition, the Second Law seems to have chosen the Department of Public Instruction of the Punjab to be one of its first apostles in British India It is indeed refreshing to hear "Another recent development is the institution of village libraries. There are now over 1 600 such libraries attached to upper and lower middle schools. These libraries are maintained by the district boards with the assistance of Government grants, and are open not only to school boys and those who have passed out from the school, but also to village people at large while the librarians are required to give lectures and talks to the people in general on topics useful to the countryside in addition to assisting literate people in the use of these libraries. For this purpose in addition to ordinary books, pamphlets and magazines, supplied by the district boards, the best available literature on agricultural, co-operative and health subjects and other topics of special interest to the village community is supplied by the Rural Community Board which also provides the librarian s allowances "[1]

382 UNITED PROVINCES

The influence of the Second Law seems to have even reached the neighbouring province We are told, Another important scheme namely the establishment of circulating and travelling libraries in districts was launched by the United Provinces Government during the period under review In 1924 that Government decided to establish, as an experimental measure in 1925-26, circulating libraries in a few selected districts in accordance with the recommendations of a Committee appointed to advise Government on this and allied matters. Three districts were accordingly selected for

this purpose in 1925-26 and the district boards concerned were given grants The scheme was extended to one more district in 1926-27 and it is reported that the experiment has met with a fair measure of success " [m]

383 Government of India

Indeed the Second Law seems to have secured the sympathy of even the Government of India. The Educational Commissioner with that Government was one of the earliest converts to the cause of Books for All." Whatever the coming reforms may do with the office of the Commissioner let us hope and pray that the Provincial Ministers of Education will take early steps to realise his anticipation that "libraries will occupy a prominent position in the field of education in the near future and that their influence will be exercised far and wide throughout the country " [m]

384 Bengal

Our Bengalee brethren have formed a Library Association to spread the message of the Second Law in their province.

385 Baroda

It is only in Baroda that it has been given the fullest facilities to provide Books for All. In the words of the Dewan of Baroda, "The Library Movement in Baroda is part of a carefully devised programme of mass education inaugurated and developed by His Highness the Maharaja Saheb A scheme for free public libraries on a grant in-aid basis was introduced in 1910, and to-day has grown up from humble beginning a network of prant, town village and travelling libraries, which serve over 60 per cent of the population of the State.

3851 Achievement

"The centre of these activities is the library in Baroda with its adjuncts, the Oriental Institute, the women s library the juvenile library and the visual instruction branch. Then come

the district and town libraries, 45 in number with 19,000 readers and 222,000 books Lower down in the scale are 661 village libraries with over 37 000 readers and more than 250,000 books while villages which do not own libraries are served by the travelling libraries section which in 1926-27 circulated 418 boxes with 13 400 books to 123 centres " [34]

386 ANDHRA DESA

Going further south, we see a bumper crop of libraries that shot forth at the close of the last decade in the land of the Andhras. The Andhra Desa Library Association has been largely responsible for this.

387 MADRAS

But Madras has now a three-year old Library Association which has already succeeded in inducing the State Government to give a chance for the Connemara Public Library to develop as a central reservoir library It has also succeeded in inducing the Districts of Chingleput and Malabar to make a small beginning of a District Library Scheme. It has published lists of books suitable for popular use and instituted a Summer School to prepare well informed votaries to serve the Second Law and its sisters It carries on a publicity campaign "to dispose the public mind favourably towards libraries and books." It has secured the happy co-operation of the premier University of the State, whom it has induced to recognise the importance of Library Movement first by arranging for a course of University Lectures on the Laws of Library Science and later by taking over the Summer School under its academic care.

3871 Indigenous Finance

With all that, it is doubtful if it can gather the momentum necessary to carry the Second Law through the colossal resistance confronting it. The causes that contribute to the resistance are many—political, economic, linguistic, financial, and so on. This resistance will readily melt away if Madras can

find a Carnegie, such as America and England had the good fortune to have No doubt the merchants, the zemindars, the *Mathadhipatis* and the landed aristocracy can easily do for Madras what Carnegie did for Great Britain and America. But unfortunately with some rare exceptions, their gospel of wealth appears to be still what we observed to be current in South America "their donations going rather to religious and charitable bodies.

3872 Indigenous Agencies

India belongs to the British Empire and may hope to have the benefit of the provisions of the amended charter of the Carnegie Corporation of New York. But, it is doubtful if India will catch the eye of the Carnegie Corporation in the near future Nor have we the *Nuts* of Holland to so charm the people into a reading mood as to start their own libraries, without waiting for the initiative of the Local Bodies. No doubt we have old bottles like the Chitalishtas of Bulgaria and the Astras of Rumania. But the question is who can and will put the new wine into such old bottles.

3873 Source of Inspiration

All that the Madras Library Association can do is to be a willing ally and a publicity agent of the Second Law as the Polish Library Association was, if a more resourceful and influential body can put its weight on its side. If there is one outstanding lesson that the history of the Digvijaya of the Second Law brings out clearly it is the responsibility of the Minister of Education in providing BOOKS FOR ALL, It is not America, it is not South Africa, it is not Holland, it is not England that points us the way to fulfil the mandates of the Second Law It is the new Governments of Central and Eastern Europe and the old Governments of North Western Europe that give us the clue It is the example of the Ministries of Education of Czechoslovakia, Finland, Sweden Denmark, Japan and Hawaii that should inspire our Ministry of Education.

388 MANU'S MAXIM

We cannot end this rapid sketch of the World-Conquest Expedition of the Second Law of Library Science more appropriately than by praying in all sincerity for the success of the Second Law in India as well and by reminding our *Ministers of Education that the example of their brethren* in the other progressive nations is but in close conformity with the precept of our ancient law-giver

"To carry knowledge to the doors of those that lack it, to educate all to perceive the right!

Even to give away the whole earth cannot equal this form of service."

यो दद्यादपरिज्ञानां ज्ञानं कुर्याद्वा धर्मदर्शनम् ।
स कृत्स्नां पृथिवीं दद्यात् तेन तुल्यं न तत्फलम् ॥

(मनु)

CHAPTER 4

SECOND LAW AND ITS IMPLICATIONS

40 Scope

In the last chapter we had a ride round the world in the wake of the World-Conquering Expedition of the Second Law While in its camp it would be an advantage if we investigate the full implications of its message and make a study of what it would involve if the Second Law is to be entertained on an adequate scale. The study of the implications of the Second Law will be easier if we consider it in the form EVERY PERSON HIS BOOK. Of these four words, it is EVERY and HIS that keep the secret of the implications Hence, it would be proper to devote some time to each of these words.

401 IMPLICATIONS OF "EVERY"

The consequences of putting the emphasis on EVERY can be inferred from the common saying भिन्नरुचिर्हि लोकः — "Varied is the taste of the world" to which we may add "Varied are the requirements of the readers." The question to be considered is What, then are the obligations involved in an undertaking to provide *every* person his book? It may be convenient to examine them under four categories—(1) the obligations of the State, (2) the obligations of the Library Authority (3) the obligations of the Library Staff and (4) the obligations of the readers themselves

41 Obligation of the State

The obligations of the State centre round (*a*) finance, (*b*) legislation, and (*c*) co-ordination. Of these the last obligation will be of help in reducing the first obligation to a minimum and the second is usually the means of defining the manner of discharging the other two

411 Finance

We may start from the axiomatic statement that a necessary factor for the maintenance of a library system, which can render satisfactory book-service to every member of a community is finance Finance seldom falls from heaven like Manna. It was only in pre-historic Israel that the Lord said, "Behold, I will raine bread from heaven for you and the people shall goe out, and gather a certain rate every day For some reason best known to Himself the Lord seems to have now given up such direct action and never says, "Behold, I will rain rupees from heaven for you and the libraries shall go out, and gather a certain rate every day" Hence each community has to find, all by itself the finance necessary for the maintenance of its libraries If it is lucky to have in its midst millionaires, who are guided by Carnegie's *Gospel of wealth, it may exempt many of its members from* the contribution of their quota If not, each member must put in his share and it is the business of the State to fix the levy and arrange for its prompt collection. It may either ask the Central Government to collect and hand it over to the library authorities or empower the Local Bodies to collect it themselves and spend it on their respective libraries, or it may distribute the burden between them in any proportion.

412 Library Tax

The moment the word library-tax, is uttered, it appears to take the breath away from our ministers. When they regain their breath they often give the standard excuse, "There will be a hue and cry There will be down right opposition" One possible rejoinder for this may be "Do they give up collecting every tax which is opposed?" But, if they happen to be themselves unconvinced of the message of the Second Law and of the need for providing funds to get the benefit of that message it may not be out of place to present to them the economic bearing of the message "Books for All."

4121 Economics of Library Finance

The people of any community are its greatest economic asset—worth in rupees several times more than all its material property. Everything, that conserves this human asset and helps to make it more productive and valuable, is of direct economic value to the community. Schools and libraries are two of the most important public institutions for improving economic value of this human asset, even apart from its far more important spiritual value. This economic value of the people is a very real one, even though most of us never think of the vastness of this human wealth in terms of rupees, annas, pies. The data collected by the great life-insurance companies would lead one to an understanding of the tremendous economic value of human beings in the mass and the vast possibilities of increasing this value through the supply of BOOKS FOR ALL.

4122 Human Wealth

"Here are the conclusions of the Metropolitan Life Insurance Company on the economic value of the people of the United States, as based on the studies made by their technical staff. The material wealth of the United States in 1922 was $321 000 000,000—an inconceivable sum. The economic value of the people of the United States that year was five times as great—more than fifteen hundred billion of dollars—over one trillion five hundred billion of dollars. And yet in all our discussions of taxation we are in the habit of giving vastly more consideration to material wealth than to human wealth. Studies such as those of the Metropolitan indicate the tremendous importance of schools and libraries in developing the economic value of our people, for it has been demonstrated many, many times that the average properly educated person is of much greater economic value to the community as well as to himself than an uneducated one."[1]

4123 Act of Statesmanship

However, a knowledge of this tremendous value—the grea

test natural resource of every community as well as of the country as a whole—is rarely realised by the general tax payer It is the business of the statesman who is at the helm of affairs, to perceive it clearly and, instead of taking refuge under the unwillingness of the short sighted tax-payer to take a bold step forward. Then, he is sure to get encomiums showered on him or on his memory for such bold action, in the days to come The statesman is put at the head of affairs just to inaugurate such far-seeing measures, not within the ken of ordinary men, and not merely to run the well-established machinery of administration. Few are the statesmen who possess this far sightedness and courage of conviction.

413 Response of People

As for the people who are served, if they get the books they want when they want them and if they are made to realise, by actual experience that the libraries exist but to serve their interests, it will not be long before they rejoice to see the library item on their tax bill. Indeed the experiences of countries, where it is now held to be a worthy expenditure of public funds for the State to offer its citizens a free service of books, point to that conclusion. To give but one example "In 1850 the Public Libraries Bill (of England) was carried by a majority of 17 only In 1919 it was carried without a division."[11] Perhaps it may be instructive to trace, in greater detail, the slow but steady melting away of the opposition to the library tax, as the advantages of public library service began to reach the masses, although it had to be thrust down their throat, in the first instance.

414 Example from Great Britain

Prompted among other things by a paper of Edward Edwards entitled "*A Statistical view of the principal public libraries in Europe and the United States of North America*," read before the Statistical Society of London on 20 March 1848,[12] Mr William Ewart gave notice for a Select Committee

on the need for provision of public libraries, in the autumn of the same year

4141 Act of 1850

On 14 February 1850—after the receipt of the report of the Select Committee—the same gentleman moved the House of Commons for leave to introduce a modest and purely permissive *Bill for enabling Town Councils to establish Public Libraries and Museums"* by levying a rate not exceeding one half-penny in the pound on the general assessment of the town In opposing this inoffensive permissive measure, which imposed an affirmative vote of two-thirds of the rate payers for adoption of the Act in any Town, Mr Buck proclaimed that "the additional taxation, which the Bill proposes, *at a time* when the nation is so generally *impoverished* is considered a great grievance by the manufacturing as well as the landed interests of the country" Another Mr Goulburn, sided with the opposition pleading that "the poorer rate payers, who would have either no time for reading or might live at a considerable distance would yet have to bear their full share of the expense" Mr Bernal chimed in with the remark that the Bill would enable any Town-council desirous of carrying into effect the views of any small section of the inhabitants, to tax the general body of rate-payers for an institution which might soon degenerate into a mere political club" Mr Spooner "almost feared that, by the institution of lectures hereafter these libraries might be converted into Normal Schools of Agitation" After this series of outbursts, a division was taken. The Ayes were 118 the Noes 101

4142 Ludicrous Mutilation

The opposition was pertinaciously continued at every subsequent stage and the patience of the promoters of the Bill was sorely tried Several narrowing modifications were thrust into the Bill and six divisions had to be taken, until, at last, in a tattered form it received the Royal assent, on 14

August 1850 A ludicrous mutilation, that the guerilla warfare of the opposition introduced into the Act, left the formation of the library to chance-gifts by precluding the purchase even of a single book with municipal funds, while the guardians of these funds were permitted, if they pleased, to incur any lavish expenditure for buildings and furniture But it was felt that it bravely broke the ice and however crude, contained the seeds of a wiser legislation for the future.

4143 Amendment of 1854

When, however Mr Ewart moved in 1854 for leave to introduce an Amending Bill, the opposition was much milder Mr Caldwell expressed his conviction that " the whole country was greatly indebted to the Honourable gentleman for the pains he had taken with this subject Another Right Honourable gentleman was of opinion that " these institutions had been most beneficial " and added that his constituents " were extremely anxious for the extension of the principle " The active opposition was confined practically to the two old diehards, Buck and Spooner The final division gave 64 Ayes and 22 Noes, although the maximum leviable rate was doubled In 1866, by another Amending Act the majority necessary for adoption of the provisions of the Act was reduced from two-thirds to one-half [14]

4144 Act of 1919

The peculiar power of the Second Law to gradually melt away opposition, provided a statesman with vision takes it up is amply borne out by the fact that the 1919 Act, which altogether removed the hampering limit to the library rate and empowered any *library authority to levy any rate it liked* for library purposes, was passed, as we saw without a single division Indeed the opposition to Library Legislation resembles the arguments against the art of swimming. One might say that unless a man could float he could not swim and that unless he could first swim he could not float. And, yet, this

arm-chair logic is stultified by the action of the man of faith, who leaping and struggling, finds that he can swim.

415 Melting Away of Opposition

The power of the Second Law to melt away opposition is the direct result of the education imparted by the supply to Every Person of His Book. We saw in the second chapter how a judicious supply of useful books, sent at a venture quite unasked to a fruitgrower in a village in Cambridgeshire, opened his eyes to the value of books. Certainly he would no longer grudge paying his quota to his county library service And, after all, the creation of a favourable public opinion really consists in the creation and integration of such individual opinions.

416 Legislation

Exactly similar has been the history and experience of all the nations that made an attempt at library legislation in the nineteenth century But the nations that then adopted a policy of "wait and see" are like the man who postponed locking his stable door They now attribute their backward position, in the economic rivalry of the world, to the delay they thus caused in the supply of Books for All and are straightaway plunging into compulsory legislation. They seem to rely on the Mimamsa maxim न कदाचिदनीदृशं जगत् Never was the world unlike what it is at present" and the similar dictum, न क्वचिदनीदृशं जगत् "Nowhere is the world unlike what it is here." Many countries are now fast following the lead of Czechoslovakia in straightaway putting into force a compulsory Public Library Act, with a definite time-scheme for the establishment of Universal Library Service

417 Appeal to India

Neither Madras nor any province of India should hesitate any longer to adopt a proper Public Library Act and to spend the little money that is needed to enhance the value of their

human asset so as to bring it to the level it has attained in the other countries of the world

418 A DEPARTMENTAL CONFERENCE

Present —

1 The Development Minister
2 The Finance Minister
3 The Education Minister
4 The Director of Public Instruction.
5 The Director of Public Health
6. The Director of Industries
7 The Director of Agriculture.
8 The Director of Rural Reconstruction

The Second Law also was, by special invitation present.

The Development Minister Gentlemen with your permission, I shall first convey to the distinguished lady the most sincere welcome of our Government. It is significant that unlike other distinguished visitors from overseas, she has spent a year amidst our commoners, before giving us a chance to show her the State's hospitality

Coming to business, this conference is a direct outcome of the activities of our distinguished guest. Her mission is to provide BOOKS FOR ALL. It is a problem bristling with difficulties.

The Education Minister Thanks to the propaganda of the SECOND LAW I m sure I can t face my constituency unless something is done before the next election. My colleague referred to the difficulties. The main difficulty is that of Finance. I trust my other colleague will give his generous help in this all-important work of National Education

The Finance Minister I shall be most happy if I can be of any help in the matter But, I don t see any way of finding money except by additional taxation You know what that would lead to

Report of the Royal Commission on Agriculture I would particularly invite his attention to the concluding sentence of the Commissioners—I quote from p 90 of the *Abridged report* which in fact is identical with what occurs in p 674 of the *Main report*—" Our enquiry has convinced us that, *given the opportunity*—mark that word—the cultivators of India will be found willing and able to apply in progressive degree the Services of Science and of organisation to the business of agricultural production."

I quite agree, however that these pamphlets of the Publicity Bureau went straight into the oven. But Why?—

The Second Law Because a postman handing over a packet of printed slips is not like a librarian who establishes contact between books and people.

The Director of Agriculture I am obliged to the distinguished lady for putting her finger on the right spot. I was about to say we spend several crores a year on preparing a grand feast of Agricultural Improvements, but we omit to invite the guests and we grudge to pay for service

The Development Minister Surely that white elephant of the new Imperial Council of Research may wait. My friend will perhaps get a better return for his money by placing that sum at the disposal of the Second Law of Library Science. We go on making things top-heavy

The Finance Minister Its creation is due to the Royal Commission,* you quoted from.

The Director of Agriculture If you swear by one recommendation of that Commission it is difficult to see why another—perhaps a more vital—recommendation should be quietly passed over

The Finance Minister What are you referring to?

The Director of Agriculture I shall read from the Report. I think, it is at page—

The Second Law Page 672, please

The Director of Agriculture Thank you. Right you are Here is what they say Throughout our Report we have endeavoured to make plain our conviction that no substantial improvement in Agriculture can be effected unless the cultivator has the will to take advantage of the opportunities which science wise laws and good administration may place at his disposal. Of all the factors making for prosperous agriculture, by far the most important is the outlook of the peasant himself " Now what is the amount that the budget provides for this by far the most important recommendation? Again "This, in the main is determined by his environment

The Second Law I only demand a place for books in that environment

The Director of Agriculture They proceed to lay down "We have no hesitation in affirming that the responsibilities required to effect this improvement rests with Government "

The Finance Minister My friend is discreetly abstaining from reading the next sentence

"The realisation of this important truth has led in recent years, to a large increase in expenditure on the departments concerned with rural welfare."

The Development Minister Then I must certainly read out also the sentence after that "None the less, we feel that its force is inadequately appreciated by the Government of India and by Local Governments and that the necessity that the rural problem should be attacked as a whole and at all points simultaneously is still insufficiently present to their minds. We cannot but think that the failure to grasp the full significance of the proposition we have laid down in some measure explains the absence of any coordinated attempts to effect that change .. in the psychology of the peasant without which there can be no hope "

The Director of Rural Reconstruction. Certainly no hope. Every minute of my life I am realising the practical wisdom of these words. I often find the Agricultural Propagandist rushing through the village with his demonstration-van. As soon as he leaves the village, the effect of his demonstration disappears.

The Second Law. If there is a village library—a live library with a live librarian—that won't happen. To gather back the money sunk in the Agricultural service, to gather it for the uplift of the country, to convert the product into an available form, you must give EVERY PEASANT HIS BOOKS.

Certainly it cannot be considered wise or economical to turn down the National Library Scheme on grounds of Finance.

The Director of Public Health. The constant effort of my Department to obtain for the nation the best value for all it spends is equally thwarted by lack of public libraries.

The Second Law. The United States of America considers the cost of her great library service as a valuable insurance premium for health insurance.

The Director of Rural Reconstruction. I agree. One great lesson that my experience has taught me is this. Nothing is more certain than the fact that the physical advancement and health of mankind is dependent, not upon a physician's efforts, but upon the whole social evolution of the people. Now these desired ends are not reached merely by announcing them, still less by leaving things to chance, drift, or fate. There is need everywhere for an educated and enlightened public opinion. Only an educated people is an effective people in combating disease and people cannot be educated without an efficient net-work of Public Libraries.

The Finance Minister. Is it suggested that the Public Library should concern itself with a work that is primarily the business of the Department of Public Health?

The Second Law Yes and No No If it relates in any way to the handling of disease yes in the dissemination of knowledge that will save life and make the community more healthful and joyous in work and life

The Director of Public Instruction I quite realise that we pay very inadequate attention to this side of education at school Nor do we have a system of free libraries, where people may inform themselves of the laws of physiology and health.

The Director of Public Health That is why India s death-rate is double that of England and Wales. Her infantile mortality is about 4½ times that of New Zealand. In India the expectation of life at 5 is approximately 35 years as against 54 in Great Britain Put in another way of 100,000 boys born alive in Denmark more *than half would be living at age 65 while in British* India just about half would be dead at age 11 -[88]

The Second Law Certainly it is no wonder if we remember the wonderful library system of Denmark. BOOKS FOR ALL is Denmark s motto and that has paid her—

The Finance Minister Does the distinguished lady mean to *suggest that if we plant libraries here, the boy who* dies at 11 will live up to 65!

The Director of Industries That remark is neither fair nor correct. All that she means is that public opinion well and constantly fed on Public Libraries, would more than anything else support all sane movements towards better sanitation and protection from infectious diseases and more wholesome views as to food and clothing, exercise and fresh air and sober living,[89] which would in the long run increase the average life.

The Director of Public Health The Honourable Minister will perhaps appreciate the view of the distinguished visitor if it is put thus The correlation-coefficient between the provision of Public Libraries and the level of Public Health is positive and gets to be fairly large in

course of time

The Director of Rural Reconstruction The Public Library is in a better position than any other civic institution to diffuse knowledge to all classes in the community

The Education Minister It should, therefore be a positive aggressive dynamic force to make knowledge within its keeping count for individual and communal well-being

The Director of Industries I say "Amen to all that my co-directors say Modern industrial progress without Public Library Service is like attempting to run a car without the axle

The Finance Minister From the warmth with which words are flowing from the lips of my friends, I am afraid I have to infer that they are under the illusion that I am quite oblivious of the value of books and libraries. I may tell them at once that *that* is not my difficulty Our problem is to find ways and means to raise the necessary funds. As I said, I am at a loss—

The Development Minister Yes, that is what I feel too It is better we put our heads together and solve the problem of Library Finance Perhaps, the distinguished lady can enlighten us with what she might have observed in her extended travels.

The Second Law It is usually met in one or all of three ways (1) Local rates, (2) Grant in-aid from Government and (3) Private benefactions and endowments

The Education Minister The last category mentioned by the Second Law brings to my mind our vast Religious Endowments, which now appear to be hardly well used

The Finance Minister That is an idea Quite an enormous portion of the wealth of the country is tied up in these medieval institutions. Certainly we must modernise the form of these charities At any rate, if it is done we need not feel sorry that a Carnegie was not born in India

The Development Minister True But there may be legal difficulties in the way

The Director of Public Instruction We may get it examined by the Advocate-General

The Finance Minister And if necessary bring in suitable legislation.

The Second Law Such endowment can only give a start. But money for the annual up keep should be found locally Local responsibilities should be left on local shoulders.

The Finance Minister That will be very difficult to bring about.

The Second Law I shall only point out that the experience in other countries clearly proves that once people begin to enjoy the benefits of a well-conducted library service they cheerfully vote to pay for that service

The Development Minister Let us assume, for the present,—

The Finance Minister I am not so sure

The Second Law If you will bear with me, I can prove, by *a priori* reasoning as well as the example in other countries, that the money you spend on libraries comes back to you in the long run tenfold It would come back in the shape of economy due to the improved civic sense and habits of the citizens, in the shape of greater human-power due to the higher average life, in the shape of increased out put of production due to greater skill in the workers, in the shape of better balance of trade due to more informed methods of marketing—in short public and private finance are not alike

The Finance Minister That is all right. But—

The Education Minister There can t be any *but* in this matter As the Right Honourable J R. Clynes said once "We spend enormous amounts of public money on a great many objects, and so much money has been ex pended on all manner of causes, and for all manner of purposes, that we cannot any longer say that we cannot

afford the public money for any purpose of this sort. Indeed we cannot afford any longer to save public money in this way and stop ourselves in regard to what is now one of the most important purposes of our public activity I do not regard money whether it be laid out privately or through the public purse, as an outlay completely spent without return, when we pay out in connection with any educational purpose It is not expenditure in that sense in the sense that it is money paid over and done with It comes back in worthier forms To the extent that we improve, say the average man or woman educationally there is improvement The man who loves books, who likes to read whether in the library or in the home depend upon it, is usually a better man than the man who never troubles his head about books at all It is a most serious thing for the future of any country to have a Democracy which is not educated, to have a democracy which is dependent upon the penny newspapers or the penny pictorial, or whatever it may be, so that the work has to be begun and—no matter what discouragements you feel in the earlier stages of an effort of this sort, the greater the discouragement the greater the energy in that purpose, or the immense usefulness of such purposes —is bound to benefit the State as a whole ...

The Development Minister I was saying that assuming that a careful levy of taxation is possible, we should like to have further advice from the Second Law regarding practical details.

The Second Law If you add to your brilliant galaxy of Directors, a Director of Public Libraries, he will look after the details.

Perhaps, I may add that, even before your Director is appointed, you may get a modest library legislation brought into force

The Development Minister That is exactly what I wanted

Will you mind staying a little longer so that we may draft, at least, the main clauses of a suitable Library Bill

The Second Law I anticipated thi I have already drafted a Bill for Madras and another for the Union of India with the assistance of some of your Directors and your Drafting Secretary With light modifications the former can be used by other provinces as well

The Finance Minister Have you copies with you?

The Director of Public Instruction Yes Here are enough copies

The Second Law I am reminded of an extraordinary way in which an American State has made *crime* a source of Library Finance

The Development Minister How can crime develop libraries?

The Second Law The Constitution of Michigan ever since its inception in 1835 down to this day has been having a provision whereby the proceeds from all penal fines collected for the violation of State Laws are set aside for library use the amount thus appropriated being more than 15 lakhs of rupees per annum

The Director of Public Instruction We had something similar here

The Finance Minister Really! What is it?

The Education Minister I believe our friend refers to the *Fine Hall* of one of our Andhra Colleges You see, we had a resourceful Principal who accumulated all *fine collections* and built with it a general assembly hall which is also used to house the college library

The Director of Industries Another Principal who is a friend of mine has utilised all such *fines* for decorating the college walls, with a *Fine-Arts* collection.

The Development Minister Let us hear more from the distinguished lady about the working of that extraordinary provision in the Michigan Constitution.

The Second Law The penal fines collected in each county remain in the county and are distributed annually to

the district libraries of the county according to the population. The largest amount of penal fines for libraries in one of the counties was realised when a number of officials and others were fined and some sent to prison in connection with a water-supply scandal, involving bribery in a conspiracy to tie up a city in a contract with a private concern. The city received its share of these fines and the library immediately invested several hundred dollars in books on every phase of water purification, with the hope that they might contribute something to the city's unsolved pure water problem."[44]

The Finance Minister This is indeed a very illuminating instance.

Let us now adjourn for lunch. We may meet tomorrow at 11. That will give us some time to look through the Draft Library Bills, so that we may discuss them later with more intimate knowledge and greater facility.

42 State Library Act

LIBRARY ACT FOR THE STATE OF GRANTHAJAGAT

Whereas it is expedient to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a system of Public Libraries and for the comprehensive development and organisation of city, rural and other classes of library service in the State of Granthajagat,

It is hereby enacted as follows —

CHAPTER 1

PRELIMINARY

11 (1) This Act may be called, The Libraries Act, 1945.

Short Title (2) It shall extend to the whole of the State of Granthajagat.

12 In this Act, unless there is anything repugnant in the subject or context

Definitions

(1) State Librarian means the officer appointed by the Government of the State to perform the duties of State Librarian

(2) Public Library means a library including its branches and delivery stations established or maintained and managed by a Local Library Authority under this Act.

(3) Departmental Library means a library established or maintained by a Department of Government of the State

(4) Outlier Library means a Library in the State other than those belonging to any of the above-mentioned categories.

CHAPTER 2

STATE LIBRARY AUTHORITY

State Library Authority

21 For the purpose of promoting and organizing a library system in the State of Granthajagat, the Minister of Education (hereinafter referred to as the Minister') shall be the State Library Authority

Duty of the State Library Authority

211 It shall be the duty of the State Library Authority to provide for an adequate library service in the State of Granthajagat and for progressive development of institutions devoted to the purpose, and to secure the effective execution by Local Bodies, under its control and direction, of the national policy for providing adequate Library Service in every area.

State Librarian

22 To help it in the discharge of its duties, the State Library Authority shall appoint a full-timed State Librarian from among those with adequate qualifications to practise in the library profession, lay down the conditions of his service and provide him with the necessary establishment.

221 Subject to the control of the State Library Authority the State Librarian shall

(1) manage the State Central Library

(2) superintend, direct and deal with all matters relat ing to the Copyright Act and to the mainte nance and service of the reading and kindred materials deposited with the Government under the said Act

Duties of the State Librarian

(3) superintend, direct and deal with the exercise of powers and the performance of duties by Local Library Authorities under this Act

(4) centralise all impersonal technical work such as acquisition, classification and cataloguing, and co-ordinate the selection service and maintenance of reading and kindred materials in the public, academic departmental and outlier libraries of the State

(4) maintain the State Register of Librarians

(5) submit to the State Library Authority an annual report on the progress and the working of the library system in the State and

(6) generally assist the State Library Authority and carry on the correspondence and exercise the powers assigned to him by it in the discharge of its duties and the exercise of its powers in regard to this Act.

23 There shall be a State Library Committee for the pur pose of advising the State Library Authority on all matters arising under this Act.

State Library Committee

231 The State Library Committee shall consist of —

Membership

(1) The Minister

(2) The Minister in charge of Local Self-Government or his deputy

(3) The State Librarian

(4) The Director of Education or his deputy

(5) Two persons elected by the State Legislature

(6) One person appointed by the Government from among its secretaries and the heads of its departments

(7) One person appointed by the Executive of each of the Universities in the State or his deputy

(8) One person appointed by the Executive of a Library Association of the State approved by the Minister for

this purpose, or his deputy and

(9) One person with special knowledge of Library Science appointed by the Minister

232 The Minister shall be the President and the State Librarian shall be the Secretary of the State Library Committee

President and Secretary

233 Members of the State Library Committee, other than *ex-officio* members, shall hold office for three years from the date of their election or appointment, as the case may be

Term of Office

234 The State Library Authority shall, by rules provide for the constitution, the periodical or other meetings and as to the procedure thereof and of the functions and duties of the State Library Committee

Meeting and Procedure

CHAPTER 3

LOCAL LIBRARY AUTHORITY

31 For the purpose of organising and maintaining Public Libraries, there shall be a Local Library Authority for each Municipal Area with a population of about 50 000 or more approved by the State Library Authority for this purpose (hereinafter referred to as An Approved City Area) and for the area of each of the District Boards excluding the Approved City Areas in it (hereinafter referred to as An Approved Rural Area).

311 The Local Library Authority for an Approved City Area shall be the Municipal Council or City Corporation thereof (and may hereinafter be referred to as a City Library Authority).

City Library Authorities

312 The Local Library Authority for an Approved Rural Area shall be the District Board thereof (which may hereinafter be referred to as a Rural Library Authority).

Rural Library Authority

32 It shall be the duty of every Local Library Authority to provide Library Service to the people of its area.

Duty

the service of the notice

34 If the State Library Authority is satisfied either from a report from its officers or upon complaint by any persons interested, or otherwise, that any Local Library Authority has grossly failed to discharge any duty imposed on it by or for the purpose of this Act, the State Library Authority may make an order declaring the Local Library Authority to be in default in respect of that duty and giving such directions for the purpose of enforcing the execution thereof as appear to the State Library Authority to be expedient, and any such directions shall be enforceable, on an application made on behalf of the State Library Authority by mandamus.

Default

35 A Local Library Authority may for establishing organising and administering its public Library System, or for performing any duties under this Act

Duties & Powers

(1) provide suitably-fitted buildings, books, periodicals, news papers, maps, manuscripts, lantern slides, cinema reels, microfilms and kindred materials and the necessary apparatus, for their projection, and reading and other necessary materials and conveniences

(2) acquire purchase or hire land or other properties and effect, take down, rebuild, alter repair and extend buildings, and fit up furnish and supply the same with the requisite furniture fittings and conveniences

(3) take over any library with the previous sanction of the State Library Authority on such conditions as may be approved by the same authority

(4) discontinue any public library provided by it or change the site of any such institution with the previous sanction of the State Library Authority

(5) provide lectures and such other activities as may be conducive to the carrying out of the purpose of this Act

(6) accept any endowment or gift for any purpose connected with this Act

(7) subject to any rules made by the State Library

Authority in this behalf organise or participate in the organisation of conferences for the discussion of questions relating to libraries for promoting Library Service, and expend such sums as may be reasonable in paying or contributing towards any expenditure incurred in connection with the conferences and exhibitions, including the expenses of any person authorised by them to attend any such conference or exhibition

(8) subject to the rules made by the State Library Authority in this behalf engage salaried officers and servants, punish and dismiss them and

(9) with the sanction of the State Library Authority do any other thing that may be conducive to the furtherance of the purpose of this Act

Vesting of Property

36 All movable and immovable properties required or held for any Public Library or for any of the purposes of this Act shall vest in the Local Library Authority concerned

Acquisition under Land Acquisition Act

361 Any immovable property required by a Local Library Authority for the purposes of this Act shall be deemed to be land needed for public purpose within the meaning of the Land Acquisition Act in force and may be acquired under that Act

Alienation of Land

362. A Local Library Authority may with the previous sanction of the State Library Authority sell any of its lands or buildings, and the money received from the sale or received in part of exchange shall be used for the purchase of other buildings or may be applied for any purposes for which capital money may be applied under the Act, with the sanction of the State Library Authority

37 Where in the opinion of a Local Library Authority the adult population within its area or any part or class thereof is unable by reason of illiteracy to take full advantage of the Library Service provided by it, it may cause an enquiry to be made touching the conditions as regards such illiteracy other schemes at work for the removal of the same, the funds, other than public funds, available for the purpose, and all other relevant matters.

371 The Local Library Authority shall then consider the report of the enquiry and submit a scheme to the State Library Authority for consideration and sanction, setting forth proposals as to the manner in which it intends to provide for the removal of illiteracy and the funds it proposes to spend for the purpose.

Scheme of Removal of illiteracy

372. Without prejudice to the powers above-mentioned, it shall be competent to a Local Library Authority for the like purpose,

Co-operation with others

(1) to associate itself with any person or body of persons willing to co-operate in the matter and

(2) to aid such persons or body of persons by giving such use of its lands, buildings and furniture, reading and kindred materials, apparatus or other property as may be possible

But save as provided in a scheme approved by the State Library Authority it shall not expend monies or make grants for the purpose.

CHAPTER 4

LOCAL LIBRARY COMMITTEE AND VILLAGE LIBRARY COMMITTEE

41 Every Local Library Authority shall, in accordance with arrangements approved by the State Library Authority establish a Local Library Committee for the efficient discharge of its functions under this Act.

Local Library Committee

42. Every Local Library Committee shall include persons of experience in library work but at least a majority shall be members of the Local Library Authority constituting it, and it shall include the Chairman or the equivalent officer of the said Authority

Constitution

421 The Chairman or the equivalent officer of the Local Library Authority shall be Chairman of the Local Library Committee and the City or the District Librarian, as the case may be, of the said

Chairman and Secretary

Authority shall be the Secretary

43 Every Local Library Authority shall consider a report from its Local Library Committee before exercising any of its functions with respect to Library Service

Report

provided that an Authority may dispense with such a report, if in its opinion the matter is urgent and inform the Local Library Committee about it as early thereafter as possible

44 A Local Library Authority may delegate to its Local Library Committee any of its functions with respect to libraries except the power of imposing or varying a rate, or borrowing money or of disposing of landed property and buildings, or of passing the budget or of submitting the report to the State Library Authority

Delegation

45 A Local Library Committee may subject to such restrictions as may be imposed by its Local Library Authority and the arrangements approved by the State Library Authority

Sub-Committee

(1) appoint such Sub-Committees constituted in such manner as the Committee may determine and

(2) authorise any such Sub-Committees to exercise any of its powers on its behalf

46 A Rural Library Authority shall appoint a Village Library Committee for each or any group of its Delivery Stations to advise it on local requirements in regard to Library Service

Village Library Committee

461 A Rural Library Authority shall recognise as a Village Library Committee the Library Committee appointed by the Municipal Council or the Village Panchayat or its equivalent, of any area in which one of its Branch Libraries is functioning.

For Areas of Branches

47 The minutes and proceedings of a Local Library Committee or a Village Library Committee shall be open to the inspection of any rate-payer in the area served by it, on payment of a fee not exceeding one rupee and any such rate-payer may make a copy thereof

Access to Minutes

or an extract therefrom.

Chapter 5

STATE CENTRAL LIBRARY

51 The State Library Authority shall establish maintain and manage a State Central Library at the metropolis or any other suitable place to function as a reservoir for the library system of the State.

State Central Library

511 The State Library Authority may establish maintain and manage a State Branch Library for any of its linguistic regions at any suitable place within it.

State Branch Library

52 The State Librarian shall be the officer to discharge the duties and exercise the powers laid down in parts III and V of the Press and Registration of Books Act of 1897 the State Central Library shall maintain a State Bureau of Copyright to assist him in this matter

Copyright duties and powers

521 One copy of each of all printed materials received under the Press and Registration of Books Act of 1897 shall be kept in the State Central Library or a State Branch Library as a separate Copyright Library for reference within the premises of the library but not for loan of any kind, except for production in a Court of Law on demand by the said Court.

Copyright Collection

522 Any additional copy or copies if requisitioned under the said Act shall be included among the stock of the State Central Library normally available for loan

Copy for Loan

523 A report of the working of the State Bureau of Copyright may be incorporated in the Annual Report of the State Librarian.

Report

53 The State Central Library may maintain a State Library for the Blind for the production, storing and serving of books, sound records of books, and kindred materials, for the blind.

State Library for the Blind

531 The State Library for the Blind may collaborate with the National and the other State Libraries for the Blind and undertake such work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement.

Collaboration

532 The carriage of the books for the blind between the State Central Library and the Blind readers within India shall be done by the Postal Department free of postal charges.

Free Postal Transport

533 A report on the working of the State Library for the Blind shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the State Librarian

Report

54 The State Central Library may maintain a State Bureau of Inter Library Loan

State Bureau of Inter Library Loan

541 The State Bureau of Inter Library Loan may include in the scheme of inter-library loan the Public Libraries, the Departmental Libraries and such Outlier Libraries in the State as are willing to join the scheme on such conditions as may be agreed upon

Extent within the State

542 The State Bureau of Inter Library Loan may enter into any scheme of inter-state library loan or international library loan as may be agreed upon by the participating States and the Union Government.

Extent outside the State

543 A report of the working of the State Bureau of Inter Library Loan shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the State Librarian.

Report

55 The State Central Library may maintain a State Bibliographical Bureau.

State Bibliographical Bureau

551 The State Bibliographical Bureau may admit into the scheme of its work other agencies like the Departments of the Government and Educational and Learned Bodies in the State

Collaboration within the State

552 The State Bibliographical Bureau may collaborate with similar bureaus or agencies of the other States and the Union Government and undertake such bibliographical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating bureaus and agencies.

Collaboration outside the State

553 A report of the working of the Bibliographical Bureau shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the State Librarian

Report

56 A State Bureau of Technical Service may be maintained by the State Central Library for centralised technical services like acquisition, classification and cataloguing of books for the Public Libraries, Departmental Libraries and such Outlier Libraries in the State as are willing to join the scheme on such conditions as may be agreed upon

State Bureau of Technical Service

561 The Bureau of Technical Service may collaborate with similar bureaus of other States and of the Union Government, and undertake such technical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement with the participating bureaus

Collaboration

562 A report on the working of the Bureau of Technical Service shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the State Librarian

Report

CHAPTER 6

FINANCE, ACCOUNTS AND AUDIT

61 With the previous sanction of the State Library Authority and the Government, a Local Library Authority shall raise a library rate in the form of a surcharge of not less than three nayapaisa for every whole rupee in the property tax or house tax or any other tax to be named in this behalf

Library Rates

62. The library rate shall be collected in the same manner as other rates and taxes payable to the body which has been constituted as the Local Library Authority

Mode of Collecting

63 The State Library Authority shall by rules, make provision for the payment by it to each Local Library Authority

Library Grants

(1) of annual grants, not less in value than that of the proceeds of the local library rate in the preceding financial

year in respect of the expenditure incurred by such Authorities in the exercise of their functions in respect of this Act and

(2) of special grants for the acquisition of lands and buildings for providing buildings and furnishing them and for other special purposes relating to the discharge of their functions in respect of this Act.

631 The State Library Authority shall by rules, make provision for the payment to the Universities approved for the purpose,

Grants for College of Library Science

(1) of annual grants for the College of Library Science

(2) of annual grants for the payment as stipends to the students of the State, pursuing a study of Library Science and

(3) of special grants for the equipment of the College of Library Science.

64 Every Local Library Authority shall maintain a Library Fund from which its expenses in respect of the provisions of this Act shall be met.

Library Fund

641 To the Library Fund of a Local Library Authority shall be credited

Credit to the Library Fund

(1) the amount raised as library rate

(2) the amount, if any which may be transferred to it from the general funds of the body which has been constituted as the Local Library Authority

(3) the grants received from the State Library Authority

(4) the grants received from the Union Government

(5) the amount collected under the Library Rules

(6) the amount realised from endowments, if any and

(7) any contribution received from any person or body of persons.

65 A Local Library Authority may with the sanction of the State Library Authority and of the Government, borrow money for any of the purposes of this Act on such security and on such terms as the Government may approve.

Power to Borrow

State Library Fund

66 There shall be a State Library Fund from which shall be met —

(1) the salary of the State Librarian and his establishment and the expenses of the State Central Library and its Branches

(2) the expenses incidental to the meeting of the State Library Committee

(3) the grants to be paid to Local Library Authorities

(4) the grants to universities for the Colleges of Library Science

(5) the grants to Library Associations and to aid research in Library Science

(6) the expenses of conferences and exhibitions promoted by the State Library Authority for the furtherance of library movement and

(7) the expenses incurred in contributing to conferences and exhibitions held for the furtherance of library movement including the expenses of any persons authorised by it to attend any such conference or exhibition and

(8) all other expenses incurred by the State Library Authority in the furtherance of the purpose of this Act.

Provision of Money

661 The Legislature of the State shall provide money to the State Library Fund

662. To the State Library Fund shall be credited —

(1) the amount provided by the Legislature

(2) the grants received from the Union Government

(3) the amount collected under the Library Rules of the State Central Library

(4) the amount realized from endowments, if any and

(5) any contribution received from any person or body of persons.

67 Notwithstanding the provisions in the other sections of this chapter in lieu of the minimum fixed for the annual grant to be paid to the Local Library Authorities, the Government may maintain the staff of the public libraries in the State and make cash payment to the Local Library Authorities only to the extent to which the sanctioned annual grant exceeds the annual proceeds from the library rates

CHAPTER 7

USE, STANDARD REPORT

71 No charge shall be made for admission to a Public Library provided by a Local Library Authority or in case of a lending library for borrowing therefrom by the inhabitants of the area of such Local Library Authority but the Authority may if it thinks fit, grant loan from a lending library to persons not being inhabitants of its area either gratuitously or for payment

Admission to Public Library

72. Subject to the provisions of this Act and the Rules made thereunder by the State Library Authority a Local Library Authority may frame Library Rules,

Library Rules.

(1) for regulating the use of the Public Libraries under its control, the contents thereof and the admission of the public thereto

(2) for protecting the Public Libraries and the furniture and contents thereof from misuse, injury or destruction

(3) for requiring any guarantee or security from any person using the Public Library and against the loss or injury to any book or other article and

(4) for enabling the officers and servants of the Local Library Authority to exclude or remove from the premises of the Public Library any person offending against the provisions of this Act, or the Rules made thereunder by the State Library Authority or the Library Rules

73 Any person—

(1) who in a Public Library or other institution maintained under this Act acts to the annoyance or disturbance of any person using the same behaves in a disorderly manner or uses violent abusive language or

Offences and Punishment

(2) who after proper warning, persists in remaining therein beyond the hours fixed for closing, shall be liable to be excluded or removed forthwith from the premises and shall also be liable on conviction to a penalty not exceeding

State Library Fund

66 There shall be a State Library Fund from which shall be met —

(1) the salary of the State Librarian and his establishment and the expenses of the State Central Library and its Branches

(2) the expenses incidental to the meeting of the State Library Committee

(3) the grants to be paid to Local Library Authorities

(4) the grants to universities for the Colleges of Library Science

(5) the grants to Library Associations and to aid research in Library Science

(6) the expenses of conferences and exhibitions promoted by the State Library Authority for the furtherance of library movement and

(7) the expenses incurred in contributing to conferences and exhibitions held for the furtherance of library movement including the expenses of any persons authorised by it to attend any such conference or exhibition and

(8) all other expenses incurred by the State Library Authority in the furtherance of the purpose of this Act.

Provision of Money

661 The Legislature of the State shall provide money to the State Library Fund

662. To the State Library Fund shall be credited —

(1) the amount provided by the Legislature

(2) the grants received from the Union Government

(3) the amount collected under the Library Rules of the State Central Library

(4) the amount realized from endowments, if any and

(5) any contribution received from any person or body of persons.

67 Notwithstanding the provisions in the other sections of this chapter in lieu of the minimum fixed for the annual grant to be paid to the Local Library Authorites, the Government may maintain the staff of the public libraries in the State and make cash payment to the Local Library Authorities only to the extent to which the sanctioned annual grant exceeds the annual proceeds from the library rates.

with this Act for carrying into effect the purposes of this Act.

811 In particular and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing powers, such Rules may provide for —

Subject Matter of the Rules

(1) regulating the work of a State Library Committee

(2) prescribing outlines of the Development Plan to be submitted by Local Library Authorities and the manner in which publicity shall be given to any proposed Development Plan

(3) the co-ordination or centralisation of technical work in the library system of the State

41 the maintenance of the State Register of Librarians

42. the recruitment, qualifications and conditions of service of the salaried officers and servants of the State Central Library Local Library Authorities and the professional staff of the libraries of the Departments of the Government and of the institutions maintained by the Government

(5). the assignment of grants to Local Library Authorities

(6) the assignment of grants to Colleges of Library Science, including stipends to students of Library Science

(7) the accounts to be maintained by the Local Library Authorities

(8) the auditing of the accounts, the conditions under which ratepayers may appear before the auditors, inspect books and vouchers, and take exception to items entered therein or omitted therefrom and the publication of the audited statement and the report accompanying it and

(9) all other matters which have to be dealt with by Rules under this Act.

43 Union Library Act

Whereas it is expedient to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a National Central Library and for the promotion and co-ordination of a comprehensive Library Service in India and in foreign lands and high seas,

It is hereby enacted as follows

CHAPTER I

PRELIMINARY

Short Title — 1 This Act may be called the Union Library Act, 1957

2. In this Act unless there is anything repugnant in the subject or context

(1) National Librarian — National Librarian means the officer appointed by the Union Government to perform the duties of the National Librarian

(2) National Central Library — National Central Library means the library established or maintained or managed by the Union Government as National Central Library

(3) Departmental Library — Departmental Library means a library established or maintained by a Department or Institution of the Union Government

(4) Outlier Library — Outlier Library means any library in Delhi, other than a library belonging to any of the above mentioned categories, and agreeing to work in collaboration with the National Central Library

(5) Contact Library — Contact Library means a library in a foreign country established and maintained by the Department of Libraries of the Union Government to furnish authentic reading materials on and by India to the country concerned and to promote cultural contact with it.

CHAPTER 2

NATIONAL LIBRARY AUTHORITY

National Library Authority

21 For the purpose of managing the National Central Library promoting a comprehensive Library Service in India establishing and maintaining Contact Libraries in foreign countries and establishing and maintaining Library Service for the seafarers of India the Minister of Education (hereinafter referred to as the Minister') shall be the National Library Authority

Duties of the National Library Authority

211 It shall be the duty of the National Library Authority to establish, maintain and manage a National Central Library to help the provision of a comprehensive Library Service to the people of India in collaboration with the State Library Authorities of the constituent States, and co-ordinate the said Library Service, to establish and maintain Contact Libraries in foreign countries to furnish authentic Indian literature to provide authentic informative books and periodicals on India and to promote cultural contact and understanding with foreign countries, and also Library Service to the seafarers of India

National Librarian

22. To help in the discharge of its duties, the National Library Authority shall appoint a full timed National Librarian lay down the conditions of his service and provide him with the necessary establishment

Duties of the National Librarian

221 Subject to the control of the National Library Authority the National Librarian shall,

(1) manage the National Central Library

(2) superintend direct, and deal with all matters relating to the Copyright Act and to the maintenance and service of the materials deposited with the Union Government under the said Act

(3) manage the Contact Libraries of India established in foreign countries

(4) manage the Libraries for the seafarers of India

33 The National Central Library may maintain a National Bureau of International Exchange for effecting exchange of publications of Indian and foreign origin.
National Bureau of International Exchange

331 The National Bureau of International Exchange may enter into agreement with similar Bureaus in other countries or of international standing on a basis of reciprocity and in accordance with such international conventions and treaties as are ratified or entered into by the Union Government
Extent

332 *The carriage of exchange materials between the National Central Library and the parties concerned in India shall be done by the Postal Department free of postal charges, and at the lowest permissible rate to materials sent outside India*
Free Postal Transport

333 A report of the working of the National Bureau of International Exchange shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian
Report

34 The National Central Library may maintain a National Library for the Blind, for the production, storing and serving of books, sound-records of books, and kindred materials for the blind
National Library for the Blind

341 The National Library for the Blind may collaborate with the State Libraries for the Blind or the State Central Libraries and undertake such work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement
Collaboration

342 The carriage of the books for the blind between the National Central Library or any State Central Library and the blind readers within India shall be done by the Postal Department free of postal charges.
Free Postal Transport

343 A report on the working of the National Library for the Blind shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian
Report

35 The National Library Authority may maintain Contact Libraries in foreign countries.
Contact Library

351 The National Librarian shall manage all of the India s Contact Libraries abroad
Management

352. A report on the working of India s Contact Libraries abroad shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian
Report

National Library for Seafarers
36. The National Central Library may maintain a National Library for the seafarers of India.

361 Branches of the National Library for Seafarers may be maintained in ports of call frequented by Indian ships whether in India or abroad and in the Indian ships themselves
Branches

362. The National Librarian shall manage the National Library for Seafarers and its branches
Management

363 A report on the working of the National Library for Seafarers and its branches shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian
Report

National Bureau of Inter Library loan
37 The National Central Library may maintain a National Bureau of Inter Library Loan.

371 The National Bureau of Inter Library Loan may include in the scheme of inter-library loan the Departmental Libraries, such Outlier Libraries as are willing to join the scheme on such condition as may be agreed upon and such State Central Libraries of the constituent states as are willing to join the scheme.
Extent within India

372. The National Bureau of Inter Library Loan may enter into a scheme of international library loan with any foreign country on such conditions as may be mutually agreed upon.
Extent outside India

373 A report of the working of the National Bureau of Inter Library Loan shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian.

National Bibliographical Bureau
38 The National Central Library may maintain a National Bibliographical Bureau.

381 The National Bibliographical Bureau may admit into

its work other agencies in the country like the Departments of the Government, the Insdoc, the State Bibliographical Bureaus of the constituent states and the Learned Bodies in the country on such conditions as may be mutually agreed upon and undertake such bibliographical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating bureaus and agencies.

Collaboration within India

382. The National Bibliographical Bureau may collaborate with similar Bureaus or agencies of the other nations or of international status and undertake such international bibliographical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating bureaus and agencies

Collaboration outside India

383 A report of the working of the National Bibliographical Bureau shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian

Report

391 The National Central Library may maintain a National Bureau of Technical Service for centralised impersonal technical work like acquisition classification and cataloguing of reading materials for the National Central Library the Departmental Libraries and such Outlier Libraries as are willing to join the scheme on such conditions as may be agreed upon and undertake such technical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating libraries

National Bureau of Technical Service

3911 The National Bureau of Technical Service may collaborate with similar bureaus in the State Central Libraries of the constituent states and co-ordinate the technical treatment of books in the entire library system of the country and undertake such technical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating bureaus.

Collaboration

3912. The National Bureau of Technical Service may collaborate with similar bureaus of other countries and the international bureaus if any devoted to similar work and undertake such technical work as may fall to its share by mutual agreement among the participating bureaus.

3913 A report on the working of the National Bureau of Technical Service shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian.

Repor

Chapter 4

FINANCE

41 The National Library Authority shall by rules make provision for

Grants for the College of Library Science

(1) An annual grant for the Union College of Library Science

(2) An annual grant for the payment of stipends to students of Library Science and

(3) Special grant for the equipment of the Union College of Library Science.

42. The National Library Authority may by rules, make provision for the payment of annual grants and special grants to libraries maintained by bodies of national status, to Library Associations of national status, to the constituent States for distribution to other libraries and for the promotion of research in Library Science

Grant for Libraries

43 There shall be a National Library Fund from which shall be met,

National Library Fund

(1) the expenses of the National Library Authority

(2) the expenses incidental to the meeting of the National Library Committee

(3) the salary of the National Librarian and his establishment, the amount required for the reading materials and the equipment of the National Central Library including India s Contact Libraries abroad the National Library for Seafarers and its branches and all other expenses incidental to their maintenance and management, and the discharge of the functions laid down by this Act

(4) the grants to the Union College of Library Science

(5) the grants to the libraries and Library Associations of national status and in aid of research in Library Science

(6) the grants to the constituent States for distribution to libraries

(7) the expenses of conferences and exhibitions promoted by the National Library Authority for the furtherance of library movement

(8) the expenses incurred in contributing to conferences and exhibitions held for the furtherance of library movement, including the expenses of any persons authorised by it to att end any such conferences or exhibitions and

(9) all other expenses incurred by the National Library Authority in the furtherance of the purpose of this Act

Provision of money

431 The Parliament of India shall provide money to the National Library Fund.

432 To the National Library Fund shall be credited —

(1) the amount provided by the Parliament

(2) the amount collected under the Library Rules of the National Central Library the Contact Libraries and the Seafarers Libraries

(3) the amount received from endowments and

(4) any contribution from any person or body of persons.

CHAPTER 5

THE WORKING OF THE NATIONAL CENTRAL LIBRARY

Admission to the Library

51 No charge shall be made for admission to the National Central Library or to any of India s Contact Libraries abroad or to the use of the National Library for Seafarers or its branches.

Loan from National Central Library

511 No reading materials shall be lent out by the National Central Library to individual readers except through a Departmental Library an Outlier Library a State Central Library or a National Central Library of any other country or any International or World Library approved for the purpose

Loan from a Contact Library

512. No reading materials shall be lent out of any of India s Contact Libraries abroad, except as inter library loan, or in accordance with the lib-

rary rules framed by the National Librarian for the purpose

513 Reading materials may be lent out to registered sea farers and to registered ships by the Branches of the National Library for Seafarers.

52. Subject to the provisions of this Act and the Rules made thereunder by the National Library Authority the National Librarian may frame Library Rules,

Library Rules

(1) for regulating the use of the libraries under his control and the contents thereof and the admission of the public thereto

(2) for protecting the same and the furniture and contents thereof from misuse, injury or destruction

(3) for requiring any guarantee or security from any person using them and against the loss or injury to any reading materials or other articles and

(4) for enabling the officers and servants of the libraries to exclude or remove therefrom any person offending against the provisions of this Act, or the Rules made thereunder by the National Library Authority or the Library Rules.

53 Any person

Offences and Punishment

(1) who, in the National Central Library or any other institution maintained under this Act, acts to the annoyance or disturbance of any person using the same behaves in a disorderly manner or uses violent, abusive or obscene language or

(2) who, after proper warning, persists in remaining therein beyond the hours fixed for closing, shall be liable to be excluded or removed forthwith from the premises, and shall be liable on conviction to a penalty not exceeding ten rupees

531 An offence committed under section 53 of this Act shall be triable in the manner provided for summary trial in Chapter XII of the Code of Criminal Procedure.

54 Each State Library Authority shall send such reports and returns and furnish such information to the National Library Authority as it may require for the purpose of the exercise of its functions under this Act

55 The report of the progress made in the working of the library system of the country and of the Contact Libraries and the Branch Seafarers Libraries, together with a list of the State Central Libraries and the Local Library Authorities, showing the number of central libraries, branches delivery stations and other institutions maintained and other such information as may be prescribed by Rules shall be incorporated in the Annual Report of the National Librarian

Report

Chapter 6

RULES

61 The National Library Authority may by notification in the Offical Gazette, make Rules consistent with this Act for carrying into effect the purposes of this Act

Making of Rules

611 In particular and without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing power such Rules may provide for

Subject matter of the Rules

(1) regulating the work of the National Library Committee

(2) the co-ordination or centralisation of technical work in the library system of the country

(3) the recruitment, qualifications, and conditions of service of the salaried officers and servants of the National Central Library India s Contact Libraries abroad and the branches of the National Library for Seafarers and the professional staff of the Departmental Libraries

(4) the payment of grants to the Union College of Library Science

(5) the payment of stipends to students of Library Science

(6) the payment of grants to libraries, Library Associations and in aid of research in Library Science and

(7) all other matters which have to be dealt with by Rules under this Act.

44 Library System

The third obligation of the State—that of co-ordination—is really an attempt to reconcile two opposing factors, viz., the necessarily limited nature of the finances of a community and the apparently unlimited finances required to provide EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK EVERY MOMENT These *two factors can be reconciled only by a judicious pooling of* the resources of the community by a carefully articulated scheme of library co-ordination and co-operation, which should not be left to chance or to the sweet will of the libraries themselves, but should be actively fostered by the State in the interests of national economy In other words, the State should integrate the libraries in the land into a Library System. *There are three types of co-ordination possible at* three different levels, which need different modes of action viz (1) fixing a lower limit to the size of the ultimate Local Library Area, which is to be done by legislation (2) fostering amity specialisation and inter-library loans, which can only be done by informal suggestions made at periodical conferences and (3) maintaining certain central agencies, which must be financed and managed directly by the State.

441 VIABILITY

It would be futile to invest a small area whose rateable *assessment is not fairly high, with independent library powers.* With its meagre income no efficient library service will be possible Obviously no building can even be considered to talk of a staff with a scale of salary that can attract and retain really able professionally qualified men, would be absurd book-purchase must be inevitably small The little money of each such small library would be absorbed, almost completely in the duplication of one and the same set of certain commonly required fundamental books. Hence the State should fix a minimum rateable assessment or a minimum population as the qualification for an independent library area. *This is the demand of* viability

442 Viable Units for Madras

In Madras, we can have really efficient service only in cities with a population of 50,000 or over There are in the whole province only 12 such cities, *viz.*, Madras Madura Trichinopoly Calicut Kumbakonam Tanjore, Negapatam, Salem Cuddalore, Cocanada Conjeeveram and Coimbatore Even if we agree to admit second rate town libraries, it won't be wise to go to towns of less than 20 000 population And there are only 40 other towns with such a qualification *viz.*, Mangalore Rajahmundry Tinnevelly Vellore Guntur Ellore *Palamcottah Palghat Vizagapatam, Masulipatam,* Bezwada, Tuticorin Bellary Vizianagaram Nellore Dindigul Srivilliputtur Rajapalayam Aruppukottai Berhampur Cannanore, Tellicherry Adoni, Mayavaram Kurnool Saidapet, Tiruvalur Srirangam Chidambaram Erode, Gudiatham, Sembiam, Mannargudi, Virudunagar Tenkasi Tiruvannamalai Tenali, Vaniambady Anakapallee and Bodinayakanoor in order of population Thus, the province can have at the most only 52 Urban Library Authorities. All other areas should be served only by the 26 District Library Authorities that should be instituted Such a District Library Scheme, *with travelling library facilities, is the only means of* securing satisfactory service with the small finances that can be made available

443 Specialisation in Subjects

Even with as few Library Authorities as 78 for the whole province, it may not be possible for each authority all by itself to find sufficient funds to provide for Every Person His or Her Book. Even if funds are forthcoming, it will be highly wasteful to do so While each Library Authority should own one or more (if demand justifies it) copies of certain ordinary books, *it is not conducive to national economy* for each of them to buy copies of costly or occasionally used books. In fact it is necessary that the 78 Library Authorities should arrive at an agreed scheme of specialisation In such a scheme each Library Authority will have for its share, the

building-up of as complete a collection as possible of materials bearing on local history local industries and other local interests. If Salem is predominantly a weaving centre and the Nilgiris a plantation district, it is desirable that the Salem Public Library should in addition to books of ordinary use and frequent demand, specialise in textile literature and the Nilgiris in plantation literature If there are stray citizens of Salem interested in plantation, the Salem Public Library should borrow the books they want from the Nilgiris Authority and in turn if a person in Coonoor is interested in textile industry his books should be got from Salem

444 Function of the State

The need for such a scheme of specialisation and inter library lending is being more and more felt in all the countries of the world It is only a Central Authority like the State that can guide its gradual growth along profitable lines. Periodical conferences should be convened by the State, to discuss and formulate the necessary adjustments from time to time Such conferences will also incidentally lead to a useful exchange of ideas on several other library problems, such as classification, cataloguing, binding, publicity methods and so on.

445 State Central Library

To bring out such a co-ordination and such a healthy and willing co-operation between the 78 Library Authorities, and to secure further National Economy there is need for a certain type of direct State action. Such co-ordinating activities should be undertaken by the Ministry of Education through the State Central Library

446 Essential Functions

One such activity is the maintenance of an Information Bureau similar to the one we referred to as existing in the State Library of Prussia. It must have a Union Catalogue of all the libraries of the province and bring about a smooth

exchange of books between libraries, as and when required, so that any student in any corner of the province can get HIS BOOK with the least possible delay cost and worry It must also maintain a Central Library of rarely used and costly books for lending to any library on request, so that the 78 Library Authorities may invest their book funds in oft used books and books of local interest. It must also gather the dead books of the several Library Authorities from time to time and arrange for the housing of just a sufficient number of copies in permanent custody for occasional use While it would be impossible for each Library Authority to give shelf space for all its dead materials, it is not proper for each such authority to destroy them indiscriminately and independently lest certain books should happen to have no representative copy whatever in the Province It should further provide for the maintenance of certain types of special libraries, such as the Library for the Blind and the Seafarers Library which, by their very nature, cannot get localised

447 ADDITIONAL FUNCTIONS

While these activities are absolutely necessary the State Central Library may with advantage, interest itself also in co-operative cataloguing as the Library of Congress does it may endeavour to publish bibliographical aids from time to time it may be possible for it to so influence the publishing world as to improve the bibliographical standard of book production it may as the Social Education Department of the Government of Soviet Russia does, collect data regarding the supply and demand of books and endeavour to promote necessary publications to create for EVERY PERSON HIS OR HER BOOK it may also help in various ways, the maintenance of proper standards of Library Service and be a sort of clearance house for library ideas for the whole province. It may publish a periodical bulletin to further such exchange of ideas and to keep the several libraries informed of each other s achievements and novelties, so as to excite healthy emulation.

45 University Library System

Some of the co-ordinating functions proposed for the State in a National Library System will be equally applicable to other library systems as well Take for example a University Library System. It is likely to have a Main Library and several Departmental Libraries in addition to the libraries in the constituent colleges. The chief executive of the University should exercise many of these co-ordinating functions through a carefully chosen Library Committee of academic and administrative interests, if the resources of the University are to be properly husbanded and wasteful duplication is to be avoided. The usually meagre library finances of the colleges may well be invested in a sufficient number of copies of text-books and other similar works in frequent demand.

451 Co-ordination

Unless the University has an indefinitely long purse, it would be well advised to restrict the Departmental Collections to duplicate copies of important reference books in daily demand by the members of the department and certain other oft used books in the line of enquiry which is, for the moment, engaging the attention of its members. The departments should be encouraged and advised to draw all other kinds of books from the Main Library as and when the need arises. In particular it is doubtful if any University can be rich enough to purchase duplicate sets of Scientific Periodicals, whose number has already crossed the 25,000 mark The executive of the University should try to invest its funds on single copies of as many different periodicals as possible rather than permit the departments to have each the luxury of a complete run of some of such periodicals opened, perhaps, on half a dozen occasions in a term.

452 Function of the University Executive

If the executive of the University attempts such co-ordination it can certainly make its library allotment go much longer than otherwise and make a closer approximation to

the ideal of the Second Law Individual departments may not be able to take a comprehensive view of the University Library System as a whole and may under the obsession of their immediate and isolated interests, each prefer to have duplicate copies of all kinds of materials ever at their elbow While such an ideal arrangement may be worth having in theory it is only the central executive of the University which has to cut the coat according to the cloth, with prudence and a longer view of things, that can see the problem in its proper perspective and decide the extent to which an approximation to that ideal can be ventured

453 Location of University Library

At the same time the executive should minimise the handicaps of the departments due to the curtailment of duplication, by judicious housing-arrangements. The orientation of the University buildings can be so made that all the departments virtually have the whole library system at their elbow If the Second Law is borne in mind, and also from the point of view of the Fourth Law it must be made possible to locate most of the research departments around the library Even if it is not practicable to accommodate *all* the departments in that way the executive should at least be guided by the principle that the research departments have the first claim over all the available extra space in the library-buildings for study room and seminar purposes.

46 Obligation of the Library Authority

While well thought-out legulative and co-ordinating measures on the part of the State are necessary they are not by themselves sufficient The State action can find the money and may perhaps, be of help in providing the building. But the life, necessary to vitalise them, can only be supplied by the local Library Authority This obligation of the Library Authority centres round two factors, (1) the choice of books, and (2) the choice of staff

461 Choice of Books

Mention has already been made of one aspect of the choice of books, *viz.*, specialisation with a local bias The ideal way of fitting a library to give EVERY PERSON HIS BOOK may be that of gathering together all the products of the printing press from its very inception to the present moment, from the first book printed by Caxton to the last book print ed to-day "Some idea of its size is given by Iwinski" who in 1911 published the results of an elaborate statistical study of book production He estimated that there were then in the world twenty-five million different books We should however find need to correct this figure if we bear in mind that Iwinski limited his estimate to different books, and did not take into account different editions, reprints, issues, variant copies, etc., of the same book neither did he include such occasional, fugitive, and ephemeral items as maps, charts prints, proclamations, music, engravings, broadsides, news-sheets, newspapers, sermons, almanacs, etc., which would swell his estimate to an enormous extent"[4624] With such a bewildering number of materials in print, it can be seen that every Library Authority should willingly co-operate with the other libraries in the country—perhaps even in the world at large—and accept a policy of specialisation, if it is to help EVERY READER WITH HIS OR HER BOOK

462 Judgment in Choice

As a matter of fact, it may even be said that it is not so much to the size of the library as to the choice of its collec tions that the Second Law looks for the fulfilment of its message. It would insist that the essentially limited nature of the finance of a library makes it imperative that as much knowledge and judgment are required in the choice of books "as in the choice of a house or a wife, a wireless valve or a spark ing plug Roomfuls of books may be a mere accumulation whilst a simple shelf-ful may constitute a library the volume having been selected and placed side by side to serve a definite purpose A good general library might be regarded

as a grouping of such special collections, properly co-ordinated so as to strengthen and amplify each other without wasteful overlapping."[1900]

463 Choice of Reference Books

Another important aspect of the choice of books is that of going in for a large number of encyclopædic and other reference books. In the first place such books are usually costly and cannot be bought by individual citizens and secondly such books will usually furnish most of the information that is frequently sought by the majority of readers. With a good collection of such reference books, the problem of supplying Every Reader his or Her Material will be solved to a large extent. That this elementary fact has to be stated explicitly may be seen from the following:—One of our big libraries managed to pull on for more than a dozen years without the *Encyclopædia Britannica*; while most of our schools have not yet realised the value of or the need for a set of the *Book of Knowledge*. Under such conditions, the task of fulfilling the mandate of the Second Law even to a limited extent is almost impossible.

464 Book Selection Authority

A third point about the choice of books is that of knowing the readers and understanding and anticipating their needs. This can be done only by actual contact with the readers. Hence the Library Authority should allow itself to be guided largely by the librarian: he alone is in a position to observe and report. One possible danger may be due to the fact, that, under the present conditions of our country, the most influential members of the Library Authorities may be exercising the power of book selection: they may not either understand or be able to sympathise with the need that the ordinary persons may feel for books dealing with Arts and Crafts. Such literary members should bear in mind the emphasis of the Second Law on "*every*": then the narrowing effect of such a danger may be minimised.

465 Choice of Staff

Next to the choice of books the choice of staff can make or mar the fitness of a library to give EVERY READER HIS OR HER READING MATERIAL. We have dwelt at length, in the first chapter on the need for a well-educated technically trained properly paid staff Now we may add the need for an adequate staff This problem will again turn up in a more serious form when we discuss the Fourth Law

466 Adequate Competent Staff

A Library Authority that is anxious to obey the Second Law and give EVERY READER HIS BOOK, should realise "that an enormous proportion of the general public not excepting the more studious and intelligent, are not aware of all that libraries contain or that books contain and even when they have some apprehension, do not know how to get what they are in need of Few have the knowledge and skill required to extract the very best out of any kind of library One of the most familiar experiences of all who have to do with libraries is to see people hard up for information going away empty handed after a protracted search for what is ready waiting, properly catalogued and indexed, and perhaps contained in ready-reference works staring them in the face on the open shelf "[41] If the Library Authority realises this, it will appreciate the need for an adequate competent staff to show every reader how to use books as tools and libraries as workshops" and to make even the limited resources of its library yield to EVERY READER HIS OR HER MATERIAL.

47 Obligation of the Library Staff

This brings us to the next category of obligations, *viz.*, the obligations of the Library Staff There is a Tamil proverb which says that even though the desired boons may be granted by God, they may be held up by the ministering priest Similarly even though the State and the Library Authority might have duly discharged their obligations to the Second Law its mandate may not be properly carried out unless the

library staff discharge their obligations in an efficient manner We are not referring here to the possible negligence or indifference of the Library Staff They have been dealt with in the first chapter On the other hand we refer only to what the Second Law would demand of an earnest staff actuated by a sense of duty

471 Reference Service

We may shift the emphasis to the word "His" and trace the consequences. The first effect that came to be realised as soon as the emphasis shifted to His, was to understand that the business of the Library Staff is not merely to dole out across the counter the books that are asked for On the other hand, their business is to know the reader to know the books, and to actively help in the finding by Every Person of His or Her Book. This phase of the work is known as Reference Service "

472 Know the Reader

The first thing is to know the reader We referred to the importance of it in sections 17 to 1765 We also referred in section 3515 to the only systematic way in which this power can be acquired and in which it is sought to be acquired in Germany by the work that is being carried on in the Leipzig Institute for Readers and Reading.

473 Special Training

In needs to be emphasised that Reference Service cannot be done without special training and intensive experience. The laymen, who manage our libraries, seldom realise this obligation that the Second Law throws on the Library Staff but act on the assumption that any S.S L.C. holder will do for library work But even they know that the holding of the S S L.C. does not qualify one to run a locomotive, and that good manners and common sense are not all that is required for the practice of medicine But since they regard library work as mechanically handing out books, the existence else-

where of library schools, of degree courses in library science, and of a Chair of Library Science in a University like Gottingen, is a puzzle to them They may be still more puzzled if if they are told that libraries are now beginning to employ "readers advisers" to whom readers may apply for aid in FINDING THEIR BOOKS. They may even object that such advisory service smells too much of school mastering, whereas the adult learner must depend on himself The reply that western countries give to such an objection would be A man must digest his food in his own stomach but that is no reason for refusing to cook it or for withholding knife, fork and spoon "[1]

474 SHORT OF PRIVATE TUTOR

Next to knowing the readers, the Library Staff have to realise that they exist for the readers. They have to find out how much help could be given to EVERY READER TO FIND HIS BOOK without going beyond the limits of common sense and without becoming private secretaries or private tutors The following extract from a book-mark with the legend *purposeful reading* issued by the Detroit Public Library throws much light upon the way in which this obligation should be discharged by the Library Staff It says that that the library s *Educational Counsellor for Readers* will devote his time to the more intimate discussion of books and reading with those who may wish to know of the book journeys of someone else His position will be, not that of an instructor but of a sharer of good things, who will likewise enjoy hearing of the pleasures of other adventurers. Furthermore, a large part of his time will be devoted to giving talks on books and other aids to readers wherever he may be called upon to do so by organisations interested in either general or specific intellectual pursuits."[2]

475 KNOW THE BOOKS

If the obligation, that the emphasis on the His in the Second Law throws on the Library Staff is to be interpreted in such an ideal way it can be easily realised that the necessary knowledge of books and book-collections should be very vast

and thorough While what may be learnt from the backs of books or what may be remembered by shape size, colour location and other associations may be of some help they cannot be sufficient When books are added in hundreds, week by week, however retentive may be the memory one loses track of the accessions and the mind cannot hold all the titles.

4751 Know the Aid-Books

Again it is a peculiar sort of knowledge that is needed to find for EVERY PERSON HIS BOOK. People at all levels will seek the help of the Library Staff to find their books It may be a fresh man that wants help to prepare for the scholarship examination it may be a senior student who wants to lead a debate on *feminism* it may be a professor who wants to settle a point in the phonology of the Dravidian vowel system it may be a physicist who wants the book that will give him just enough and no more of *Matrices* to understand Heisenberg s treatment of Wave Mechanics. Here are some typical topics on which queries were received in the course of one month. They will give some idea of the range and difficulty of the work —

(1) The method of calculating the quantity of sun s heat that will fall in a year on the sides of a wall in the latitude of Madras

(2) The advantages of pile foundations

(3) Methods of utilising waste products

(4) The parts of Central India where iron deposits are said to be likely

(5) Tamil-English equivalents of the names of plants;

(6) The vitamin content of the common Madras dishes

(7) An authoritative account of the Hindu *Karma* theory

(8) A readable book on *Behaviourism*

(9) The best book on Statistics for teachers use

(10) Information about the coastal survey of Bombay and in particular about the silting up of the old harbours of the Kathiawar Peninsula

(11) The number of electors and of those who actually polled during the last three general elections in each constituency

(12) *The quantity of monazite mined in the different* countries of the world in 1929

(13) A picture of a Roman Villa

(14) An account of the conventions about flying corresponding to the Rule of the Road and a Code of Air laws.

No person can depend on his memory to say what his library resources are on such a bewildering range of subjects The Library Staff have necessarily to depend on certain recognised *mechanical aids, to discharge their obligations in* helping EVERY PERSON TO FIND HIS BOOK.

476 BIBLIOGRAPHY

The first tool consists of published bibliographies. The word *Bibliography* is a source of great confusion to many people Murray's *New English Dictionary* mentions four different uses of this term. We are here concerned only with the fourth use given therein, *viz.*, "A list of the books of a particular author printer or country or of those dealing with any particular theme the literature of a subject."

4761 Bibliographical Books

One result of this aspect of the Second Law has been that hardly any subject is now unprovided with a bibliography In addition to the select bibliography that it has now become the practice to append to each book there are several general bibliographies as well as those on specific subjects. John Minto's *Reference Books* published by the Library Association in 1929 is a good guide from which the important bibliographical books required for a library may be selected.

4762 Scope and Structure

The obligation that the Second Law would impose on the Library Staff is that they should acquaint themselves with the scope and structure of such bibliographical books. It is only close and systematic study and frequent use that will secure for the staff the necessary facility in using them quickly and effectively It is seldom that the arrangement is similar in different bibliographies This makes the work of the Library Staff all the more arduous.

477 REFERENCE BOOKS

Another class of books of which the Library Staff should cultivate an intimate knowledge is that of ready reference books, such as atlases, dictionaries, directories, encyclopædias and year books. There are now many such reference books in the field. In fact most of the major subjects and even some of their minor sub-divisions have been provided with ready reference books. Many readers are not aware either of their existence or of the extent to which they furnish information The requirements of the Second Law can be fulfilled to a remarkable degree, if the Library Staff have made a special study of the contents of such reference books There can be nothing more embarrassing to a librarian than to say that he cannot find for a reader the information he seeks. But the frequency of such embarrassing situations can be considerably reduced if he acquires thorough familiarity with a representative set of reference books. Indeed the percentage of readers that could be satisfied with the material culled by a skilful librarian from such publications is amazingly large.

478 CATALOGUE

A third obligation that the Second Law would impose on the Library Staff refers to the catalogue Books are mostly of a composite nature. Very few of them really are of the monograph type. While there may be a primary subject pertaining to a book, it generally deals with several other sub-

sidiary subjects as well *It may happen quite often that the* treatment which a subject receives in a book in which it occupies a subsidiary place is of ju the kind that a reader requires. The chapter on Vectors—a sub-division of Mathematics—contained in Haas's *Theoretical physics* is just the kind of treatment that many student of Mathematics may be seeking. Mrs Manning's *Ancient and medieval India* which should naturally be placed in the division of Cultural History contains chapters giving a clear synopsis and criticism of the outstanding works in Sanskrit Literature It contains also a good exposition of the different schools of Indian Philosophy Perhaps, the pages devoted to the theory of classification of biological sciences in J A Thomson's *Introduction to science* will be of utmost interest to students of classification Many of the anthropological books contain *much information of philological interest They give not* infrequently complete vocabularies

4781 Subject Analyticals

The Second Law would throw on the Library Staff the burden of readily helping the reader to find His MATERIALS from all possible books housed in *the Library This obligation* can be discharged only by making the catalogue fully analytical and giving profuse subject cross-references. These are also called Subject Analyticals. It would be impossible for any *individual, however gifted, to carry all such information in* his head. If the cross-references are not made sufficiently full, the library may have to turn away many readers unserved, while the materials sought by them are standing silently on the shelves.

48 Obligation of the Reader

We have seen that hardly any library can afford to get duplicate copies of books Hence EVERY READER can get his books only if each reader remembers that be is not the only person using the library He should not forget that the Second Law pleads not only for his rights and privileges but

also for those of others It is usual to invoke the civic sense of people in some places by a placard with the legend "when you leave this place see that you leave it as clean as you would like others to leave it for you Each reader who uses a public library should be guided by a similar maxim. He should show as much consideration to the interests of other readers, as he would like that they should show to his own interests.

481 Library Rules

While maxims like this are easily accepted in theory it usually becomes difficult to observe them in practice without the aid of some external help While nobody is so obtuse as not to perceive the imperative need to observe *the rule of the road* if road travel is to be safe, most people cannot resist the temptation to break it unless the policeman enforces it almost at every turn. Hence the readers should look upon the rigid enforcement of the rules of a library as an aid rather than as a hindrance They should try to obey them as cheerfully as one obeys the directions of the policeman on point-duty

482 Number of Volumes

One usual rule to which readers often object is that which fixes an upper limit to the number of volumes that can be taken home at a time This limit may be fixed as three, or six or eight or any other number Arguments may be found in favour of any particular number Hence, whatever be the number fixed by the rule, it may appear to be purely arbitrary But once that number is fixed the Second Law expects that every reader should deem it an obligation to respect that number without murmur One should not go behind that rule and question on every conceivable occasion the propriety of the number chosen When a member had in his possession one more book than the rules permitted, a librarian had reluctantly to write to him asking him to return the extra book. But he flared back writing, "I am afraid the rules of your

library are too exacting for it to become popular and your notice reminds me of the methods of the income-tax depart ment. I am, however returning one book as desired " The librarian expressed his thanks for the last sentence and treated the rest of the letter as not written

4821 Individual vs General Public

Every reader should realise that the rule is intended not to inconvenience the individual but to benefit the public in general A library book at the house of one reader is necessarily withdrawn from use by others and the rule attempts to minimise this objection to lending by limiting home-use to as many volumes at a time as can be reasonably expected to be in active use While six books used at one time by a reader who must consult them all together are performing useful service, even a single book that lies idle for a week on some one s private table is being wasted

483 Period of Loan

Another rule which causes perhaps much greater vexation, is that which fixes a time limit for the return of books taken on loan. Experience all the world over has taught the Library Authorities that this rule cannot be enforced without a penalty for its infringement. The favourite penalty is a monetary fine of so much per day for the retention of a borrowed book beyond the period allowed. The idea here is not to make this fine a source of revenue On the other hand the library tries to help the reader in every possible way to avoid paying such fines It usually indicates the due date on a special date-slip attached to the first page of the book. It sends a reminder card as soon as it becomes overdue and every week thereafter until the book comes back.

4831 Not Payment for Privilege

But the trouble about this, as about all fines for trivial misdemeanour is that it comes to be regarded as payment for a privilege. The person who wants to keep a popular book an

extra fortnight, thereby inconveniencing the next one on the waiting list, knows that it will cost him only a few annas to do so and he cheerfully pays it, unmindful of his civic responsibility This is as bad as it would be if a motorist should carry with him extra money for fines, to be able to pay for the privilege of rash-driving.

4832 Not a Case for Excuses

There are others that get irritated by the term 'fine' appearing in the library rules. They argue vociferously "We are not criminals to be fined. We are gentlemen I have never paid any fine either to my school or to any court of law The payment of fine is most demeaning to me" To avoid this reaction, the library calls it Overdue Charge There are still others who ask to be exempted on the ground "I am a busy man. I can t always find time or remember to examine that date slip and return the book in time." Or "I am frightfully engaged in intensive research I draw so many books at a time Hence I can t afford to find out when each book is due" Very often, the fact in such cases may be that the book lies on the reader s private table unopened for days and days, others being deprived of their legitimate use

484 Prohibited Categories

Another rule that has been dictated by experience is that books of ready reference rare books that cannot be replaced, heavy books that cannot be safely carried Art books that are full of plates, which are, by nature frail and easily destructible should not be taken home but should be consulted only in the premises of the library Dictionaries, cyclopaedias, directories, year books and such other publications are not intended to be and cannot, ordinarily be read continuously Further they contain such a fund of varied information that practically every person would require their use. The frequency of their use would be not only high but would also be evenly distributed throughout the day If a reader appreciates the anxiety of the Second Law to

give EVERY READER HIS CHANCE to use them he would see the anti-social nature of confining them to his private study where they are bound to be idle for most of the day

485 ART BOOK

The Art Books like Ananda Coomaraswamy's *Indian art* or Ganguly's *Rajput painting* or Hurlimann's *Indien* not only have a delicate physique but are also very costly Since libraries cannot find funds to buy copies of such books more than once the Second Law requires that such books are carefully kept and used in the library itself so that their life may be prolonged as much as possible, to give EVERY READER HIS CHANCE to use them If a reader has the good ness to calculate the extra cost incurred by him in using them in the library itself and compare it with the possible risk involved in their removal from the library and remembers his obligations to his fellow-readers, he will see the unreasonableness of desiring to break this restrictive rule

486 PERIODICALS

Another important class of printed material about which severe restrictions are usually placed by all libraries is that of periodicals. The current numbers, which alone contain the latest phase of the progress of thought, are of vital interest to many a reader One unfortunate trait that persons engaged in narrow fields of work, develop either unconsciously or *purposefully is to assert that* certain periodicals are of interest to themselves only and hence would be best used not while lying on the library table but on their personal study-table. It is difficult to argue this point. The Second Law would plead with them saying,

"Let the guiding fiction be, not that nobody else would require it but that many others would require it. Sacrifice a little of the luxury of turning through the pages of a periodical coming hot from the press, while reclining on a lounge with *the charming domestic setting.* Do cultivate the habit of looking at a library as a place to go to —'as a community

centre, —and make it a point to drive to the library once in two or three days so as to look into the latest issues of even a larger number of periodicals, without at the same time depriving others of their chance.

4861 The Other Side of the Picture

The anti-social habit of segregating periodicals and perhaps forgetfully letting them lie for an indefinite period amidst the heap of unused books on private tables appears to be most prevalent in professional colleges and universities. Of course, plausible excuses and justifications may be forthcoming. But the Second Law would only ask them to look at the other side of the picture and calmly consider the little sacrifice that is required on the part of individuals to form a systematic habit of periodically going to a central place to use them and the immensely greater chance such a habit will give to an immensely large number of students and other readers, who perhaps are less influential and command less leisure and facilities but are no less interested in their use

487 Seeking Special Privilege

Those that short-sightedly revolt against the time-rule, fine-rule reference book rule and periodicals-rule are not so difficult to handle They at least call a spade a spade But a much more intractable reader is one who concedes everything and says "Yes, your rules are all necessary Everybody should respect them if everybody is to have the fullest benefit. But let *me alone* be exempted." This special privilege may be claimed on several grounds. One may say "I am a member of the Municipal Council (or whatever body it may be) that manages the library Hence I should be shown special considerations. One special consideration that I elect to ask is exemption from all library rules." Another may say in a crisp form, "Wherever I go I am given special privileges." They would appear to measure the happiness of their life by the number of occasions on which they get preferential treatment, in suppression of rules and regulations.

4871 Criterion for Special Privilege

Instances like this may be multiplied *ad infinitum*. But suffice it to say that the criterion of the Second Law in giving special privileges is not the reader's social status, official position, or love and delight of special treatment, but the capacity to fully and genuinely utilise such special privileges, which by their very nature should affect the ordinary privileges of other readers prejudicially. Hence the obligation that the Second Law would throw on the readers is to try one's best to conform to the Library Rules and ask for special privileges sparingly and only when it is absolutely impossible to have one's requirements fulfilled without them.

centre —and make it a point to drive to the library once in two or three days so as to look into the latest issues of even a larger number of periodicals, without at the same time depriving others of their chance.

4861 The Other Side of the Picture

The anti social habit of segregating periodicals and perhaps forgetfully letting them lie for an indefinite period amidst the heap of unused books on private tables appears to be most prevalent in professional colleges and universities. Of course, plausible excuses and justifications may be forthcoming. But the Second Law would only ask them to look at the other side of the picture and calmly consider the little sacrifice that is required on the part of individuals to form a systematic habit of periodically going to a central place to use them and the immensely greater chance such a habit will give to an immensely large number of students and other readers, who perhaps are less influential and command less leisure and facilities but are no less interested in their use.

487 Seeking Special Privilege

Those that short sightedly revolt against the time-rule, fine-rule, reference-book rule and periodicals-rule are not so difficult to handle They at least call a spade a spade But a much more intractable reader is one who concedes everything and says "Yes, your rules are all necessary Everybody should respect them if everybody is to have the fullest benefit But let *me alone* be exempted." This special privilege may be claimed on several grounds. One may say "I am a member of the Municipal Council (or whatever body it may be) that manages the library Hence, I should be shown special considerations. One special consideration that I elect to ask is exemption from all library rules. Another may say in a crisp form "Wherever I go, I am given special privileges" They would appear to measure the happiness of their life by the number of occasions on which they get preferential treatment, in suppression of rules and regulations.

4871 Criterion for Special Privilege

Instances like this may be multiplied *ad infinitum*. But suffice it to say that the criterion of the Second Law in giving special privileges is not the reader's social status, official position, or love and delight of special treatment, but the capacity to fully and genuinely utilise such special privileges, which by their very nature should affect the ordinary privileges of other readers prejudicially. Hence the obligation that the Second Law would throw on the readers is to try one's best to conform to the Library Rules and ask for special privileges sparingly and only when it is absolutely impossible to have one's requirements fulfilled without them.

CHAPTER 5

THIRD LAW

50 Enunciation

We shall now pass on to a consideration of the Third Law While it resembles that First Law in making its approach from the side of the books, it is in a sense a complement to the Second Law While the Second Law concerned itself with the task of finding for every reader his appropriate book, the Third Law would urge that an appropriate reader should be found for every book. In fact, the Third Law is—EVERY BOOK ITS READER.

501 COMPARISON

While the First Law revolutionised the outlook of the libraries, the Third Law would make that revolution as thorough as possible. It will be seen, further that the implications of the Third Law are not less exacting than those of the Second Law We shall devote this chapter to an account of the different devices employed by libraries to fulfil the requirements of the Third Law

502 MEANS

Perhaps a cynic may suggest the obvious device of having as few books as possible in the library But such a device is ruled out by the extensive requirements of the Second Law and its inconsistency with the Fifth Law will become apparent in a later chapter The most prominent of the means used by libraries to satisfy the Third Law is the *Open Access System*. The other devices relate to shelf-arrangement, catalogue entries, reference service, the opening of certain popular departments, publicity methods, and extension work.

51 Open Access System

By Open Access is meant the opportunity to see and examine the book collection with as much freedom as in one's

own private library In an open access library the reader is permitted to wander among the books and lay his hands on any of them at his will and pleasure. The powerful service that this system renders to the Third Law can be realised by those who have watched a library change from a Closed to an 'Open Access' state It is a matter of common experience that the change increases the number of volumes drawn for use. More important than that is the frequency with which readers make discoveries. Not a day passes without some readers exclaiming with an agreeable surprise "I didn't know that you had this book!"

511 Example 1

It was only the other day that I found a student picking out Roland K. Wilson's *The province of the state* from the shelf where it had had about eight years undisturbed rest prior to the introduction of the open access system I asked the student who recommended the book to him He said he did not know of the existence of the book and that he hit upon it by sheer chance as he was browsing round the Politics region. This chance occurs almost every minute in an open access library

512 Example 2

Here is another telling instance The secretary of the local Teachers Guild asked me for materials bearing on Secondary Education and Matriculation I took him round the shelves to show him some of the presidential addresses of the Education Section of the British Association for the Advancement of Science. As I was pulling out the volumes and scanning the nature of the presidential addresses, the secretary who was browsing round the neighbouring shelves, came back with a great joy exclaiming I have found out what I wanted. He had a thin red quarto in his hand It was Volume I No 1 of the *Universities review* An article in it entitled *The Dandelion and the Jack* contained just the idea he wanted. This red volume had been lying on the shelf for some months quite

untouched by the hand of any but the peon on dusting duty But for the introduction of the open access system, probably it should have remained like that for ages without ever finding its reader

513 Shop Analogy

If there is faith in the Third Law it is as absurd and as ineffective for a library to deny open access and simply offer to produce any book on request, as it would be for a busy shop to lock up its wares in wooden cupboards and expect its wares to sell The shop which is anxious to see every one of its things pass into customers hands, allows complete open access even to its tiny articles Customers are allowed to come in crowds browse round and handle any article. It looks on all people as potential customers and in its anxiety to find a buyer for every article, apparently lets the people loose inside its premises Any visitor to that shop is sure to be convinced of the efficacy and the wisdom of that method Exactly the same method should be adopted by a library that wants to find a reader for every book on its shelves.

514 History

It is a matter of common experience that the majority of readers do not know their requirements and that their interests take a definite shape only after seeing and handling a well-arranged collection of books. This factor came to be recognised only during the last 10 or 15 years in Great Britain. But in America, where the sway of the Third Law established itself even earlier Open Access had been brought into the service of that law even before the close of the nineteenth century

515 Long View

That a long view should be taken by the library authorities with regard to Open Access is illustrated by the following extract describing the then new American tendency —

"As a rule, the newer libraries are allowing a great amount

of freedom in direct access to shelves on the part of all users of the library Many of the more recent buildings have been planned so that the visitor may go directly to the shelves, and many of the older buildings have been remodelled to permit this practice. In almost every way this has been a gain There has come with it no small loss of books. But that loss is insignificant in view of the greatly increased use of the libraries which has resulted from easy contact with books."

516 UNAVOIDABLE LOSS

Thus the sway of the Third Law has even convinced the Library Authorities of the wisdom of acquiescing in the unavoidable loss and sacrifice of a few volumes to increase the chances for securing for EVERY BOOK ITS READER. But let not this remark mislead one to infer that a heavy loss of books from year to year is a necessary concomitant of the Open Access system. On the other hand experience shows that the loss from theft is really negligible. A proper measure of the theft is the percentage of the number of books lost to the number of books issued in a year Using such a measure, Miss Isabel Ely Lord the Librarian of Pratt Institute Free Library has demonstrated with elaborate statistics,[13] that the theft in Open Access libraries is not much greater than in Closed libraries. She estimated the mean loss per year as 17 in every 10,000 circulated."[14] After examining the statistics of the Croydon Public Library for several decades, W C. Berwick Sayers confirmed this estimate in a letter of his in 1947

517 BOOK THEFT

Again, where a theft occurs, it is almost invariably the act of some one or two deliberate and persistent thieves. "The general public are not thieves. Thieves from libraries are a class like burglars. One man commits a large number of burglaries and creates a great deal of trouble but this does not prove that the whole population of a village or town is burglariously inclined. The benefit of open shelves is indis-

putable and the probable loss of two or three hundred books per annum at a total cost of perhaps $150 may be considered small if the salaries which would be required for one and possibly two more assistants, not to mention page-boys, etc., had to be paid [14]

518 Tropics

Perhaps we in the tropics may add that the loss is small when compared with the loss due to the perishing of paper and the ravages of insects, provided certain safeguards against thefts are introduced

52 Shelf Arrangement

Even in an open access library the chances for the fulfilment of the Third Law can be made or marred by the principle adopted for the arrangement of books on the shelves. Arrangement by size or (except in literature) by the alphabetical sequence of the author's name is as arbitrary as arrangement by the colour of the cover Ordinarily, it is not the size of a book or its author (except in literature) that determines the kind of person that will use it. It is its subject matter Hence it is by the subject-matter that the books should be arranged on the shelves if they are to be given a reasonable chance to find their readers

521 Classified Arrangement

A well articulated classified arrangement of the books on a subject basis is what the Third Law would recommend. It can be easily seen that, if all the dozen books that the library may possess on say Alternating Currents are kept together and in close proximity to the other books on Electrical Engineering, there will be a much greater probability for each of them to be picked up by a reader than when they are scattered among perhaps a hundred thousand volumes, in accordance with the freak of the alphabet building up the names of authors.

522 Recent Additions Shelf

The subject matter of the book is not, however, the only factor that can arrest the attention of the visitors of the library Psychologists tell us that recency is an important factor in securing attention The Third Law would expect the library staff to exploit this factor as well, in the arrangement of books on the shelves and it is now a common practice in libraries to have a separate Recent Additions Shelf very near the entrance. The soundness of the psychologist's dictum about recency is usually well demonstrated by the rapidity with which the Recent Additions Shelf gets emptied. It is this shelf that invariably gives the maximum satisfaction to the modern librarian who under the influence of the Third Law is greatly worried by the books that won t leave the shelves.

523 Re-Arrangement

Novelty in shelf-arrangement is another means, not infrequently adopted to attract the attention of the visitors to books that need help in finding their readers. An occasional redistribution of the contents of shelves may help in establishing fresh contacts between men and books.

524 Show-case

Another usual device employed in this connection is the location of small attractive show cases with books in strategic positions of the reading room and the stack-room, labelled with catching legends like Books worth looking into, "Books of the hour, Interesting books recently unearthed Long-forgotten but useful books and so on.

525 Accessibility

Another important factor in shelf-arrangement which has a decided effect on the Chance of a Book to get Its Reader is its easy accessibility or otherwise. Books within the comfortable reach of a reader of average height are much better

the title of the book and by the name of the specialist, who is put down as the author. On the other hand, a specialist in the subject knowing, as he will, that it is a popular book, may not go in for the book. Thus, the book may not get a reader at all. But the series entry of the book will make the non-specialist reader at least go in for the book with eagerness. Instances of this nature may be easily multiplied. There may also be various other considerations that lead readers to pursue their study through books belonging to well known series. Hence a catalogue with a complete set of Series Entries may prove to be of great help in securing FOR EVERY BOOK ITS READER.

533 SUBJECT CROSS REFERENCE ENTRY

The Subject Cross-Reference Entry may be even of greater service. This entry will occur in the classified part of the catalogue. It will have a subject as its heading and mention the books placed under other subjects but dealing partly with the subject in the heading, stating whenever possible the particular pages which may be relevant. A book may be cross-referred in this manner from several subject headings.

5331 Example 1

For example, it has been found necessary to prepare ten cross-reference cards for More's *Shelbourne essays*. It is extremely doubtful if it is likely to get its legitimate quota of readers from among the students of Metaphysics, if its excellent essay entitled *Pragmatism of William James* is not cross-referred from "Pragmatism".

5332 Example 2

The experience of the *Essays and studies* published by the English Association gives another practical demonstration of the service that cross-reference can render to the Third Law. These volumes were adorning the shelves for years with but an occasional sojourn into readers' hands: somehow the name of "English Association" and the look of the books

had led the majority of students to regard these *Essays and studies* as too high-browed to be of interest to any but the severest specialist. The Third Law had a very hard time of it in finding readers for them. But from the moment the individual essays were cross-referred from appropriate headings, the volumes would seldom stay on the shelves. For example, the cross-reference from the heading " Shelley criticism " to the essay on *Platonism in Shelley* in the fourth volume of the set, began to draw to it a continuous stream of borrowers. It went out on loan on 23 December on 2 January on 21 January on 25 January on 4 February on 13 February on 12 March, and so on without any rest. It was such a triumph for the Third Law that the Second Law was hard put to it to find this book for every reader that asked for it. In fact, the demand for the book could be met only by restricting the loan for a shorter period than usual and regulating the issue by registration in advance.

5333 Example 3

Another interesting example of the extraordinary power of subject cross-reference in finding for EVERY BOOK ITS READER is the case of the ponderous composite volumes constituting the *Complete works* of Count Rumford A cross-reference card with the heading " Coffee " to pages 615-660 of the fifth volume containing an essay entitled *Of the excellent qualities of coffee and the art of making it in the highest perfection* made all the difference in the career of that volume. Instead of being an inert victim to the piercing ravages of silverfish, it began its unending series of triumphant marches to the residence of one reader after another

5334 Example 4

Even with books that are generally popular a careful cross-reference entry can increase their circle of readers. For example, Will Durant's *Mansions of philosophy* began to attract a newer and wider circle of readers as soon as its tenth chapter which is on *Breakdown of marriage* got a

cross-reference card with the heading "Marriage."

534 Cataloguing Staff

These few instances are sufficient to illustrate the importance of cross-reference in increasing the use of books. The Third Law would therefore urge the library authorities not to plead the bogey of economy and shortage of funds when the proposal for the necessary staff for cross-referencing work comes up before them. We shall have occasion to go in detail into the profit and loss account of cross-referencing work when we discuss the Fourth Law. But it is enough to state here that, if the authorities have any faith in the Third Law they should provide for a profusion of cross-references. These are called Analytical Entries. They should provide the necessary technical staff to have the contents of every one of the books of the library analysed threadbare and brought to the notice of every possible class of readers by means of appropriate cross-references.

54 Reference Service

Thus, open-access, classified arrangement and analytical cataloguing are three of the necessary devices employed for getting for Every Book Its Reader. But such mechanical devices are seldom sufficient. It is doubtful whether open-access can achieve all that it can for the Third Law if the library staff interpret open-access to mean "Provide the books and keep out of the way of the readers as much as possible." In such a case several of the books and not a few of the readers may have to share the fate of the beast between hay-stacks. Again, it is doubtful whether the card catalogue by itself will ever become the guide philosopher and friend of the ordinary reader of a library. The inherent difficulties of an analytical catalogue are many and serious. It may be safely said that an average analytical card catalogue will always be in need of an interpreter.

541 CANVASSING AGENT

The mechanical organisation of a library—however desirable—can never be carried to the point of dispensing with personal service The requirement of the Third Law defies and transcends machinery It will always require the provision of human beings as "canvassing agents" for books. It is imperative that certain members of the staff should be set apart solely to assist the reader in the use of the catalogue and in the choice of books. Their business should be to interpret the books to the readers and to canvass readers, so to speak, for the books. The provision of such a staff—the reference staff as it is called—is one of the effective devices employed by modern libraries to carry out the mandate of the Third Law

542 CONTACT WITH READERS

The Reference Department of a library is expected to serve the reader in the way in which large traffic companies serve travellers in giving them illustrated folders of the new places they would like them to visit. The staff on Reference Duty have exceptional opportunities to mingle with the passing throng of readers. This direct contact with the readers brings with it opportunities to observe their tastes and wants, their actions and reactions and their likes and dislikes. As a result of such direct contacts, an experienced Reference Librarian instinctively relates readers to books and conversely a book frequently suggests a reader to whom it will appeal. He knows his community and is familiar with its mind, spirit and dominant interests. He seeks to have his finger on the pulse of his public and is ever on the wait for an opportunity to find a reader for every book

543 KALEIDOSCOPE

In the hands of a competent Reference Librarian, a library is like a kaleidoscope. His skill consists in turning its facets in such a way that they can all be seen and that each facet

may attract those for whom it has interest. This is the kind of service that the Third Law expects from the Reference Staff

544 House-to-House Survey

In recent years, the eagerness to serve the cause of the Third Law seems to have led some of the libraries of the New World even to undertake house to-house surveys. A card is provided for each house to record the number of members, their respective occupations, their reading interests and whether they are already library borrowers. A cabinet of cards of this nature gives a useful picture of the social life and the intellectual interests of the residents of the locality It is the business of the Reference Staff to spot out potential readers from the records of such a survey and try to convert them into actual readers.

55 Popular Departments

This brings us to the problem of converting potential readers into actual readers. The first step in this problem is to attract such potential readers to the library One method that is ordinarily used for this purpose is to provide the library with a Newspaper Room and a Magazine Room. They generally occupy a disproportionately large floor area and yet they are tolerated on account of their value in this respect It is a matter of common experience that the Magazine Room attracts a larger crowd than the library proper and that the News Room is even more crowded than the Magazine Room. The library staff would go into these popular rooms at intervals, get into touch with their patrons and try to lead some of them on to the stack-room and the reading room. Thus, apart from the Newspapers and Magazines furnishing direct reading matter they are also coming to be used as regular baits. Such an exploitation of the craving, which humanity seems to have for news of an ephemeral nature is one of the methods regularly adopted by libraries to increase the chance for Every Book to Get Its Reader.

551 LAW OF PROBABILITY

The Third Law would depend on the law of probability according to which the chance for EVERY BOOK GETTING ITS READER would increase with the increase in the number of persons visiting the library Once this desire of the Third Law came to be recognised, one obvious corollary was that libraries should adopt all the recognised methods of publicity

56 Publicity

Apart from the insistence of the Third Law, the libraries stand in need of publicity for other reasons as well. It is no wonder that, when the library has been extending its scope, changing its outlook and altering its very character and functions, there should not be adequate understanding among the public as to what has been going on For some, the library is still medieval, to others it is principally a purveyor of entertaining novels. Surprise is continually expressed when the public discover the width of its service and the catholicity of its interests. "I didn t know that you had Music books?" "Are you open on holidays? I didn t know that." "I didn t know that your catalogue is so analytical." Such expressions as these, no doubt, interest and please the librarian but they are also a disquieting indication that a knowledge of the service he offers has not yet spread over the entire public. They make it evident that well considered publicity is as necessary for the public library as for a commercial firm in order that the public may know of its existence and of the varied service that it offers

561 VALUE

In a paper on *Library publicity methods* Miss Wildred Othmer Peterson, Director of Publicity of Des Moines Public Library says,' Publicity the art of influencing Public Opinion, in all its varied forms holds a large place in the world of men to-day It has proved its value to the business world for had it not, certain firms in this country would not

spend as much as a million dollars a year for publicity If publicity is important to them is it not also important to Libraries? The only differences, however are that librarians, in a great many cases, need to be educated to the importance of publicity and that libraries do not have the millions to spend Every library now directs much time and thought towards publicity The press lends its powerful aid and even such agencies as Moving pictures and Radio are enlisted."

562 Publicity Round Table

Library publicity has, in fact, become a special branch of the art of publicity Books are written about it, and in the United States, there is a publicity committee of the American Library Association, with a paid publicity officer This Committee holds what is known as the *Publicity Round Table* at each of the annual conferences of the Association. "Statewide publicity" is said to be the key-note of the *Publicity Round Table* The extraordinary methods that California adopts to popularise its library system and to attract its inhabitants to its libraries in as large a number as possible are indicated in a paper discussed in the Fifty Second Annual Conference of the American Library Association held in 1930[11]

563 General Publicity

Broadly speaking, library publicity falls into two classes—general publicity and individual publicity General publicity is of the type "Eat more fruits" and "Buy more *khaddar*" without mentioning any special fruit merchant or khaddar merchant Such general publicity in the library sphere may try to emphasise—

"(1) The value of books and reading the superiority of the book as a source of opinion, information, inspiration education, over other forms of print

(2) The library as a public institution publicly supported and administered

(3) The all round service of a live library empha-

tising reference service adult education and other less known aspects

(4) Some accepted library standards, as, book circulation per capita, book ownership per capita "m

5631 Medium

Such general publicity would fall within the sphere of central organisations like the Madras Library Association or the State Department of Public Libraries, if such a department is established. Even in countries like America and England, "the need of organised centralised library publicity" is being emphasised and provided for Continuous publicity is carried on through press-notices, magazine articles, radio-talks, public lectures, demonstration tours, attractive sign-boards, periodical and itinerant exhibitions and the free distributions of leaflets and bulletins. The Japanese Library Association arranges for a country-wide celebration of a book-week in November Such general publicity should be the predominant part of the library publicity in India, under the conditions that obtain at present.

564 Individual Library

In addition, individual libraries should see that their service is constantly brought to the notice of the public in an effective way It is worth while for large libraries to have a special publicity assistant. It should be the business of such an assistant or of the librarian himself if such an assistant does not exist, to adopt all the recognised methods of attracting the public to the library so that every potential reader may be converted into an actual one, thereby increasing the chances for the fulfilment of the Third Law In organising its publicity campaign, a library should bear in mind the general principles of publicity such as continuity variety novelty clarity and personal appeal

5641 Press

Perhaps the cheapest and the most easily available medium

for library publicity is the Press. The library should keep itself in touch with the local newspapers The newspapers would generally be willing to allow some space in the general news column and the local news column for information about the library It is desirable that the librarian or the publicity assistant should frequently consult the editors and try to conform to their instructions in the matter of style, length periodicity and other details, so that the matter sent by the library can be directly passed on to the compositors, with the least editorial labour possible It may be useful to publish certain types of information such as recent additions, statistics of readers and issues and similar data on definite days of the week or dates of the month, so that the public may know when to look for them. They will act as systematic reminders to the public. It is not uncommon that the number of visitors to the library is slightly greater on the 2nd or 3rd of each month as a result of the monthly statistics appearing in the local news column on the evening of the 1st. In addition to such systematic statements the library should seek to appear in the press at odd intervals, whenever an opportunity offers itself for announcement such as, changes in the issue method changes in the arrangement of books, changes in the hours, receipt of free gifts of special collections, improvements in the amenities to the public, participation of the library in exhibitions and conferences and occurrence of events about which special bibliographies may be prepared The library staff may also be encouraged to contribute occasionally readable articles bearing on the humourous side of library experiences It may be desirable to send to the newspapers occasional reports or extracts about the outstanding events in the libraries of other lands. Such publications sometimes rouse the curiosity of the public and induce them to take greater interest in their own libraries

5642 News-Sheet

Next to the Press, mention may be made of the issue of

printed or typed handbills and news-sheets. A good duplicating machine is a great necessity for libraries to use this form of publicity It would be cheaper to use such a machine than to print. Recent additions, special bibliographies, notifications about changes of methods, descriptive notes about the personal service offered by the Reference Staff and several such announcements can be issued in this manner both to those who are already on the members list and to those who are yet to be attracted to the library Although a little more costly unlike the Press method of publicity this form does not depend on the co-operation of outside agencies It would also give ample scope for the resourcefulness of the library staff It would be an advantage to keep a chronological and a classified file of such materials for future guidance.

5643 Library Bulletin

A more costly mode of publicity adopted by some libraries is that of publishing a printed periodical, *e.g.*, *Readers Index* of the Croydon Public Library *Bulletin* of the New York Public Library *Harvard library notes* of the Harvard University Library *Bulletin* of the John Rylands Library Manchester Such library periodicals seek —

"(*a*) to interest the public in the library as an institution

(*b*) to keep the public informed of all the library s activities and facilities

(*c*) to relate books to the existing tastes and interests of the public,

(*d*) to relate fresh topics to those about which borrowers already read,

(*e*) to arouse fresh interests

(*f*) to keep the reader in touch with methods that can be followed up in books, and

(*g*) generally to stimulate—in an attractive "gentle" way—education, vocational and other and culture "[7]"

These periodicals usually contain an annotated list of recent

additions as well as of books of topical interest, special articles dealing with the varying forms of the activities of the library and illustrated accounts of matters of local interest which are capable of being connected with the library. Such periodicals have usually to be distributed free, if they are to serve their purpose. The cost and labour involved are generally prohibitive unless it is possible to secure a sufficient number of advertisements.

5644 Window Display.

Another recognised form of publicity that may be adopted by libraries is to arrange for occasional exhibitions. Some of the libraries of California are said to have provided themselves with window space for book displays. By a judicious variation in the selection and arrangement of display material, stay-at home books can be helped to find their readers.

5645 Radio

The radio is another medium that may well be harnessed for library publicity. American libraries are said to be already utilising this medium with remarkable success. For example, "Several libraries in Iowa broadcast occasional talks, while the libraries at the Iowa State College and Des Moines have had regular programmes for the past several years. Two of the public libraries, Des Moines and Davenport, although 175 miles apart, are co-operating in a weekly broadcast of 15 minutes duration, giving book and magazine reviews and general information concerning books and authors. Letters expressing interest and requesting information have been received from listeners as far distant as 750 miles."[15] However the report presented to the 1930 Conference of the American Library Association by the Committee on Library Radio Broadcasting expressed the view "The consensus of opinion seems to be that the value of library broadcasting as conducted at present remains to be proved. While there are obvious advantages there are also many difficulties that remain to be surmounted."[16]

5646 Poster

Some libraries advertise their services by means of posters. In fact, there is no direct form of publicity that the libraries do not adopt. Here is an account of one ingenious and extreme form of advertisement, which has the flavour of the marketing methods of a business concern. During the annual fair which lasts for eight or ten days to give publicity to the California county library system, the large electrically lighted county library map of California and Sacramento county used at the A. L. A. Conference in Philadelphia is maintained in a prominent place in the Agriculture Building. To emphasise this publicity the county libraries financed the making of thousands of county library fans bearing on one side the county library sign and on the other information regarding California county libraries. Each day a county librarian and State Library Staff member passed out fans to multitudes of adults. The fans served to suggest many questions by the visitors and gave an opportunity to explain the county library system and to illustrate from the electrically lighted map points that needed clarifying visually People from the counties of California which are without any county library were among the interested recipients of this novel bit of publicity " ***

5647 Personal Talk

But, by far the simplest and the least expensive method of publicity is direct personal talk. This method can convert many persons into regular readers, if the library has on its staff one or two members with the necessary personality and power of speech to address gatherings of probable readers. It has been found from experience that if such addresses are to be effective too much time should not be spent on vague and general subjects like the benefits of reading or the services of a library in general After a very short preliminary reference to topics of such a nature one should rapidly descend to particulars and dwell in detail upon the specific services

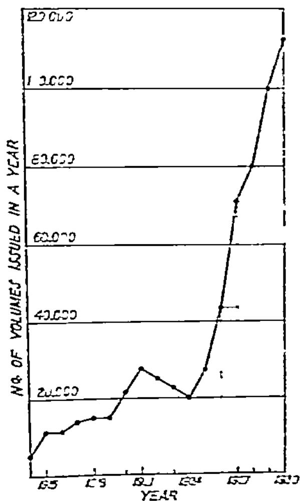
that the library in question can render to the members of the gathering. It may be serviceable to present comparative statistics of membership and book issues. At the same time, one should not be carried away by enthusiasm to promise to serve more than what the limitations of staff and stock would permit. The reactions of such unfulfilled promises will do more harm than good to the Third Law

5648 Example

The accompanying table and the graph showing the growth of issue in the Madras University Library illustrate the result of such personal appeals.

Year	No of Vols.	Year	No of Vols	Year	No. of Vols.
1914	5 100	1920	22,236	1926	42,336
1915	11 600	1921	27,920	1927	70,914
1916	11 600	1922	24,975	1928	79 756
1917	14 000	1923	22,339	1929	99 600
1918	15 000	1924	20,075	1930	1 13,321
1919	15,300	1925	27 629		

In the year 1927 several visits were made to students hostels, and small groups of undergraduates were addressed whenever an opportunity occurred. Professors of colleges who took interest in the matter were requested to mention in their lecture hours the services offered by the library That these quiet personal appeals had the desired effect may be seen from the steep ascent of the graph during the year 1927 In later years, as the increase of staff could not keep pace with the increase of work in the Reference Section and in the Counter Section, it was found necessary to suspend this publicity campaign, though with great reluctance. But there is ample need for reviving and keeping up the campaign if the interests of the Third Law are to be properly served.


NO OF VOLUMES ISSUED IN A YEAR
YEAR

574 Intellectual Centre

One of the necessary conditions for such institutions becoming popular is the fostering of a feeling of mutual cordiality and helpfulness between those who offer service and those who are served, together with a disposition to self sacrifice To this end the library should strive to reduce formality to a minimum and make everyone feel at home. As a natural extension of this attitude a modern library even goes so far in its effort as to make personal and social contacts and not infrequently offers meeting place for local learned organisations in an attempt to make them, as constituent parts of the general public, feel that it desires to function as an intellectual centre for the locality Such meetings offer opportunities for the exploits of the Third Law

5741 Example

The possibilities of this form of extension service can be inferred from "the following statement of a small English town library of societies meeting there regularly—The British Legion, Cage Birds Society Chess Club Draughtsclub Church Lads Brigade, Church Mothers Meeting, Church of England Men's Society Folk Dance Society two or three friendly societies, The Free Church Mothers Meeting, The Gardeners Society Grocers Society Farmers Union, National Union of Teachers, Radio Society Woman's Institute and Workers Educational Association."[784]

575 Library Talk

Another common form of extension service is that of arranging for public lectures in the premises of the library For this purpose all modern library buildings are provided with spacious lecture halls, fitted with a stage, a magic lantern, a cinema apparatus and other related appliances. In addition to the local associations being invited to hold their public lectures in the library's lecture hall, the library frequently arranges for special library talks either by the members of its

staff or by outside experts. One special feature of such library talks is the announcement of a select list of books on the subject-matter of the talk that could be consulted in or borrowed from the library The subjects chosen for such library talks are usually of local or topical interest. Scientific subjects also come in for a good share. Such talks ought not to be exclusively confined to topics of a religious, philosophical or puranic nature But care should be taken to widen the range of subjects and give a chance for every phase of current thought. Whenever possible it would be an advantage to illustrate the talks with lantern slides and moving pictures.

5751 Kalakshepam

The unique South Indian Institution of *Kalakshepam*, with its happy blend of music and talk, presents enormous potentialities as an instrument of this form of extension service. But due care should be taken, in this case also to lift the *Kalakshepam* from the narrow rut of subjects to which tradition appears to have assigned it.

5752 Music

In western countries where this institution is unknown, the lecture hall is used for musical concerts as often as possible. This enables the Third Law to find readers for the comparatively large quantity of printed music that is usually available in those libraries.

576 *Library Exhibition*

It is not uncommon to display in the lecture hall the resources of the library bearing on the event that is happening there Sometimes, a regular exhibition of such materials is also arranged in an adjoining hall, through which the occupants of the lecture hall have to pass at the close of the function. The books referred to in the lecture hall are carefully spread on tables, the most attractive plates greeting the passers by Smart attendants of the library patiently stand by the side of the exhibits waiting for the man whose glance

would fall on them. The moment such a man is spotted out, the face of the attendant immediately brightens up and with an inviting smile she offers the book for his home use Perhaps the man being a non-member feels puzzled but, before his shyness is got over the experienced attendant volunteers, Never mind, if you are not a member you can have privilege issue to-day if you so desire As these words are being uttered a few red and green slips are inserted in the book before it is offered to the wondering man with the encouraging words Take it with you—Will you mind remembering to return this as soon as you finish it or this day fortnight, whichever is earlier?" When this wondering man reaches home and turns the pages of the book with subdued excitement, the red and green slips greet him with legends like "You are paying for the maintenance of this library why don t you use it?" "To become a member it needs no more formality than signing a card. And so on. The audacious psychology of this form of extension service seldom seems to result in the man deliberately appropriating the book permanently for his private use

577 Story Hour

Similar to the library talks for adults, libraries arrange also for story hours, lantern talks, dramatisations and other attractive forms of extension service and similar privilege issues, to establish contact with the children of the locality Again it is not unusual for the library to arrange occasionally for dramatic performances by amateur troops. But in all such cases the performances do not form an end in themselves but they are all made to serve as aids to the ultimate satisfaction of the exacting Third Law

578 Festivals and Fairs

Another form that extension service takes is the celebration of local festivals and special days of the year dedicated to particular persons or ideas and participation in local fairs Here again the demand of the Third Law is always kept in

the forefront. In our own country where such celebrations are still attracting large crowds of people, this form of extension service is full of great potentialities for the cause of the Third Law

58 Book-Selection

Before taking leave of the Third Law it may not be out of place to mention an important bearing of this Law on Book Selection. In discussing the financial implications of the Second Law we had occasion to deal with this question from a slightly different point of view It can be easily seen that one of the means of fulfilling the demands of the Third Law is to give full weight to the tastes and requirements of the *clientele* of the library in Book-Selection work. Some of the factors from which the tastes and requirements of the *clientele* could be inferred are —

1 the suggestions received directly from the readers,
2 the suggestions recorded by the assistants at the Ready Reference Desk,
3 the notes made from day to day by the Reference Staff on floor duty
4 the main vocations of the Local Public,
5 the prospective events of national or local importance,
6 the impressions gained in interviews with the leading members of the local community and so on.

581 Haphazard Selection

If in this manner books are selected with full attention to probable demand, the difficulties of the Third Law would be minimised to a large extent. But it should not be inferred from this that the library should slavishly follow the demands of readers and that it has no responsibility in steadily and consciously directing the reading tastes of its *clientele* along healthy channels. The Third Law would have no quarrel

whatever with this aim of Book-Selection but it would remonstrate against haphazard selection which is utterly indifferent to the immediate and prospective requirements of the readers. The threat of the allotment lapsing in a few days sometimes forces a Library Authority to rely solely on the first trade list or catalogue, that chance might put in the way This is a danger that should be avoided Book-Selection is work that should be done from day to day taking into account the demands of readers, the progress of publication and the funds available

CHAPTER 6

FOURTH LAW

60 Introduction

We have seen in the last five chapters that the main concern of the first three Laws of Library Science is to get the books of the library used as fully and by as many persons as possible. We have also seen that, however axiomatic those laws appear to be they have really begun to assert themselves as ruling concepts only during the last few decades. We further examined some of their implications and described the changes they are bringing about in the outlook of libraries and in the various aspects of library policy and administration.

601 Comparison

We shall see in this chapter what further light is thrown on some of these problems by the Fourth Law of Library Science. This law makes its approach from the side of the readers as was the case with the Second Law Perhaps it may even be said that the interest of the Fourth Law almost completely centres round the readers. Taking for granted that Books are for Use, that Every Reader should be served His or Her Book and that Every Book should be helped to find its Reader, it proceeds to fashion the library administration accordingly In company with the Fifth Law it concerns itself with the situation that should arise as the requirements of the first three laws come to be increasingly fulfilled. In dealing with the new problems of such a situation, it introduces the element of time and concentrates its attention entirely on the time-aspect of the problem.

602 Enunciation

Save the Time of the Reader—this is the Fourth Law of Library Science Perhaps this law is not so self-evident as the others None the less, it has been responsible for many re

forms in library administration and has a great potentiality for effecting many more reforms in the future Perhaps the most convenient method of studying the consequences of this law will be to follow a reader from the moment he enters the library to the moment he leaves it, critically examining each process, which he has to go through, with an eye to the economy of time that can be effected at each stage.

61 Closed System

Perhaps the first thing that a reader does, on entering the library is to discharge the used up books. But it will be convenient to postpone the consideration of this process and take it up along with the method of charging, as the details of the two operations are, by their nature interdependent.

611 Applying and Writing

Hence, the main process that should be first studied in the light of the Fourth Law is the choice of books. In a closed library this has to be done entirely with the aid of the catalogue The catalogue of a growing library is either of the card form or of the paste-down form. If it is of the latter form even in a small library like the Madras University Library with but 70,000 books, the catalogue runs through fourteen folio-volumes. In the British Museum Library the paste-down "general catalogue now fills over 1 000 volumes."[614] A common heading like Smith takes a volume all for itself Further the inevitable occurrence of certain general headings, such as Academies and Periodicals add further complications. A good deal of time is naturally wasted in hunting out for the required title in such a labyrinth of entries Having got them, one has to write them out with great accuracy on separate slips and hand the slips over to the man behind the barrier Then follows the harassing interval of waiting—for several minutes in small libraries and even for hours in large ones It is not unusual for readers of the British Museum Library to apply for their books in the forenoon and call for them after lunch. Some readers with

forethought would also send their slips overnight to save time on the next day

612 Causes of Disappointment

If the library is popular the loss of time due to the search for entries and to the waiting at the counter may recur several times before the right book is got. The recurrence may be due to many causes. After some time, the slip may be returned with the endorsement "entry incorrect." The spelling of some essential part of the entry may be wrong. This would render the tracing of the book impracticable The group of figures, constituting the press-mark or call number as it is called, might have been wrongly copied. Substitution of a small letter for a capital or omission of a dot or a comma might make all the difference Or the slip may come back with the endorsement "on loan" or "engaged." Then the old process of selection and waiting will have to be gone through once again. Before the Madras University Library changed to open access, several cases used to occur almost every day when the process had to be repeated half a dozen times before a reader got some book. Again, when the book is actually produced, it may turn out to be spurious or for other reasons, unsuitable to the reader The catalogue entry might not have given a clear enough indication of the nature of the book. That means the repetition of the whole process over again. These features would "make the selection of books a heart-break and a labour tinctured with disgust." [64]

613 Measure of Loss of Time

The average amount of time that a reader had thus to waste at the counter in the Madras University Library in 1928 (just before the open access system was introduced) was about half an hour The colossal nature of this waste can be realised if we integrate over a full year the amount of time thus wasted by the community as a whole. Let us take as a convenient unit of measure one person working for one hour Let us call this a Man-hour Now the average number of visitors in

the library was 200 per day Thus, 100 man-hours were wasted per day or 36,500 man-hours per annum To realise its economic significance, we must convert this into money A salary of Rs 75 per mensem would correspond to half a rupee per man-hour Even with this low equivalent the wastage for which the closed system of the Madras University Library was responsible in 1928 amounted to nearly Rs 18,250 per annum In discussing the profit and loss account of the open access system, one should give due weight to this aspect of the matter The Fourth Law would insist that, in deciding large questions of policy such as open access vs closed system the spirit of the modern method of cost-accounting should be adopted and long, broad and full views should be taken dealing with the community and the library as a whole. An alarmist attitude should not be developed by isolating the probable or actual loss of a few volumes in a year or by taking any other partial view of the matter

614 Influence of Business Method

In modern communities, such as those of America and England for whom time is money and money is time, the slogan of the Fourth Law—Save the Time of the Reader—seems to have produced a profound impression. Further the recent tendencies in the evolution of business methods and the rapid diffusion of the cost accounting consciousness not only among the leaders but even among the masses have led those communities to conclude that the balance of advantage is decidedly in favour of the open access system In this system the wastage due to waiting at the counter is eliminated fully and the wastage due to wading through cumbrous catalogues is reduced to a minimum and may even be altogether unnecessary for many ordinary readers.

615 Indicator System

Historically an attempt was first made to eliminate the loss of time due to books being on loan This was done by the ingeni

ous invention of the indicator system "A library indicator as its name implies, is a device for indicating or registering information about books. The information usually conveyed to the public is some kind of indication of the presence or absence of books, and the methods of accomplishing this almost invariably take the form of displayed numbers, qualified in such a way as to indicate books *in* and *out*"[187] Several patterns of indicators were invented from 1870 onwards In all cases, a large run of counter space had to be given up for accommodating these mechanical contrivances and this created new problems.

616 Open Access

But as the Fourth Law gradually asserted itself still further and insisted that the time wasted in tracing the titles in catalogues and waiting thereafter for the books to be brought by attendants should also be saved the indicators were slowly given up and the open access system came to be regarded as the only satisfactory device to Save the Time of the Reader. Thus, the claims of the open access system, already advocated by the Second and the Third Laws, came to be reinforced by the Fourth Law on grounds of national economy

62 Shelf Arrangement

The interest of the Fourth Law is not exhausted however with the introduction of open access. It has an equal interest in reforming the shelf-arrangement. In an open access library the nature of the shelf-arrangement can make or mar the mission of the Fourth Law

621 Alphabetical Arrangement

One old fashioned method which still seems to persist in some of our libraries is that of alphabetical arrangement by the authors. But in the majority of cases, the interest of readers goes by the subject rather than by the author Even in literature, the authors of the biographies and the critical works are not as important as the author forming the subject

of biography or criticism.

6211 Example

Let us now follow our reader for whom the Fourth Law has secured admission into the stackroom and let us assume that he is interested in Wave Mechanics and that he desires to see as many books as possible on that subject. If the library is an alphabetically arranged one he will have to browse from A to Z to spot out his books as there is a nearly equal chance for each letter of the alphabet to be the initial letter of the names of the authors of the books on that subject. For example here are some titles on Wave Mechanics, that the library may possess —

BIGGS (H F) Wave mechanics.
BIRTWISTLE (George) New quantum mechanics.
BLOCH (N M) Evolution and development of the quantum theory
BORN (Max) Elementare quanten mechanik.
CONDON (Edward U) Quantum mechanics.
DE BROGLIE (Louis) Mecanique ondulatoire.
DE BROGLIE (Louis) Selected papers on wave mechanics.
FLINT (H T) Wave mechanics.
FOWLER (R. H): Passage of electrons through surface and surface films.
HAAS (Arthur) Wave mechanics and the new quantum theory
LANDE (A) Neuere entwicklung der quantentheorie.
RICE (James) Introd. to statistical mechanics.
SCHRODINGER (E.) Coll. papers on wave mechanics.
SCHRODINGER (E.) Four lectures on wave mechanics.
SOMMERFELD (Arnold) Lecture on wave mechanics.
SOMMERFELD (Arnold) Wave mechanics.
WILSON (W) Relativity and wave mechanics.

Let us look at the length of shelves his eyes should travel. Assuming that twelve volumes will, on an average, go into a foot, his eyes will have to run through the backs of a little over a mile of books, even in a library of 70,000 volumes. Just imagine the time that will be involved in this process.

622 Classified Arrangement

On the other hand, suppose that the books of the library are arranged in a minutely classified manner, on a subject basis. Then, Wave-Mechanics will be one of the ultimate classes and his eyes will have to run only through the backs of a foot or two of books. In other words, he could see them all almost at a glance. This has led the Fourth Law to press the claims of the classified mode of arrangement. We have seen that the Second and Third Laws also prefer such an arrangement. Each law approaches the problem of shelf arrangement from a different angle but, fortunately their conclusions are all concurrent.

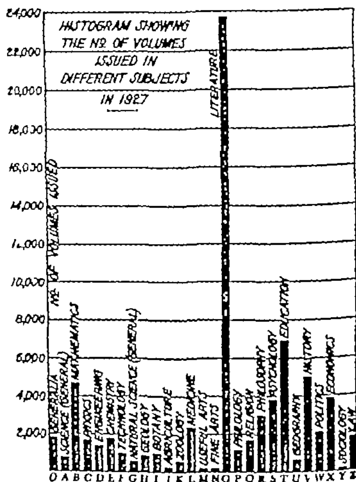
623 Relative Position of Classes

The Fourth Law would throw some further light on the arrangement. In the first place, it would recommend that the classes accommodated in adjacent shelves should have the greatest possible affinity. A reader that is primarily interested in philosophy is sure to have some interest in religion and psychology. Hence to Save the Time of that Class of Readers, it would be advisable to put religion on one side of philosophy and psychology on its other side. In a similar manner the Fourth Law must be constantly borne in mind in fixing the relative position of the other classes as well.

624 Absolute Position of Classes

Apart from relative position, the absolute position of the classes also will have to be determined in conformity to the Fourth Law. The class of books that is most in demand should be put on the nearest shelves of the stack-room and the class that is least popular should, ordinarily be put at the farthest end. It is known for example that for every geological book issued, more than a hundred books are issued in literature in the Madras University Library. The accompanying histogram showing the relative popularity of different classes of subjects in the Madras University Library may

throw some light on the importance of this aspect of shelf arrangement. It can be seen that about a third of the issues of that Library is from the literature class. Then in order to save the time of the greatest number of readers, that library should accommodate its literature class close to the entrance



of the stack-room. Again, the books of ready reference such as directories, yearbooks, dictionaries and encyclopædias

should be placed as close to the counter as possible so that no time need be wasted by readers in getting at them. Although this recommendation of the Fourth Law may look too obvious, it may be interesting to record that, not long ago, a big library used to house its set of *Encyclopaedia Britannica* in the third tier Recent additions are generally in great demand. Hence, for the sake of the Fourth Law it would be necessary to put them all together near the counter for a definite period of time We saw in the last chapter the usefulness of such a practice in the light of the Third Law as well.

63 Stack Room Guides

Assuming that the reader is admitted into the stack-room and that the relative and absolute arrangement of books is in accordance with the requirements of the Fourth Law, he will be naturally bewildered by the array of books with which he is surrounded and may have to waste much time before arriving at the shelves containing the class of books required by him To SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER at this stage the library should provide an efficient system of guides in the stack-room

631 PLAN AND SIGNAL GUIDES

It may be useful to place at the entrance of the stack-room a large bold plan of that room showing the disposition of the book-racks and the classes of books contained in them. In addition each row of book racks should be furnished at each end with a "signal" guide on which the classes accommodated in the row are indicated in a manner calculated to catch the eye of the reader In the Madras University Library they are inserted in rectangular wooden frames 18 ×6 projecting from the side of the end rack of the row Similar guides should also be provided for each rack in each row Some libraries, that keep open after sunset use illuminated signal guides.

632 SHELF GUIDE

In addition to this, every shelf plank should also be pro-

vided with the necessary number of shelf labels. The number of such shelf labels is likely to be very great. In the Madras University Library the number of shelf-planks in use at present is about 3,500 They are furnished with as many as 6 000 shelf labels. The proper maintenance of such a large number of labels is a problem in itself The serious nature of the problem will be brought out fully when we view it in the light of the Fifth Law It is enough to say here that so many are necessary to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER effectively At the same time, however it must be said that shelf labelling should not be overdone Too many of them may cause confusion to the reader Most of the shelves may take two labels, while a few may take one and a few others three. There should not be need for more than three per plank. The Madras University Library generally uses spoiled catalogue cards for the purpose. They are cut into labels 5"×5/8" Each card gives four such labels. The name of the ultimate class of books just above the label is written on it in bold detached library hand of half inch size. The number of the class is also prefixed whenever there is space.

633 Book Tag

Thus, we shall imagine our reader first consulting the plan at the entrance of the stack room Then, with the aid of the signal guides greeting him at the end of each gangway, he will easily enter that particular gangway which contains the subject in which he is interested. As he passes along the gangway he will run his eyes through the shelf labels until he comes to the shelf containing the ultimate class in which his books are likely to be Then he will examine the collection in that ultimate class and make his selection. If on the other hand, he has already made up his mind about the particular book he wants, there must be some further help to enable him to pick out that particular book without loss of time. In such a case, the most expeditious method of his getting the book will be to find out, beforehand, the exact call number of the book from the catalogue cabinet. Assuming that he will do this, it

can be easily seen that there should be further guides showing the call number of each book They should consist of tags or labels affixed to the backs of books.

6331 Choice of Tag

These tags should be affixed and the call number written on them, when the book is being catalogued. It is very difficult to get a tag that will firmly stick to the back of the book for an appreciable time. Even if it does, it gets dirty in course of time and the letters become indistinct. It has been found to be ultimately more economical to buy specially made tags, than for each library to prepare its own tags in its own crude way Dennison's white circular tags, number A 144 which are coated with thin gum have been found to be most serviceable. They cost about one rupee per thousand. They are available at Libraco Ltd., 62, Cannon St., London E. C. 4 The durability of these tags can be increased by applying paper varnish to them after they are affixed. Even then, they should be replaced periodically and systematically There is nothing more offensive to the eye than a dirty half-torn tag disfiguring the back of a book It further produces an impression of slovenliness, which is inimical to the bright business-like look that a library should present to the reader In the Madras University Library which issues about one hundred and fifty thousand books per annum, it has been found necessary to set apart an attendant for about ten hours in the week for renewing the tags. So much of an attendant's time has to be spent in order to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER at this stage. While it may look like a great expense, when considered from the isolated library-point-of view it will be seen to be really economical from the larger community-point-of view

6332 Position of Tag

Before leaving this question it may be well to say that the attractiveness of the shelf can be considerably increased by affixing the tags in such a way that they are all in a line when

the books stand erect on the shelves. Apart from the look of slovenliness, it will be tiring for the reader's eyes if the tags appear at all heights indiscriminately. Experience has shown that the most suitable standard position for the tag is one inch from the bottom of the book.

6333 Tooling

The labour involved in the frequent repasting of the tags can be avoided by having the call number tooled directly on the back of the book. For this, ordinary binders' gold lettering method should be adopted. It may be advantageous to train a library attendant to do the lettering in the library premises. If it is not practicable, the books may be sent to the binder to be numbered.

634 Trivial Only in Appearance

Details like these may appear to be trivial to those who have had no inside experience of a library. With the limited experience of handling a few stray books in his private study the layman cannot easily imagine what proportions these apparently small matters assume in a growing library dealing with thousands of volumes and thousands of readers. Hence, in a country like ours, with hardly any modern library tradition, the handicaps of the librarian are likely to be greatly increased by a lack of appreciation of the magnitude of the problem on the part of others. But the librarian has to devote his thought to such problems and solve them so as to Save the Time of the Reader.

64 Catalogue Entry

Another factor that may lead the reader to waste his time in getting his materials, is due to the inevitable composite nature of most of the books. All books are not monographs. Very often an excellent account of a specified topic may occur in a chapter or even in a few pages of a book whose main interest may be some other topic or topics. A careful student would desire to know all the resources of the library on his

subject of study whether it be a monograph or a portion of a bigger book. If a catalogue is made up only of a single entry for each book and makes no attempt whatever to give analytical cross-references, the only course open to the reader is to examine every book to see if it gives any information on the subject of his study

641 EXAMPLE 1

Suppose, for example, that the reader is interested in critical literature dealing with Matthew Arnold. There may be about half a dozen books in the library dealing exclusively with this subject and they can be found together on the shelves But, a patient search by the reader will disclose to him that the library possesses also many other materials on the subject. Here are some items that he may find to be useful —

ARNOLD (M). Poems, 4-16.
PALGRAVE (F T). Landscape in poetry 257 278.
SWINBURNE (A. C) Essays and studies, 123-183
HUTTON (R. H.). Literary essays, 310-360.
QUILLER-COUCH (A). Studies in literature, 231 245
KER (W P) Art of poetry 139-160.
DRINKWATER (J). Victorian poetry 86-90 96-100 121 123
GRIERSON (H.J.C.) Background of English literature, 68-114
GRIERSON (H J C). Lyrical poetry from Blake to Hardy 90-121
SQUIRE (S J). Essays on poetry 88-97
MONROE (H) Poets and their art, 175-178.
ELLIOTT (G H). Cycle of modern poetry 58-63
PAUL (H W). Matthew Arnold, 16-50 99-105
ENGLISH ASSOCIATION Essays and studies, V 3 71 91
TRAILL (H D). New fiction, 76-103
HUTTON (R. H) Modern guides to English thought, 105-149
HUTTON (R H) Brief literary criticisms, 256-281 288-303,
STEPHEN (L.) Studies of a biographer V 2, 71 114
COLLINS (J C.). Posthumous essays, 171 198.
HENLEY (W E). Views and reviews, 75-82.
BIRRELL (A.). Collected essays and addresses, V 2, 170-198
RALEIGH (W). Some authors, 300-310

the books stand erect on the shelves. Apart from the look of slovenliness, it will be tiring for the reader's eyes if the tags appear at all heights indiscriminately Experience has shown that the most suitable standard position for the tag is one inch from the bottom of the book.

6333 Tooling

The labour involved in the frequent repasting of the tags can be avoided by having the call number tooled directly on the back of the book For this, ordinary binders gold lettering method should be adopted. It may be advantageous to train a library attendant to do the lettering in the library premises. If it is not practicable the books may be sent to the binder to be numbered

634 Trivial Only in Appearance

Details like these may appear to be trivial to those who have had no inside experience of a library With the limited experience of handling a few stray books in his private study the layman cannot easily imagine what proportions these apparently small matters assume in a growing library dealing with thousands of volumes and thousands of readers. Hence, in a country like ours, with hardly any modern library tradition, the handicaps of the librarian are likely to be greatly increased by a lack of appreciation of the magnitude of the problem on the part of others. But the librarian has to devote his thought to such problems and solve them so as to Save the Time of the Reader.

64 Catalogue Entry

Another factor that may lead the reader to waste his time in getting his materials, is due to the inevitable composite nature of most of the books. All books are not monographs. Very often an excellent account of a specified topic may occur in a chapter or even in a few pages of a book whose main interest may be some other topic or topics. A careful student would desire to know all the resources of the library on his

subject of study whether it be a monograph or a portion of a bigger book. If a catalogue is made up only of a single entry for each book and makes no attempt whatever to give analytical cross-references, the only course open to the reader is to examine every book to see if it gives any information on the subject of his study

641 Example 1

Suppose, for example, that the reader is interested in critical literature dealing with Matthew Arnold. There may be about half a dozen books in the library dealing exclusively with this subject and they can be found together on the shelves. But, a patient search by the reader will disclose to him that the library possesses also many other materials on the subject. Here are some items that he may find to be useful —

Arnold (M.). Poems, 4-16.
Palgrave (F T). Landscape in poetry 257 278.
Swinburne (A. C.). Essays and studies, 123-183.
Hutton (R H.). Literary essays, 310-360.
Quiller-Couch (A.). Studies in literature, 231 245.
Ker (W P). Art of poetry 139-160.
Drinkwater (J) Victorian poetry 86-90 96-100 121 123
Grierson (H.J.C.). Background of English literature, 68-114
Grierson (H J C). Lyrical poetry from Blake to Hardy 90-1..
Squire (S J). Essays on poetry 88-97
Monroe (H). Poets and their art, 175-178.
Elliott (G H). Cycle of modern poetry 58-63.
Paul (H W) Matthew Arnold, 16-30 99-105
English Association. Essays and studies, V 3 71 91
Traill (H. D.). New fiction, 76-103.
Hutton (R. H). Modern guides to English thought, 105-149
Hutton (R. H). Brief literary criticisms, 256-281 288-301
Stephen (L.). Studies of a biographer V 2, 71 114.
Collins (J C.). Posthumous essays, 171 198.
Henley (W E). Views and reviews, 75-82.
Birrell (A.). Collected essays and addresses, V 2, 170-198
Raleigh (W). Some authors, 300-310.

Religionsgeschichtliche bibliographie
Bibliographie methodique du pragmatisme americain
Psychological Abstracts
Bibliographical Bulletin of International Affairs.
Bibliographie der Sozialwissenschaften.
Index to Legal Periodicals.

A detailed account of such bibliographies published so as to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER will be found in Chapters 3 to 9 of the book entitled *Bibliography practical, enumerative historical* by Henry Bartlett Van Hoesen

653 BIBLIOGRAPHY OF BIBLIOGRAPHIES

The influence of the Fourth Law has even gone to the extent of bringing about the publication of bibliographies of bibliographies, such as the following —

- DARROW (K. K.) Classified list of published bibliographies in physics.
- WEST (C. J) and BERGLZHEIMER (D. D). Bibliography of bibliographies in chemistry
- MATHEWS (E. B.) Catalogue of published bibliographies in geology
- PRODOR (Robert Alexander). List of bibliographical works published since 1893

654 CROSS REFERENCE FOR BIBLIOGRAPHY

One should not leave this section without referring to the great help that the Fourth Law can derive from the *Reference catalogue* the annual volumes of the *English catalogue* and the *Subject catalogue* of the British Museum Library and the short bibliographies appended to the articles in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* Many of the problems of the readers can be solved expeditiously with the aid of these volumes. Hardly a day passes in a library without recourse to them. The Madras University Library has been systematically preparing cross reference cards for all important bibliographical lists found at the ends of chapters or at the ends of books This is a simple piece of work which every library can undertake to do These cross-reference cards which have now ac-

cumulated to a large number are rendering invaluable service in SAVING THE TIME OF THE READER in the Madras University Library

655 PUBLISHED BIBLIOGRAPHY

The chief contribution of the Fourth Law to Book-selection is that a fair and representative selection of bibliographical publications should be acquired. The *English catalogue* or a corresponding annual is absolutely necessary in any library What further bibliographical materials should be bought will depend on the nature of the library the interests of its readers and its financial resources. A Scientific or University Library should carefully watch the announcements of cumulative indexes of the periodicals current in it and acquire them as a matter of course. It should also buy all possible bibliographies of individual authors in literature and as many subject bibliographies as possible. A public library should go in either for Poole s *Index* or for the British Library Association s *Index to periodicals* It may with advantage subscribe also for the bibliographies published from time to time by the National Book Council.

66 Reference Service

We have seen in the last two sections the various types of bibliographical tools which are either constructed in the library or are constructed elsewhere and are bought by the library Whether we consider an elaborate well-prepared catalogue with a profusion of cross-references or the numerous other bibliographical aids that are likely to be available in the library it may not be an easy matter for an average reader to derive the fullest advantages of these time-saving devices. In the first place, some personal initiation will be essential to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER in getting himself acquainted with their correct use. Even after the initiation, most readers will stand in need of the bibliographical service of the Reference Staff With their constant practice, the Reference Staff are sure to acquire not only greater precision but also a much

higher speed than the readers in handling the bibliographical apparatus. Again in spite of the initiation the reader cannot become as familiar as the staff with the order in which the books are arranged. The librarian's intimate acquaintance with classification and cataloguing gives him an immense advantage over the reader in arriving quickly at the desired book or information. He knows the order in which the books fall. He knows the ins and outs of his catalogue. He can wield all kinds of indexes and catalogues with greater ease and speed. Hence the Fourth Law also would join hands with the first three Laws in pressing the need for an adequate Reference Staff in all libraries. The money spent on such a staff comes back to the nation in ever increasing measure in the saving of the precious time of its best brains. That this is an economically sound proposition can be inferred from the fact that commercial and business libraries maintained by business houses, ungrudgingly pay for an adequate Reference Staff. They know the economic value of time. But academic libraries seem to be lacking in their power to perceive the value of time and are hence halting in appreciating the need for such a staff.

661 Two Kinds

From the point of view of the Fourth Law, the work of the Reference Staff falls into two divisions: (1) Ready Reference Service and (2) Long Range Reference Service.

662 Ready Reference Service

For purposes of Ready Reference Service, libraries that have faith in the Fourth Law maintain *information desks* and place them in a prominent position so as to attract the attention of the reader early in his transactions. The problems that frequently fall within the sphere of the persons in charge of the *information desk* are—

1 the direction of the readers to the different parts of the library and to the appropriate members of

the Reference Staff if prolonged and intensive help is necessary

2. instruction to new-comers in the use of the library particularly in the use of the catalogue and the other bibliographical tools available in the library and in the general outline of classification and shelf-arrangement and
3. the supply of answers to simple queries, involving a minimum amount of search and the use of the few ready reference books such as year-books, directories and calendars usually kept at the information desk.

6621 Qualification of Staff

A good deal of the service rendered by the information desk may have to be over telephone wires. A retentive and associative memory coupled with capacity to do several things at once without flurry and the ability to turn from one subject to another with quickness and ease are essential if the service of the person at the information desk is to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER substantially Slow dull-witted, immobile and absent minded persons cannot be of any service to the Fourth Law

663 LONG RANGE REFERENCE SERVICE

Let us now turn to Long Range Reference Service. Let us follow the reader in the stack-room If the library is ideally organised, he will soon find himself in charge of one who is a specialist in the bibliography of the subject in which he is interested Such a reference-librarian will greet him with a smile and begin to talk to him in the language of his subject Being put at ease by these circumstances, the reader will state his problems and his requirements as definitely as he can. The reference librarian will unreservedly place at his disposal his varied bibliographical experience, built up by years of contact with several specialists seeking his help and by the constant handling of the tools and the resources of

the library from various points of view This will SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER considerably and enable him to get at his materials far more expeditiously than otherwise

664 RANGE OF READERS

The reader may be a young inexperienced student who is unable to find out the relative value of the different books that bear the same class number Then, the reference librarian will SAVE HIS TIME by readily picking out the volumes whose standard is within his reach The reader may take an amateur's interest in a subject. Then the reference librarian will ascertain his previous equipment and work out for him a graded reading course so that he can get the necessary acquaintance with the subject without any loss of time due to the unaided choice of incomprehensible books in an inconvenient sequence The reader may be a busy administrator or specialist In this case, the reference-librarian will pick out and assemble in advance all the materials that may be relevant to the topic pursued by him so that he can refer to them without wasting his precious time in knocking about in the different parts of the library to collect his materials.

665 EXAMPLE

Not long ago a Sanskrit scholar came from an up-country town in search of some materials on certain aspects of Indian Philosophy The Sanskrit books usually have perplexing titles, with hardly any indication about the nature of the contents Hence, he knew that there was no short-cut to ascertain their value for his purpose except to open out each book and look it through. But he knew nothing either of the classified arrangement of the books or of the analytical nature of the subject catalogue Nor did he know of the existence of the Reference Staff On the other hand he had persuaded himself that, since his books would be in the Devanagari Script and his subject was an abstruse branch of ancient philosophy he should not expect any assistance from anybody Hence, he came prepared to spend some days to get his work done. On the first

day in spite of repeated offers, he declined all help and began to carry a few books at a time to his work table After about an hour or two when he was beginning to show signs of exhaustion, he was again approached in a tactful manner and he consented to be shown round the stack room That gave a splendid opportunity to the reference librarian to explain the various arrangements that the library had made to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER He was eventually taken to the Indian Philosophy region After a talk for about an hour he went out for lunch. Without going into further details it may be stated at once that at about 4-30 p.m., he sought permission to use the office telephone to request the stationmaster to get his berth reserved that very night. Nor is it necessary to reproduce here his many words of surprise and thanks for the manner in which the library staff had SAVED HIS TIME.

67 Issue Method

Let us now move on with the reader We shall assume that he has finished all the reading he intended to do within the library itself and that he is ready to go home Let us assume that he desires to take a few books home The process of making the necessary entries before permitting him to borrow the books for home reading is spoken of as the charging work The reverse process of receiving the books back when he returns them and releasing him from all further responsibility about those books is known as discharging. Before the advent of the Fourth Law the method of charging and discharging was very cumbrous and wasteful Even to-day such antiquated methods still prevail in many of our libraries. It will be shown when we consider the Fifth Law that those methods will absolutely break down if the library functions up to the ideal of the first three laws. Here we shall confine ourselves only to the time aspect of the process.

671 DAY BOOK AND LEDGER

The method that is prevalent in most of our libraries may

be described as that of the *Day-book and Ledger*. In this method the reader fills up his name and the author, title and call number of the book in a printed form. The counter clerk copies these details in the Day book and posts them daily records in a personal ledger to avoid searching through the Day-book to find a given entry. A few pages of this ledger are assigned to each reader. The call number of the book drawn and the date of issue are noted in the columns ruled for the purpose. On the return of the volume, the date of return is set down in another column. If a book is returned after the due date the amount of fine due and the date and the number of the receipt of collection are entered in additional columns. Certain libraries get all these details posted *also in another ledger in which each book gets a page*. Apart from the impossibility of keeping up the alphabetical or call number sequence in such ledgers, the process of making the entries both while charging and discharging makes the reader wait long at the counter. It is made still worse in rush hours since only one person could use this record book at a time. When this system was in vogue in the Madras University Library till three years ago the average time wasted by a reader as a result of this old fashioned method of charging and discharging was about fifteen minutes.

672 Questions to be Answered

But the recognition of the Fouth Law has led the library profession to overhaul the charging system completely. To effect this overhauling, the purposes of the present day charging system had to be critically analysed. The charging system should answer the purposes of three definite records, *viz.* a time record a book record and a readers record. In other words it should give ready answer to queries of the following type —

1. What and how many books are lent on any date?
2. Who has each volume on loan on any date?
3. What books are due on any date?

673 Two-card system

The most economical charging system that has been devised to answer all these purposes and at the same time fulfil the requirements of the Fourth Law may be described as the Two-card system. In this system each book is given a book-card which is inserted in a book pocket pasted on the inside of the front cover of the book, and each reader is provided with as many borrowers tickets as the number of volumes which he is entitled to remove from the library at one time.

674 Charging Work

Now let us follow our reader He will bring up to the counter the books he desires to take home. He will present these books with an equal number of his tickets to the counter clerk at the exit gate. This clerk will immediately stamp the due date on the date labels of the books, release the book cards from their respective pockets in the books and couple each of them with one of the reader's tickets. As soon as this is done, the reader will be at liberty to go home with his books. The time taken by this process of charging will be far less than the time taken to describe it. In fact, it should be possible to charge at least a dozen books in a minute Perhaps it is only in the charging method that the ideal of the Fourth Law has been actually reached.

675 Coupling the Cards

Different devices are employed to couple the book-card and the corresponding reader's ticket. One popular method is to make the reader s ticket in the form of a stiff pocket and insert the book-card in it. Whatever be the means of coupling them these coupled cards are arranged in a tray by the call number behind a date guide showing the due date.

676 Discharging Work

When the book is brought back to the library the counter

clerk at the entrance gate finds out the due date and the call number from the date label and with their aid he picks out from the charged tray the book-card coupled with the reader's ticket. The book-card is inserted into the book pocket and the reader s ticket is handed over to the reader This process also takes as little time as the charging process. There are many variations of this method which it would be out of place to dilate upon in this book. It is hoped to have in this series a separate volume on Library Administration which will appropriately deal in detail with the routine of counter work.

68 Time of the Staff

We have seen that one of the methods employed to Save the Time of the Reader is to provide an adequate number of hands for reference service Hence it follows that the greater the number of such hands and the longer the period for which they can be spared for actual reference service, the fuller will be the extent to which the purposes of the Fourth Law would be fulfilled It follows as a corollary from this, that the Fourth Law implies also that the time of the staff spent in routine work should be minimised as much as possible This appeal of the Fourth Law has been engaging the attention of libraries for a long time and has produced splendid results. While a full account of the evolution of the methods of library routine will be given in a special volume on Library Administration it may be stated in a word that the effect of the Fourth Law has been to revolutionise the method of keeping library records. The old bound books have been completely given up and loose cards have taken their place. It may even be claimed that the card system which appears to be now fast entering into all kinds of business houses and offices is a most noteworthy contribution of Library Science to modern administrative methods in general It must be admitted that, in its turn Library Science owes the invention of the card system to a sincere desire on the part of librarians to satisfy the Fourth Law in all possible ways

681 PROCESS CHART

We may perhaps illustrate the extent to which the card system can SAVE THE TIME OF THE STAFF by considering one set of library records, namely those that deal with book selection, book ordering, book accessioning, book cataloguing and withdrawal. Perhaps the chart in the next page showing the inter relation or the linking up of the records relating to these processes will simplify the discussion of this question The first row indicates the sources for book selection. The nature of the records mentioned in the second and the third rows is obvious The fourth and the fifth rows show the different channels through which books may come into the library A popular alternative name for accession cabinet is stock register The withdrawal cabinet contains the list of books lost, worn out by use, or otherwise ceasing to be part of the library The registers in each of any two consecutive rows are linked with each other by certain common entries, *e g.*, the order number is posted in the vouchers, and the voucher number in the order registers

682 PRE-CARD DAYS

In the pre-card days the titles of the books for consideration would be written either on sheets of paper or in note books. Books not approved would be struck off If too many items were struck off it might become necessary to re-write the remaining items. Then in the course of checking this list with the existing stock of the library several items may have again to be struck off and notes about edition or year of publication, etc., of the existing books may have to be made against some of the items At this stage again if the pages become too congested the surviving items might have to be re-written once again. Then the order list would be prepared It is very unlikely that all the books of an order would be supplied on the same day As the books come, they would have to be listed This might be the fourth occasion of writing out the entries. This fourth list would really consti-

Publishers Circular
Publishers Weekly
Publishers Announcements
Bibliographies
Reviews
Other Sources

Book-Selection Tray

Books Approved Tray

Order Tray
Standing Order Tray
Periodicals Purchase Tray
Periodicals Donation Tray
Requisition Tray

Vouchers File
Periodicals Tray
Donation Tray

Accession Cabinet

Catalogue Cabinet
Shelf Register Cabinet

Withdrawal Cabinet

tute the Stock book or the Accession Register as it is usually called. Then the catalogue cards and the shelf register cards would be written and, lastly it might be necessary to keep a separate register for the books withdrawn from the library Thus, excluding the writing out of the catalogue and the shelf register the details of every book would have to be written about five times. In the card system, on the other hand, it is enough if the details are written once instead of five times. This gives a measure of the extent to which the card system SAVES THE TIME OF THE STAFF

683 CARD SYSTEM

In the card system, one and the same card serves the pur poses of five different record books. A form of the card which is of the standard size 5 × 3 is shown on the following page

It would be realised as we describe the use of this card that, in addition to saving time, it affords many other con veniences.

684 BOOK-SELECTION WORK

A separate card is used for each item selected. All the details in the first page of the card except accession number call number and withdrawal number are entered as soon as the selection is made The entries about review may perhaps have to be written at a later stage when the review becomes actually available. The source from which the details about the book are taken is indicated near the left hand bottom corner of the first page. The person making these entries puts his initials and date in the first row on the second side of the card. All such cards are roughly arranged in a classified sequence to facilitate the work of those who have to approve the indent finally The approving authority has just to sort it into three groups —" selected," " rejected " and " deferred consideration " Then the cards of the first group are transfer red to the "approved tray and the cards of the other groups, into corresponding trays Then the person responsible

Ac. No. Cl No Wl. No.

Don No.

Auth.

Title.

Size. Colln. Edn Yr

Pubr Pub-price.

Series, etc.

Review

M.U.L.

Vendor			Cost. Indian. Foreign				
	Date.	Initials					
Seln.			Order No.				
Apprd.			Voucher No.				
Order							
Recd.				Cur Yr		Total	
Paid.			Sub No.				
Accnd.							
Cut.			Lang No				
Clasd.							
Cat.			Cost	Rs.	nP	Rs.	nP
Shld.			Sub.				
Bound.							
Wl.			Total				

316

for the ordering work checks each card the stock of the library and after the cards relating to books already in the library are eliminated, the surviving cards are transferred to the "order" tray with the notes in the cards themselves.

685 ORDER WORK

If the library purchases the books through an agent, the "order" is typed straightaway from these cards If on the other hand, the library purchases the books directly from the publishers, the cards in the "order" tray are first sorted according to the publishers, and separate orders are typed for each publisher In any case, the "order" number and date of order are entered in appropriate places in the second page of the card The vendor is usually instructed to mention the "order" number and date in the bill accompanying the supply and the cards themselves are kept in the "order" tray behind the date guides showing the date of order

686 ACCESSIONING WORK

On the arrival of the books, the cards relating to them are readily lifted from the "order" tray and inserted on the title page of the corresponding books. The accessioning clerk carefully scrutinizes the books by comparing them with the entries in the cards with regard to author title, size, collation, edition, date of publication, publisher and series if any and also checks the amount claimed in the bill with the published price noted on the card. If the supply is correct, the bill is passed for payment and the voucher number and the date of payment are noted in appropriate places in the card. The accession number is put in the book on the card, and in the bill also

687 ACCESSION REGISTER

Then the books and the cards are passed on to the classifier and the cataloguer who prepare the necessary catalogue cards and shelf-register cards and post the call-numbers in the cards. Then the shelf register cards and the accession

cards are tallied by the accessioning clerk after which the shelf register cards are filed in the shelf register cabinets and the orignal cards are transferred to the accession cabinets, and they form part of the accession register

688 WITHDRAWAL WORK

Lastly when the book has to be withdrawn from the library the corresponding card is transferred from the accession cabinet to the withdrawal cabinet and given a withdrawal number Thus, we have seen one and the same card is made to migrate by successive stages from the "book selection" tray to the "withdrawal tray and thus SAVE THE TIME OF THE STAFF and also add considerably to their convenience

6891 Advantage

Roughly speaking, for every minute required in the card system five minutes would have to be spent in the old system. Further the initials against the different items in the second *column would make it possible to trace to the right persons* the responsibility for any mistakes detected at any subsequent time—however late it may be Experience has shown that this has a wholesome chastening effect on the staff The progressive tabular statements indicated on the backside of the card enable the staff to furnish without any loss of time, replies to the queries that are not infrequently put by the managing authorities. The confusion dislocation of work and the excitement caused by queries of this type are well known In spite of the time wasted satisfactory and accurate replies are seldom obtainable But it has been found that this type of card has made work of such a nature not only accurate but also quite easy and expeditious.

In a similar manner the routine work of libraries is being simplified in many other ways, in order to SAVE THE TIME OF THE STAFF and thereby to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER

691 CENTRAL CATALOGUING

Another direction in which an attempt is being made to

SAVE THE TIME OF THE STAFF is that of central cataloguing. From the larger national point of view much time is wasted as a result of every library continuing "to catalogue its own books, regardless of the fact that the same books undergo similar treatment in some hundreds of libraries throughout the country" Even as early as the last quarter of the nineteenth century the American Library Association began to devote its thought to this problem and experimented on a small scale, in the production and distribution of printed cards, in order to SAVE THE TIME OF THE STAFF of individual libraries. But, a large-scale organisation for central cataloguing was started only in 1901 The circular on the *Distribution of catalogue cards*[19] issued by the Library of Congress on 28 October 1901 marks an epoch in the achievements of the Fourth Law of Library Science The difficulties experienced in the earlier years of this bold experiment are fully described by the Chief of the Card Division[20] in his *Reminiscences and observations on the card distribution work of the Library of Congress*

6911 History

But, the American libraries were not slow in recognising the value of central cataloguing to the cause of the Fourth Law In the year 1929-30, the number of subscribers to the printed cards was as high as 5,011 Even foreign countries, like China and Russia, have begun to purchase these cards for their libraries. This wide market has naturally resulted in reducing the cost of these cards. The approximate cost of the cards required for a volume is estimated as four annas, whereas, as it has been already stated, the cost of preparing the cards in the library itself is as high as 10 annas per book in a Madras Library The number of books for which congress cards are now available is 1 135,265 Till now these cards contained only the Congress call number Arrangements have now been made to print on them the Dewey number also. The success of this American experiment is leading many other countries to start similar organisations to SAVE

THE TIME OF THE STAFF of their libraries. "The Russian and German governmental libraries already have card printing and distributing agencies. The Czechoslovakians and the Spaniards have started similar activities. There are indications that the countries of South America are also contemplating the inauguration of central cataloguing, through a governmental agency The Public Libraries Committee of England and Wales have strongly commended the proposal for establishing a Central Cataloguing Agency in the British Museum They urge in its support that a very large amount of work time and skill would be saved" and that, as a result of the Library of Congress Scheme "Time and money formerly spent by individual libraries on cataloguing the same books have been directed to more useful purposes."

6912 International Co-operation

The Fourth Law would urge the library world to reconcile the differences in the cataloguing codes of different countries so as to make the way clear for international co-operative cataloguing.

692 LIBRARY LOCATION

So far we have been dealing with the problem of saving the time of the reader after he enters the library But, the Fourth Law is interested also in the time taken by the reader to reach the library In other words, a library should be so located as to SAVE THE TIME OF THE READER. In a college, the library should be centrally located so as to be easily accessible to the students of all the classes The research departments of a University should, as far as possible be housed in the library buildings. The research laboratories, in which the scientific departments have to be housed, should be built in the same compound as the library

6921 Urban Area

But the location of a city-library cannot be made to satisfy the Fourth Law in such an easy way It would be impossible

to find, in a big city any site which would be equally accessible from all parts of the city The larger cities of the West are reconciling this geographical difficulty with the demand of the Fourth Law by establishing branch libraries and delivery stations in all their divisions. We had occasion to give some examples of this practice, in section 133 where we were discussing the subject of library location in the light of the First Law The ideal should be to provide a sufficient number of branch libraries, so that every citizen may find a branch within ten-minutes walk from his residence.

6922 Rural Area

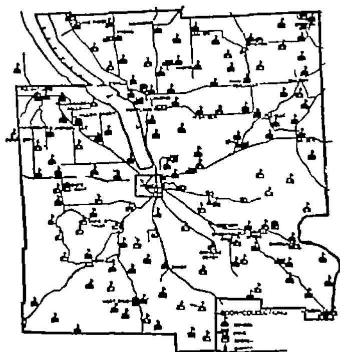
Rural readers suffer even more from the difficulties caused by distance in the operation of the Fourth Law A branch library cannot be built near every farm home as it can be built near homes in the cities. The only means available to SAVE THE TIME OF THE RURAL READER is to put the library on wheels and take it to him from time to time. A good selection of books, chosen by a trained librarian, should be put in a motor van equipped as a travelling library and sent out for periodical exchange in small village libraries, delivery stations and isolated farm homes. Where villages or homes are inaccessible to motors, special arrangements should be made for the conveyance of books by hand from and to the nearest highway

"Do you mean to say that the District Board can afford to take books out into the country in this manner? Ridiculous! Let country people come to the town library and get their books as we do" some of the city-dwellers may say But time is as precious to the rural reader as to the town reader and the Fourth Law is not meant merely for the town libraries. The Fourth Law would argue "There is nothing more ridiculous or more expensive in the institution of the travelling library system by a District Board than in the maintenance of the postal delivery system by the government. Is not a letter taken many miles into the country? Whereas the mail *has to be taken to every rural home every day the books may*

have to be taken to each village, perhaps only once in a month. In recent years, these arguments of the Fourth Law have carried conviction to most western countries and Rural Travelling Libraries on a District basis are being rapidly established. They aim at adequate library service within easy reach of every one. They are operated from the district headquarters library through deposit stations and branches. The diagram on page 323 illustrates the ideal way in which the Fourth Law is observed by one of the County Libraries of the State of New York. It delivers books within a mile from each home.

6923 First Travelling Library of India

The first travelling library of India drawn by a pair of bullocks was founded at Mannargudi. Inspired by the original drawing of the dream-picture printed on page 2 of this book, Sri S. V. Kanagasabhai Pillai, an Engineer of Mannargudi, a town in the Tanjore District in the State of Madras, designed and built the library cart shown on page 324 and provided the capital for the up-keep of the travelling library including the cost of the initial stock of books. It was inaugurated by Sri S. R. Ranganathan at the village Melavasal, five miles to the West of Mannargudi, at 5 p.m. on Wednesday 21 October 1931. Thus the dream of 1929 became a reality in 1931. By 1932, 75 out of the 242 villages within the contemplated area had been made service points. The map on page 325 shows their distribution.

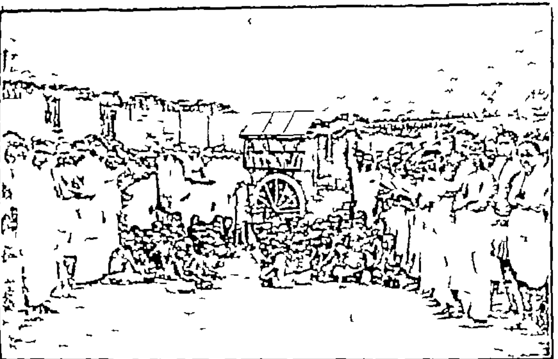


TOMPKINS COUNTY NEW YORK STATE

Area—476 square miles.

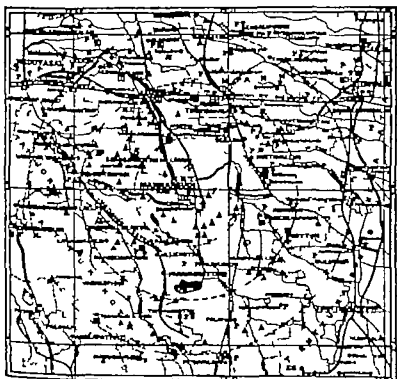
Number of branch-stations visited by the book van of the County Library—160

One station for every three square miles.



OPENING OF THE FIRST TRAVELLING LIBRARY OF INDIA AT MANNARGUDI
(See Section 4023).

RANGE OF SERVICE
OF
THE MANNARGUDI TRAVELLING LIBRARY SERVICE



NOTE 1 The circles shown are at 4 8 and 12 miles radius round Mannargudi

2 The small triangles are the village units of the Travelling Library Service.

CHAPTER 7

FIFTH LAW

70 Introduction

Now we come to the fifth and the last Law of Library Science While the first four laws deal with the functions of a library the Fifth Law tells us about the vital and lasting characteristics of the library as an institution and enjoins the need for a constant adjustment of our outlook in dealing with it. While the first four laws indicate the spirit that should characterise the management and administration of libraries, the Fifth Law enunciates a fundamental principle that should govern the planning and organisation of libraries. While the first four laws embody maxims that are nearly obvious, the Fifth Law is not perhaps so self-evident

701 Enunciation

The Fifth Law is A Library is a Growing Organism. It is an accepted biological fact that a growing organism alone will survive. An organism which ceases to grow will petrify and perish. The Fifth Law invites our attention to the fact that the library as an institution has all the attributes of a growing organism A growing organism takes in new matter, casts off old matter changes in size and takes new shapes and forms. Apart from sudden and apparently discontinuous changes involved in metamorphosis, it is also subject to a slow continuous change which leads to what is known as "variation," in biological parlance and to the evolution of new forms. This change is so slow but so effective that the protagonists of evolution assert that it is the shapeless undifferentiated protozoa of the palaeozoic age that has transformed itself by successive stages of variation, into the most differentiated specimen of creation—the human being. The one thing that has been persisting through all those changes of form has been the vital principle of life So it is with the library

71 Growth in Size

We shall first trace the consequences of the simple growth in size. For this purpose, it may be convenient to examine the main parts of the organism that are capable of growing. They are the books, the readers, and the staff. It is well to repeat here that a modern library is a trinity of these factors. It must be clearly realised that a collection of books without readers has no more right to be called a library than a group of readers without books and that the mere juxtaposition of books and readers without the service of a staff that know to effect contact between the right reader and the right book; at the right time and in the right manner cannot constitute a library either The modesty with which library authorities underestimate the rate of growth of each of these factors is unimaginable We shall have occasion to give instances of this modesty as we go into details. But a far less pardonable thing is to set about organising a library as if it would be stationary as if neither the books, nor the readers, nor the staff would grow in number There could be nothing more reprehensible than a faulty organisation obstructing the free development of a library or indeed of any institution, to its full stature. The frequent recurrence of this fatal mistake in library matters is due to the failure to realise a fundamental fact, *viz*., an organisation which may be suitable for a small library may completely fail when the library grows big. Technologists know from painful experience that a successful laboratory method may not always turn out to be a successful manufacturing method Physicists too are now beginning to realise that what may hold good in situations of an infinitesimal order may cease to do so in similar situations of a finite order and that what holds good in a set up of normal size may cease to do so in situtions of an abnormally big size The library organisation should not short-sightedly allow it self to be unduly influenced by the present size but should plan its lay-out in such a way as to make it easy to keep pace with the necessary growth of the library Let us now take up each of the three elements of the trinity and trace the con

sequence of its growth on the different aspects of library organisation

711 Books

Let us first take the books. The number of books in a live library must and does grow We shall assume that there is hardly any probability for the recurrence of the familiar anecdote of the Kansas legislator who objected to an appropriation for more books for the University library with the eloquent words, "Mr Speaker I object to spending this money Why they ve got forty thousand books there at Lawrence now and I don t believe any one of them professors has read em all yet!"[1134] We shall also assume the impracticability of the Quincy plan, which is to equalise the rate of weeding out and the rate of accessioning, after the size of the collection reaches an arbitrary norm. While finance is no doubt the ultimate deciding factor it cannot be denied that some light is thrown on the average rate of growth of the book-collections of libraries by the following tables giving the annual rate of book-production in some of the important countries of the world

Table I giving the number of books published in some of the foreign countries in 1927 is extracted from the *Publishers weekly* 115 1928 281 I am indebted to the Education Secretary to the Government of India for the Table giving the number of books published in some of the Indian Provinces in 1927

7111 World Book Production

International Book Production Statistics for 1927

Name of Country	No of books published	Name of Country	No. of books published
1 Russia	36 680	8. Italy	6,533
2. Germany	31,026	9 Holland	6,103
3 Japan	19,967	10. Denmark	3,293
4 Great Britain	13,810	11 Sweden	2,652
5 France	11,922	12. Spain	[illegible],374
6 United States	10,153	13 Switzerland	1,909
7 Poland	6,888	14. Norway	1,238

7112 Indian Book Production

Book Production Statistics of India for 1927

Name of Province	No of books published	Name of Province	No of books published
1 Madras	.. 4,042	6. Bihar and Orissa	.. 1,550
2 Bengal	3 425	7 Delhi	— 414
3 United Provinces	.. 3,298	8. Central Provinces	217
4 Punjab	2,537	9 Burma	122
5. Bombay	2,211	10. Assam	54
		Total for India	17 120

7113 Library Accession

To view the subject from another angle, here is a table giving the annual rate of accession in a few libraries

Name of the Library	No of Vols. added in a year
1 Library of Congress	202,111
2 Boston Public Library	94,339
3 Cambridge University Library	90,916
4 Birmingham Public Library	28,566
5 New York State Library	23,313
6. Imperial Library Calcutta	7 832
7 Madras University Library	5 628
8. Aberdeen Public Library	3 726

712 Stack Room and Fittings

We shall first trace the effect of the growth of stock on Library Architecture. The part of the library building that is primarily concerned with this is the stack room Its size its relative position, the book rack forming the unit out of which the stack is built, the parts of the book-rack, the shelf-planks, label-holders and all such things relating to the housing of the books will have to be examined in the light of the inevitable growth in stock.

7121 Size

Taking the size first, it is seldom that the Fifth Law does not outwit the library authorities. To take an example the

authorities of the Madras University Library estimated as follows in the year 1911 "In order to accommodate the books which the library already possesses together with those that the committee expects to purchase during the next year a room 40′ × 40 × 18 would be required. To accommodate books to be added during the next twenty five years (on the assumption that the annual allotment will continue the same) another room of the same size will be necessary" But by about 1922, the committee was led to modify its estimate as follows — The two rooms each measuring 40′ × 40 × 18′ provided for the storage of books may be raised to three as future additions are likely to be much more than was originally anticipated." Later experience has shown that the stock, which was 7,000 in 1911 grew to as much as 70,000 in 1930 The stack-room had to be actually designed to consist of four tiers each 144 × 34 × 9 with provision for doubling the space as and when required.

7122 Forethought

The amount of forethought that the Fifth Law has induced in American Universities is illustrated by the following description of the planning of the Yale University Library "The problem of the general library was to provide adequately for present needs and for future needs so far as they could be foreseen The programme therefore asked for suitable accommodation for three million volumes on the day of opening, and ultimately for four million volumes."

7123 Stack Tower

Apart from emphasising the need for a generous provision for the future the Fifth Law has been slowly eliminating the old alcove and gallery forms of construction for the storage of books. The stack form is steadily gaining ground and a further development in stack architecture is the stack tower Another solution which has been proposed to meet the increase in stock is the building of repositories of the warehouse type for the close packing of the book-racks for the economi-

cal storage of books infrequently used. Each rack is provided with wheels, so that it can be pulled out from its neighbours, when a book on its shelves is required for use No doubt this way of meeting the Fifth Law would be prejudicial to the interests of the Third Law It is a case of compromise here. It is only books which are entirely out of date and are not likely to be of any but antiquarian interest that would be consigned to such closely packed racks.

7124 Easy Extension

As the size of the stack-room must grow with the stock of books, it is necessary that the architectural features and the lay-out should admit of an easy extension of the stack room. Horizontal expansion may not always be possible Hence, it is desirable to make the foundations of the stack room strong enough to take extra tiers.

713 Book Rack

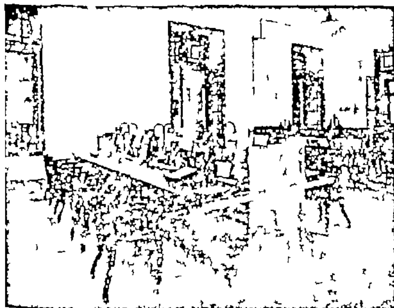
The unit racks of which the stack room is built should all be equal in every way so that the additions can be made by any number of units at a time. In particular the shelf planks should all be of identical dimensions, so that they can be interchanged in any manner They should also be adjustable. While steel-shelves can be made universally adjustable even wooden shelves can be made adjustable to an inch with the help of Tonk s fittings. The need for interchangeability and adjustability can be understood if we put together the Fifth Law and the fact that the books are to be arranged in a classified sequence on a subject basis. As further additions are made, the books will have to be shifted from shelf to shelf to keep their relative sequence intact. As books will be of all sizes, full freedom of adjustment of shelves will be necessary to avoid waste of space. A picture is given on page 332, and a specification will be found in Appendix 1

714 Mobility of Shelf Label

Another consequence of shifting the books as the library



UNIT BOOK-RACK WITH ADJUSTABLE SHELVES, BAY-GUIDES AND SHELF-GUIDES



PERIODICALS TABLE

grows, will be the need for frequently changing the shelf labels. We have already seen the need for a very large number of shelf labels. In fact a shelf-label will have to be assigned to every group of twenty books on an average. The frequency of shifting them as a result of the Fifth Law is bound to be very great. Hence much thought has been devoted to the invention of a suitable form of label-holder. Primitive methods of shelf labelling, such as sticking the labels to the edge of the shelf with gum or writing out the name of the class on the edge with a piece of chalk, will prove unmanageable in a growing library. A common form of label-holder consists of a piece of transparent xylonite, bent at right angles and fixed to the underside of the shelf with a pair of drawing pins. The labour involved in pulling out and fixing the pins turns out to be prohibitive. Another form of label-holder is made of sheet metal, with the upper and lower edges flanged so as to form grooves to receive the labels. They are fitted to the shelves by projections at top and bottom, and are capable of being moved forward and backward as required. But the simplest and the cheapest method is to cut a groove of a suitable cross-section in the edge of the shelf itself. The shelf planks of the book-racks designed by me for the Madras University are one inch thick. A slightly wedge shaped groove cut in its front edge takes a shelf label 5/8 wide. The label can be moved from end to end and can be inserted or removed without disturbing the shelf and its contents. This design has proved to be quite satisfactory. There are no sharp edges in this device and there is nothing involving waste of time.

715 Periodicals Room

Another part of the library building which needs careful designing in the light of the Fifth Law is the periodicals room. Its size and its furniture will have to be examined in the light of the inevitable growth in the number of periodicals current in a growing library. The rate of increase is indicated by the following figures :—[*]

Name of Library	In Year	No. of Periodicals	In Year	No. of Periodicals	Amount of Increase.
Madras	1908	160	1931	913	571%
Ames	1900	200	1925	1 414	707%
California	1913	7,000	1925	11 179	160%
Illinois	1900	414	1924	9,943	2401%
Iowa	1900	213	1925	1 176	552%
Michigan	1900	775	1925	3,361	434%
Minnesota	1906	321	1925	1 715	534%
Oregon	1909	158	1925	778	492%
Yale	1920	8,890	1925	11,548	130%

Another factor to be remembered in this connection is that the number of scientific periodicals published in the world is estimated to exceed 25 000 while it would exceed 60,000 if non-scientific periodicals are taken in the count.

716 Periodicals Table

To satisfy the first Four Laws in general, and the Third Law and the Fourth Law in particular it is necessary that the current numbers of all the periodicals taken by the library should be displayed in a classified sequence in a special periodicals room The periodicals room should be of a sufficiently large size and should be so located and designed as to admit of extension Further to economise in table space, at least six rows of periodicals should be accommodated on each side of each table The periodicals should be made to stand vertically with the front cover facing the reader The rows should be one behind the other in ascending steps, so that the periodicals in all the rows are clearly visible A picture is given on page 333 and a specification will be found in Appendix 2

717 New Principles of Architecture

To give to library buildings, fittings and furniture, the character of elasticity needed to prevent them from obstructing the free development of library service in full conformity to the Fifth Law new principles of architecture such as modular design and dry construction, are being exploited.

72 Catalogue Room

Another part of the library building which should be generously provided for in consequence of the growth in stock, is the catalogue room or the room in which the catalogue cabinets are kept A standard unit cabinet, which occupies a floor area of 23 × 28 can hold 48 000 catalogue cards. We have seen that each book may have to be given six catalogue cards on an average if the Second Third and Fourth Laws are to be satisfied. Thus, a unit cabinet is required for every eight thousand volumes. One can also infer from this the rate at which the number of catalogue cabinets will increase in a growing library This consequence of the Fifth Law should be borne in mind in designing the catalogue room Not only should that room be made sufficiently big to begin with but provision should also be made for its extension. The Fourth Law would on its part urge that this room should be located just near the entrance to the stack-room.

721 Physical Form of Catalogue

We shall next consider the effect of the Fifth Law on the physical form of the catalogue If A Library is a Growing Organism, it follows that the library catalogue will also be a growing one. In fact, the rate of growth of the catalogue may be said to be six times the rate of growth of the number of books, as a book requires six entries on an average Hence the first effort of the Fifth Law in the matter of the catalogue, was to fight against the printed catalogue. Taking a library which adds 6 000 volumes a year and assuming that a page of the printed catalogue can take 20 entries, a volume of 300 pages would be necessary to print a catalogue even on the basis of one entry for a book But, if in accordance with the requirements of the other Laws, the catalogue should be of the classified form with an alphabetical index and a profusion of cross references, the volume would swell to 1 800 pages The time taken to see a catalogue of that size through the press would keep it always behind date at least by a year

That is to say the latest books, which are of the greatest interest, would not find a place in it. Further there is the question of cost, and that of cumulating the annual volumes from time to time. On the other hand, a library catalogue never sells even when the price is nominal. Persons familiar only with libraries which are either stationary or at best grow inordinately slowly do not easily appreciate the waste and confusion involved in printing the catalogue of a growing library Accustomed to the periodical supply of printed lists by libraries of slow growth such persons fret and fume if printed catalogues are not supplied If one attempts to convince them by argument, they refuse to listen and express their bitterness by saying that it is all the tyranny of experts. It may be more truly called the tyranny of large numbers or the tyranny of the Fifth Law And the experts only try to find a way out of that tyranny

722 Printed Book Form

But a more inexcusable attitude was that of the principal of a college, who said that the college did not mind the cost, since it realised the whole amount by forcing each student to buy a copy What a narrow view! Was money to be wasted simply because it came from the pocket of the student? If money can be extracted from the students, can it not be utilised to enrich the library collection, instead of being wasted on an unwanted, out-of-date, poorly made list, passing under the dignified title of *Library Catalogue*? It is notorious how considerations of economy begin to loom large when the question of staff or the allotment for books is brought up But all sense of economy seems to vanish away when the annual or biennial printing of the catalogue is undertaken

723 Paste-Down Book Form

Assuming that the catalogue cannot be printed and that it should be only a manuscript one, let us examine what form the Fifth Law would recommend for it. It was the bound book form that was in use for a long time. But, in a grow-

ing library the need for interpolating entries to keep up their correct sequence soon led to the adoption of the "paste down form. In this form the entries are written typed or printed on narrow strips of paper which are pasted down on the pages of a bound book, leaving ample interspace for future interpolations. If any region gets congested the strips in that region are lifted up and redistributed. Apart from such paste-down catalogues soon becoming an eye-sore the time and labour involved in lifting and pasting are prohibitive

724 Loose Leaf Book Form

The next stage of evolution to which the Fifth Law brought the catalogue was the loose-leaf form. Here each leaf is made to take about half a dozen entries and the relative sequence of the leaves can be easily maintained Several forms of loose leaf binders have been invented during the last twenty or thirty years. The Kalamazoo binder is of a strong and convenient form although it is a little too costly The loose leaf idea, thus originated by the force of the Fifth Law of Library Science has now spread everywhere. Most of the business houses are now bidding good-bye to their bound books and are introducing loose-leaf ledgers in their place. Atlases, encyclopædias, directories and such other publications, parts of which frequently become out of date are nowadays issued in loose-leaf form, so that they may be maintained perpetually up-to-date, with the least cost and the least waste

725 One Leaf—One Entry

But even in the loose leaf catalogue, the insertion of more than one entry in a leaf led to a break in the sequence which became increasingly inconvenient as the library grew more and more To avoid this, the size of the leaf was reduced and only one entry was put on a leaf It was next felt that it was inconvenient to handle such small thin leaves.

726 Card Form

This brought into the field the card form of the catalogue. After a good deal of experimentation 5" × 3 has now been accepted as the most convenient size. Each card gets one and only one entry Hence, the right sequence is always maintained Cards of ·01 inch thickness are found to be suitable As the cards should stand wear and tear tough cards of close texture should be selected. Library suppliers like the Libraco, 62, Cannon St London, specialise in the production of such cards. Their "35 cards, medium thickness, round punched," which cost about Rs. 8-8-0 per 1 000, including freight and customs duties, are found to be quite serviceable. As in the case of the loose-leaf ledger the card sytem is another epoch-making contribution of the library profession to the business world in general. It has introduced great convenience, freedom, neatness and up-to-dateness in the maintenance of all kinds of record

727 Shelf-Register

In the same manner the shelf register which shows the books in the sequence in which they lie on the shelf and is indispensable for checking the stock of the library has also passed through similar stages of evolution and has finally assumed the card form, as a result of the Fifth Law

73 Classification Scheme

Another important matter that needs to be examined in the light of the Fifth Law is the classification of books. In the first place, as A Library is a Growing Organism and as knowledge itself is growing, it is necessary that the "classification must be comprehensive embracing all past and present knowledge and allowing places for any possible additions to knowledge " *Indeed this has been set down by Mr Sayers* as the first canon of classification To quote Sayers again, "A classification must be elastic, expansible and hospitable in the highest degree That is to say it must be so construct-

ed that any new subject may be inserted into it without dislocating its sequence." Cases like that of *Wave Mechanics, Matrices Raman Effect Internal Combustion Engine Radio Behaviourism Dalton Plan* and the entire subject of *Sociology* have had to be accommodated within living memory It cannot be said that all the printed schemes in force have come quite unscathed out of this trial

731 Decimal Fraction Notation

In addition to the scheme of classes being comprehensive and hospitable, the notation attached to them should be perfectly flexible The greatest service done to Librarianship by Melvil Dewey is the demonstration of the immense potentiality of the decimal fraction notation in meeting the difficulties due to growth. It is regrettable that the influential scheme of the Library of Congress should have failed to utilise the services of such a flexible type of notation and have adopted the primitive method of leaving gaps in the ordinary serial use of numbers. The Fifth Law will soon outgrow the gaps, however farseeing and generous they might be It is only the decimal fraction notation that will remain unbaffled by that law Indeed the brilliant success of the decimal fraction notation in overcoming the trials of the Fifth Law of Library Science is leading to its adoption in other spheres as well. Analytically-minded authors like Jesperson and Whittaker are beginning to number the paragraphs and chapters of their writings in a strictly decimal way Some authors even claim that the use of the decimal fraction notation adds substantially to clarity of thought.

732 Standard Schemes

It is by no means easy to secure hospitality of classes and flexibility of notation to the full satisfaction of the Fifth Law Un-thought-of difficulties are likely to crop up as the library grows. One should not light heartedly venture to construct schemes of classification. The old plan of dividing a library into about a dozen or two main classes and numbering the

books in each class consecutively as received, will soon prove inadequate and lead to confusion as the library grows. It is only ignorance of the Fifth Law that makes many of our libraries adopt such a plan. The best course is to follow a recognised printed scheme of classification. There are four such standard schemes used in English-speaking countries. They are, *Brown's Subject Classification*, *Cutter's Expansive Classification*, *Dewey's Decimal Classification* and *The Library of Congress Classification*. Of these, *Dewey's Decimal Classification* is the most popular. It is used in about 14,000 libraries. *The Library of Congress Classification* is also being largely used in America. The supply of printed catalogue cards by the Library of Congress is making this scheme popular. Cutter's scheme and Brown's scheme are not used in many libraries as there is no agency to bring them up-to-date from time to time. E. C. Richardson's *Classification theoretical and practical* contains an essay on the bibliographical history of systems of classification. There are no less than 161 systems mentioned by him. But, as has been already said, it is only two of these that have stood the test of time.

733 Colon Classification

I have constructed a new scheme known as the *Colon Classification*. It is adopted in the Madras University Library and in a few other Indian libraries which are beginning to classify their books. The notation of the scheme is a mixed one and has taken full advantage of the flexibility of the decimal use of digits. It has also many mnemonic features. The conscious use of multiple characteristics as basis of classification, without leading to cross classification, has made its classes greatly elastic. The next volume of this series will give an account of this classification. The development of the Colon Classification during the last thirty years has led to three techniques *viz.* Phase— Facet— and Zone—Analysis and to the concept of Analytico-Synthetic Classification. These satisfy the Fifth Law in a great measure. Such a scheme is now being called an Analytico-Synthetic Scheme.

734 Change of Scheme

Before proceeding further it may be advantageous to mention here a practical detail which should be borne in mind along with the Fifth Law The call number which individualises the book has to be written in practice in a dozen places, viz the back of the title page of the book, the date label pasted in the book, the back of the book the book card the shelf register the accession register and each one of the catalogue-cards corresponding to the book—and we have already stated that the average number of catalogue-cards is six per book This should make it plain that it is no ordinary matter to change the classification of a library The labour the time and the cost involved will be prohibitive.

735 Mutilation of Scheme

This practical difficulty should dissuade libraries from adopting a scheme in part. It is not uncommon for libraries, that have not realised the full implications of the Fifth Law to mutilate the chosen scheme—say to three figures of Dewey or four figures of Dewey as they desire But as the library grows, the need for fuller details would arise and it would be no easy matter to change or extend the call numbers of all the books. An equally dangerous course is to modify the chosen scheme here and there but one should not venture such modifications without seeing far into the future and examining whether the modifications proposed will not, at some time or other come into conflict with the mnemonic features of the notation or with the methods of division into classes. It is not enough if the modifications appear to be feasible with the existing classification. A mutilated scheme, that may appear to work well under certain conditions of size, will seldom work successfully as the library grows In Engineering it is a well-known fact that the construction of small models is often quite an easy matter whereas to develop them on a large scale presents serious technical problems which can often be solved only by some new method of attack So it is with classifica

tion As A LIBRARY IS A GROWING ORGANISM there is a great need for prudent planning on account of the difficulty of changing the scheme later The wisest course is to adopt a tried scheme as it is, without modifying it here and there

74 Readers and Issue of Books

We shall next consider the increase in the number of readers in the light of the following factors —

1 the size of the reading room
2 the issue method and
3 certain safeguards.

741 Reading Room

Taking the size of the reading room first it is seldom that the Fifth Law does not outwit the library authorities. To take an example, the Authorities of the Madras University Library stated, in 1911 that the Law would be satisfied with a reading room 60′ × 24 But, by 1926 it had to ask for rooms measuring, on the whole, 220′ × 35 If the present rate of increase of readers persists, it may not be long before it will have to ask for additional accommodation for readers. The generous way in which the Yale University has met the demands of the Fifth Law in this matter can be seen from the following account —"The reading rooms included a general room seating 260 readers, and shelving 15 000 reference books, a reserved book room, seating 220 readers, and shelving 25,000 volumes of duplicates for class use with provision in the basement for as many more volumes, a periodical room, seating 120, with wall-shelving for 2,000 different current serials a special room for undergraduates, seating 165 and shelving 30,000 of the best books in English on all subjects. A commuters study in the basement shelved 1,000 of the most important reference books, and provided 90 seats." [171] Thus, this library has made provision for nearly 1 000 readers.

742 Growth of Issue Work

Increase of readers leads to increase of issues. Here are

some figures showing the rate of increase of issue in certain University Libraries —

Name of Library	Year	No of vols. issued (in thousands)	Year	No. of vols issued (in thousands)	Amount of increase%
Madras	1914	5 000	1930	113,000	2,260
California	1910	184,000	1925	896,000	487
Cincinnati	1905	1,000	1925	134,000	690
Columbia	1905	232,000	1924	1,206,000	520
Michigan	1910	204 000	1925	477,000	234
Minnesota	1910	115,000	1925	441,000	422

7421 Scope for Further Growth

The following table, relating to some British Municipal Libraries, not only shows the magnitude of the issue work as it is now but also throws some light on the scope for a still greater issue As the Second Law would not be satisfied until the percentage of borrowers to population reaches 90, it follows that there is much room for increase in issue in almost all the towns mentioned in the table —

Town	Population	Borrowers	Percentage of Borrowers to Population	Total Issues
Wigan	91,200	8,002	8·7	258,908
Twickenham	34 790	4 404	12 6	142,818
York	84,039	12,116	14 4	380,576
Walthamstow	129,395	19 043	14·7	632,517
Cheltenham	50,630	8,030	15 9	279 105
Willesden	177,973	29 192	16·4	908,980
Swinton and Pendlebury	34 750	5,814	16 7	217,205
Southend-on-Sea	128,500	22,628	17 0	770,414
Chorley	30,581	5,663	18 5	16[illegible],024
Kirkaldy	45,000	9,916	20 0	229,259
Stockport ..	123,315	26,704	[illegible]1 7	545,027
Northampton ..	90,895	19 984	22·0	552,790
Royal Lamington Spa	29 450	7 107	24 1	216,249
Darwen ..	38,200	11 733	30 0	323,241
Montrose ..	10,979	6 624	60 3	131 770

743 Open Access

This great increase in issue has to be borne in mind in planning the issue methods. When the issue amounts to hundreds per day the old-fashioned method of making an attendant pick out the books asked for and dole them across the counter would require the full timed service of about twenty attendants. As the issue grows further the staff of attendants would stand in need of proportionate strengthening. Such an indefinite increase of men, for doing the mechanical work of issuing, is considered uneconomical and the library authorities are being driven to recognise that the open access system is the only method of meeting the Fifth Law

744 Ledger System of Issue

Further the ledger method of issue simply breaks down The average number of volumes issued is usually double the number of readers visiting the library The number of operations involved in the issue of a volume by the ledger method has been indicated in section 671 It can be seen from these data that the process of making the entries in the ledger method of issue would involve the employment of several counter-clerks and even with them it would be hardly practicable to cope with the situation in rush hours. Evening hours, just before the library is to close, are usually rush hours. Most of the readers would be leaving the library in the last few minutes of the day and the ledger method of issue would become simply impossible

745 Two-Card System of Issue

On the other hand, the crowd can be handled most expeditiously by the reader's ticket, book card method mentioned in sections 673 to 676. Further this method automatically solves the problem of identifying the borrowers. This problem becomes serious, as the number of borrowers increases It becomes impossible to depend on one's memory for faces.

Big colleges and popular public libraries find it increasingly difficult to handle this problem The introduction of the reader's ticket transfers the responsibility from the counter staff to the readers themselves. Each reader is made responsible for the books drawn on his tickets and it is his business to keep the tickets in his personal custody and prevent their use by others.

7451 Enforcement of Rules

Further the issue of as many tickets as the number of volumes which the reader is entitled to and the locking up in the library of one ticket against every book in his possession automatically secures that he does not remove from the library at any one time more volumes than he is entitled to It is hardly practicable to secure this in the ledger method as the number of readers increases.

7452 Statistical Work

Again, the reader's tickets coupled with corresponding book-cards are arranged behind the date guide in accordance with the call number on the book-cards, the different statistics of the daily issue are obtained with the least loss of time and labour On the other hand in the ledger method, in which the books will be entered only in the order of issue, the collection of these statistics will involve much labour and inconvenience and may become impracticable as the daily issue grows in bulk.

746 Even Floors

The issue aspect of the Fifth Law has some bearing on library design also Increase in issue implies also increase in the number of volumes to be replaced. In the earlier stages, the few volumes to be replaced can be conveniently carried by hand But, as the issue increases, it may not be convenient to do so It will become necessary to carry them on a book trolley It means that the room of the library should be devoid of raised thresholds and that the floor should be

throughout even and in one level so as to admit of the wheeling of the book trolley to any part of the floor If there be more than one floor they should be connected by a lift large enough to carry the book trolley The lift floor should stand flush with the floor of the building

747 Safeguards

As the number of readers increases, the problem of preventing unauthorised removal of books from the library becomes acute in open access libraries. It is not practicable to watch every reader unless certain safeguards are introduced. The safeguards should really secure that all the readers can leave the library only one at a time through a particular door at which vigilance can be exercised The safeguards consist of the following arrangements —

Entrance to the library must be by one and only one gate and exit also must be by one and only one gate. The gates should be normally in the locked position. They should open only if the counter-assistant releases the catch. The moment the reader leaves it, it should automatically lock itself The gate way should be big enough to allow one and only one reader to pass through it at a time All other doorways and windows should be fitted with *jali-work* shutters or weld-mesh shutters, whose meshes are too small for a book to be passed through. Further no reader should be allowed to replace the books on the shelves.

748 Disservice to Open Access

The need for such safeguards may not be realised when the number of readers and the issue are small But it will become serious as the library grows particularly as the issue grows. Perhaps, the greatest disservice to the open access system is done by the imprudent enthusiasts who introduce the system without the necessary safeguards. As the library grows, loss exceeds a reasonable limit and the system is hastily condemned. Such mistakes should be avoided from the very beginning, *i.e.*, even when the library is small—as the Library is a

GROWING ORGANISM which grows constantly and by imperceptible degrees.

75 Staff

We now turn to the third factor—the staff. Even those who realise the truth of the Fifth Law in regard to the books and the readers, fail to recognise the need for the growth in the third factor. The safe-guarded open access system and the modern issue-method eliminate the need for growth in the counter staff and considerably minimise the need for growth in the number of attendants. But, the book section, the periodicals section, the cataloguing section, the binding section and the reference section have to grow as the library grows. Of these five sections, the growth of the first three depend only on the rate of growth of the first factor—books. But, the growth of the last two sections depends not only on the growth of the stock but also on the growth of the number of readers. The Fifth Law would urge library authorities to remember that the efficiency of a library cannot be maintained at the proper level, unless provision is made for the necessary growth in all these five sections of the library staff.

751 SPECIALISATION

Granting that the library authority provides for the growth of the staff to the needed extent, the growth of the staff brings, in its train, certain new problems of organisation. With a large staff more machinery of supervision and more records become necessary. With a staff of one efficient person, we get maximum results. With a staff of two equally efficient persons we may perhaps get twice the work done. But, with a staff of ten, we cannot get ten times the work: the ratio is bound to be much less. It is the task of the organiser, the man at the head, to keep this ratio as high as possible. A recognised method of doing this is to seize the opportunity for specialisation which size undoubtedly brings with it. Such specialisation should be carried one step further every time the staff is increased.

752 Progressive Specialisation

As soon as a library increases the staff from one to two the counter-work and reference service should be separated from all other items of work and assigned to one of them At the next stage, it may be desirable to form three sections—the administrative section, the technical section (classification and cataloguing), and the counter-section. At the next stage, a reference section may be formed. If the staff are increased still further the administrative section may be split up into order section, accession section, periodicals section, binding section accounts section correspondence section, and so on, as opportunity presents itself Similarly the technical section may be bifurcated into classification section and cataloguing section. It may further be a great advantage if the members of the reference section specialize in different subjects, as the section grows in strength.

753 Inter Sectional Transfer

When the library staff are divided into many sections, it is necessary to determine carefully the section to which each member of the staff is best fitted, physically academically and temperamentally While periodical inter-sectional transfers may be desirable from the point of view of the staff such transfers should primarily be subject to the principle that the library should get the best service which each person is capable of

754 Staff-Council

In a library with a large staff, it may be useful to form a staff-council The council may be made up of the librarian, the heads of sections and one representative of each section. The staff-council may advise the librarian—

1 in the systematization of the work of the sections with due regard to efficiency and economy of material energy and time

2 in solving problems involving intersectional relationship
3 in developing the book resources of the library in a harmonious manner
4 in devising methods for improving the service to the public and
5 in organising extension work of all kinds.

755 Sectional Meeting

Incidentally such a council will develop good comradeship and *esprit de corps* among the members of the staff and train the junior members in organisation and original thinking. It will also develop in them a sense of responsibility and ownership While the librarian may preside over the meetings of the council and of the general body it may be useful to make the heads of sections themselves preside over the meetings of the respective sections. This will give increased opportunities for them to develop powers of leadership If at all the librarian may be present at the meeting and take part in discussions without the power of vote

756 Spirit of the Hive

As a library has to work on all days and for long hours, the organisation of the reference section and the counter-section requires the greatest skill and care so that there may be absolute continuity in the work and that the change of shift could be effected smoothly and quickly with the least dislocation of work Indeed, the readers should not be able to perceive that a change in personnel had come The details of this organisation and the machinery that has to be set up to secure proper control and co-ordination will be discussed in the later volumes—*Reference service and bibliography* and *Library administration* But there is one factor that may be mentioned here That is the spirit of the staff The members of the staff should be on the most cordial terms among themselves. They should be willing to co-operate with one another in every possible way There should not be the least trace of

jealousy or envy The propensity to claim credit exclusively to oneself should be completely got over Self should be suppressed to such a degree that every member is prepared to pass off all work as anonymous. Maeterlinck s picture of the work in the bee-hive contains the most vivid and accurate description of the spirit that should come over a library staff as it inevitably grows in accordance with the Fifth Law if it is to function with maximum efficiency

"She like the foundresses, abruptly departs and abandons her model. Her place is taken at once by an impatient worker who continues the task that a third will finish, while others close by are attacking the rest of the surface and the opposite side of the wall each one obeying the general law of interrupted and successive labour as though it were an inherent principle of the hive that the pride of toil should be distributed and every achievement be anonymous and common to all, that it might thereby become more fraternal "

The spirit of the hive should prevail among the library staff if the inconveniences due to the Fifth Law are to be avoided.

76 Evolution

So far we have dealt only with the consequences of growth in size. We shall now turn to the other attribute of a growing organism, *viz* variation and evolution of new forms.

761 Earliest Stage

In the earliest days, a library is said to have been denoted by a word which meant a place for hiding books in Later on they seem to have been literal prisons for books. That prison-life of the books appears to have been much more rigorous than that of even some of the *C* class prisoners of to-day I believe it is not every *C* class prisoner that is kept chained all the hours of the day but the libraries of the medieval days kept their books perpetually in chains.

762 Limited Freedom

It was only in the seventeenth and the eighteenth centuries

hat the inhuman aspect of this way of preserving books appears to have been realised Even then the freedom that was first given to the books was only comparable to the freedom given to *A* class prisoners That is to say they were given freedom of movement only within the four walls of the library even as an *A* class prisoner is perhaps permitted to take his constitutional walks within the boundary of the prison walls

763 Stock Taking *vs* Stock Use

Then came the period of grudgingly lending them out. But sense of property still dominated. In that period, the libraries appear to have devoted their main attention to the stock taking process, to the number of books lost, to the number of books damaged—never mind even if it was due to the wear and tear of legitimate use—to the fixing up of the responsibility for such loss or damages and to such other factors almost to the exclusion of the statistics of issue, the statistics of membership the percentage of the community that was still keeping out from libraries and the means of bringing them under the influence of the libraries.

764 Present Stage

But the slow change that began to appear at the turn of the present century attained a huge amplitude as a result of the Great War and the highly differentiated and complicated character of the organisation of the library of to-day makes it as far different from the ancient Chinese place to hide books in" as the human group is from the protozoa group or the Atlantic Liner of 60,000 tons is from Columbus's Santa Maria

765 Future

What further stages of evolution are in store for this Growing Organism—the library—we cannot anticipate fully Who knows that a day may not come when the dissemination of knowledge, which is the vital function of libraries, will be

realised even by means other than those of the printed book? At least Wells[144] has pictured a world in which dissemination of knowledge will be effected by direct thought transfer unmediated by the spoken or the printed word. An ancient tradition of India gives an exquisite picture of communication in silence

> Look at the foot of that banyan tree.
> What a wonder and what a beauty!
> How aged the pupils, but
> How youthful the teacher!!
> All the doubts of the pupils stand resolved
> By the teacher's eloquence of silence!!!

> चित्रं वटतरोर्मूले वृद्धाः शिष्या गुरुर्युवा ।
> गुरोस्तु मौनं व्याख्यानं शिष्यास्तु छिन्नसंशयाः ॥

766 Variety of Forms

Without indulging in such speculations, we may have a look at the variety of forms into which the library organism has differentiated itself in our present day. We have the Municipal or City library, the Rural or District library, the academic libraries such as the School library, the College library and the University library, the Business library, the Commercial library, the Seafarers' library, the Children's library, the Intermediate library—a species that is just beginning to appear—the library for the blind and many other special libraries. Each one of these species has problems and peculiarities of its own in addition to certain common features. It will take us beyond the scope of this book to deal with each of them in a detailed manner. There are special treatises that deal with each such species.

77 Vital Principle

But the vital principle of the library—which has struggled through all the stages of its evolution,—is common to all its different forms and will persist to be its distinguishing feature for all time to come—is that it is an instrument of universal education, and assembles together and freely distributes all the tools of education and disseminates knowledge with their aid. This vital principle— the spirit of the library —persisting through all its forms is like the Inner Man and to it are applicable the words [11] of the Lord —

As a person casts off worn-out garments and puts on others that are new so does the embodied soul cast off worn-out forms and enter into others that are new

Weapons do not cleave him fire does not burn him water does not make him wet nor does the wind make him dry

He cannot be cloven he cannot be burnt he cannot be wetted he cannot be dried he is eternal, all-pervading, steadfast and immovable he is the same for ever

वासांसि जीर्णानि यथा विहाय नवानि गृह्णाति नरोऽपराणि ।
तथा शरीराणि विहाय जीर्णान्यन्यानि संयाति नवानि देही ॥

नैनं छिन्दन्ति शस्त्राणि नैनं दहति पावकः ।
न चैनं क्लेदयन्त्यापो न शोषयति मारुतः ॥

अच्छेद्योऽयमदाह्योऽयमक्लेद्योऽशोष्य एव च ।
नित्यः सर्वगतः स्थाणुरचलोऽयं सनातनः ॥

CHAPTER 8

SCIENTIFIC METHOD LIBRARY SCIENCE AND MARCH OF DIGVIJAYA

80 What is a Science?

"Is there a library science?" is a question raised quite often. Sir P S. Sivaswamy Aiyar raised it in the Foreword to the first edition of this book A reviewer of the *Preface to library science* [04] containing the inaugural lectures to the Department of Library Science formed by the University of Delhi in 1947 challenged the term Library Science in the pages of *Nature* [04] Sri C. Rajagopalachari raised the question in his speech from the chair at the Silver Jubilee Celebrations of the Madras Library Association in April 1953 In reality the answer to this question turns on the answer to another question—"What is a science? The note of scepticism in regard to Library Science is often traceable to some restricted definition of the term Science Two such restrictions are common and they can be shown to be false

801 Subject of Study

One restriction assumed in the definition of a science relates to the subject of study The course of studies and the nomenclature in vogue in universities at first restricted science to cover only the study of the physical world and its phenomena. In course of time it has been extended to cover also the study of the world of living bodies and its phenomena. But there is a growing support to another view of science. In this view the subject of study is not relevant in determining the claim of a domain in the universe of knowledge to be deemed a science Karl Pearson[07] had stated this view as follows "The field of science is unlimited its material is endless, every group of natural phenomena, every phase of social life, every stage of past or present development is material for science" The two following dictionary definitions of the term, Science reflect this generalised view of its subject of

tudy (1) A system based or purporting to be based upon scientific principles a method of arrangement, functioning, tc reconciling practical or utilitarian ends with scientific laws *e g* Domestic Science Animal Husbandry (2) Accumulated and accepted knowledge which has been systematised and formulated with reference to the general truths and made available in work life or the search of truth Again the epigram of Jevons,[10] "Science arises from the discovery of Identity amidst Diversity" severely ignores the subject of study The following dictionary definition also does so A Science is "A branch of study which is concerned either with a connected body of demonstrated truths or with observed facts systematically classified and more or less collected by being brought under general laws and which includes trustworthy methods for the discovery of new truth within its own domain" The essential characteristic of a science is thus not what it treats about but what it acheives in respect of what it treats about—what Omar Khayyam[10] longed to achieve

> Ah Love! Could you and I with Him conspire
> To grasp this sorry Scheme of Things entire
> Would not we shatter it to bits—and then
> Re mould it nearer to the Heart s desire!

802 Method of Study

A second restriction often assumed tacitly in the definition of a science relates to the method of study At the beginning of the nineteenth century Birckbeck introduced experimental demonstration in teaching the pure sciences. Since then in due course, the nomenclature in vogue in universities tended to restrict science to cover only a domain of knowledge admitting of experimental study It was easily seen to be an over restriction as it would exclude from the right to be called a science an ancient science like Astronomy for it uses observation only and not experimentation needing a laboratory To escape this danger Jeans makes a different approach

A science teaches us to know and an art to do and all the

more perfect sciences lead to the creation of corresponding useful arts. Astronomy is the foundation of navigation." Genung's illustration is more to the point "Rhetoric, here called an art, is sometimes defined as a science Both designations are true. Science is systematised knowledge if the laws and principles of discourse are exhibited in an ordered and inter related system, they appear in the character of a science. Art is knowledge made efficient by skill If the rhetorical laws and principles are applied in the actual construction of discourse they become the working rules of art." This view permits observation also as a basis for the formulation of laws in a science On the analogy of Genung's illustration, there can be an Art of Librarianship as well as a Library Science.

803 Mode of Development

The approach to the definition of Science through the subject of study or the method of study has given only negative results. A positive help can be got by an examination of the mode of development of a domain of knowledge. In this approach Science is the name given to a domain in the universe of knowledge, whose development is characterised by a method called Scientific Method We should therefore begin with a description of scientific method

81 Scientific Method

811 Assumed Terms

In the description of scientific method we shall use the following as assumed terms

Know Knower Knowee, Knowledge

Senses, Sensation or Perception Observation, Experimentation

Intellect Association, Reasoning Logic Inductive Logic, Deductive Logic

Memory Remembering, Recalling

Emotion, Feeling

The mode of knowing with the aid of the faculties and methods mentioned in the last four sections is called *Kartru-Tantra* in Sanskrit. It means Knower Dependent

Intuition or trans-intellectual, trans sensory trans-emotional and trans-memory mode of directly knowing a thing in itself

This mode is called *Vastu-Tantra* in Sanskrit It is said to be acquired by *Tapas* a method of concentration self-sublimation and self-development and it means Knowee-Dependent

812 Emergence of Knowledge

When knower and knowee are brought into relation the knower knows the knowee and knowledge emerges. Knowledge is expressed in language or in some other medium and expressed knowledge is stored in memory The simplest mode of knowing is for the knower to perceive the knowee with the aid of one or other of the primary senses. This action may be called primary perception. Little is known about primary perception perhaps it is ordinarily experienced only by the new-born baby Soon after birth association of the results of two or more simultaneous primary perceptions would take place Each new perception will also be instantaneously and spontaneously and inexorably associated with what is already stored in memory In due course, the mode of knowing goes beyond perception and association It includes reasoning and reasoning progressively gets more involved. Increasingly sharper and more powerful logic is used in the reasoning. In course of time two classes of knowee come to be recognised —one outside the memory of the knower and the other inside it An external knowee may be called a Concrete Knowee or an Object and an internal knowee may be called an Abstract Knowee or a Concept The former adds to concrete knowledge and the latter to abstract knowledge Further a concept, with an object as an external correlate may be called a Concrete Concept and one without it, an Abstract Concept We can speak of increasing degrees of abstraction.

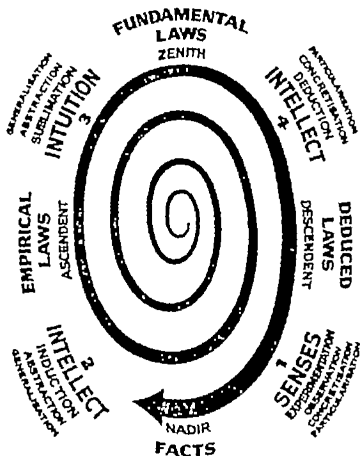
Concrete and Abstract are only relative terms they have a meaning only when used together either explicitly or implicitly We can think of a Scale of Abstraction or of the reverse of it, *viz.*, a Scale of Concreteness. The term Entity may be used to denote either an object or a concept

813 UNIVERSE OF KNOWLEDGE

Language, record and other forms of communication across space and through time make it possible for mankind to cumulate one another s knowledge and add to it co-operatively either in a systematic or in a casual way Universe of Knowledge is the sum-total, at the moment, of such cumulated knowledge It is being continuously developed and added to. Different domains of the universe of knowledge are developed by different methods. Scientific method is one of the recognised methods of development.

814 SPIRAL OF SCIENTIFIC METHOD

Scientific method is characterised by a never-ending spiral movement. It is schematically represented in the diagram on the next page The cycle implied in the spiral will be followed in the clock wise direction For convenience of reference the four cardinal points of the cycle are denoted by the terms Nadir Ascendent, Zenith, and Descendent. The nadir marks the accumulation of facts, obtained by observation, experimentation, and other forms of experience. The ascendent marks the accumulation of inducted or empirical laws got out of the facts accumulated at the nadir by inductive logic including normal equations and other aids from statistical calculus. The zenith marks the fundamental laws formulated with the aid of intuition of some degree or other so as to comprehend all the inducted or empirical laws accumulated at the ascendent as compelling implications. The descendent marks the accumulation of the deduced laws got from the fundamental laws at the zenith with the aid of deductive logic including general semantics and all kinds of mathematical calculuses.



SPIRAL OF SCIENTIFIC METHOD

The four cardinal points give rise to four quadrants in the cycle implied in the spiral For convenience of reference, the quadrants will be numbered 1 to 4 respectively as follows Quadrant 1 is the one between descendent and nadir Quadrant 2 is the one between nadir and ascendent Quadrant 3 is the one between ascendent and zenith and Quadrant 4 is the one between zenith and descendent. The following statement is taken to be intelligible in the light of what has been said already —

8141 Quadrant 1

Quadrant 1 corresponds to the stage in the development of a domain of the universe of knowledge conforming to scientific method, in which —

1 primary senses are used either in their native state or with the aid of instruments of various degrees of powerfulness

2 observations are made of knowees, either with or without experimental interference and conditioning

3 there is progression towards particularisation, and regression from generalisation

4 there is progression towards concreteness and regression from abstractness and

5 facts are found and recorded

8142 Quadrant 2

Quadrant 2 corresponds to the stage in which —

1 intellect is used either by itself or aided by machinery constructed to speed up the work of the intellect and to give relief to it in some measure

2 reasoning is made with the aid of inductive logic including normal equations and other statistical and other calculuses to boil down the numerous facts accumulated at the nadir to a small number of inducted or empirical laws—*e g.*, Kepler s Law of Equal Area in the motion of planets, boiled down from the facts recorded by Tycho Brahe—more easy to hold in memory than the multitude of the facts themselves

3 there is regression from particularisation and progression towards generalisation

4 there is regression from concreteness, and progression towards abstractness and

5 inducted or empirical laws are formulated and recorded.

8143 Quadrant 3

Quadrant 3 corresponds to the stage in which

1 intuition of some intensity or other is used unmediated by the primary senses or the intellect

2 the inducted or empirical laws stand boiled down to a very small number of fundamental laws—*e.g.*, Newton's Laws of Motion to which many empirical laws such as the Kepler's Laws are reduced at one stroke—more easy to hold in memory than the more numerous empirical or inducted laws

3 there is regression from particularisation and progression towards ultimate generalisation

4 there is regression from concreteness and progression towards ultimate abstractness and

5 the fundamental laws are seized and recorded.

8144 Quadrant 4

Quadrant 4 corresponds to the stage in which

1 intellect is used either by itself or aided by machinery constructed to speed up the work of the intellect and give relief to it in some measure

2 reasoning is made with the aid of deductive logic including general semantics, and mathematical and other calculuses to work out all the compelling implications of the fundamental laws

3 there is progression towards particularisation, and regression from generalisation

4 there is progression towards concreteness, and regression from abstractness and

5 the deduced laws are derived and recorded

6 the derived deduced laws include one and all of the

mdocted empirical laws and

7 the number of deduced laws exceeds that of the empirical laws, if the fundamental laws had been seized with intuition of adequate intensity

8145 Entrance into the Next Cycle

The spiral of scientific method begins the next cycle there after by re-entering quadrant 1 Two things happen at the stage of development corresponding to quadrant 1 in the new cycle

1 observations and experiments are made to verify empirically the validity of the new deduced laws and

2 further observations and experiments are made continuously and thus leads to accumulation of new empirical facts.

8146 Helpfulness of the Fundamental Laws

So long as the deduced laws are empirically verified to be true and the new empirical facts are found to be in conformity to the implications of the fundamental laws, there is no further movement in the spiral and the fundamental laws hold sway and continue to be deemed helpful But, this seldom holds good for long. Disturbance arises sooner or later in almost all the domains in the universe of knowledge, as they get cultivated and developed.

8147 Arduous Effort

As and when empirical facts and experience appear to contradict the fundamental laws, arduous effort is made to ensure absence of any kind of fallacy in the process of deduction, any kind of defect in the logic or the calculus used in the process, and any kind of fault in the experiment or observation or in the instruments used. When warranted, more powerful instruments of observation more exacting experiments, and sharper calculuses for deduction are devised Witness, for example, the invention of mass-spectroscopy which dissolved an apparent contradiction to Dalton s fundamental law about the atom the devising of observations of stars during

total solar eclipse which dissolved an apparent contradiction to Einstein's fundamental law of relativity and the unceasing progress in the development of general semantics and the mathematical calculuses to make deductions penetrating and free from fallacies. Every effort should also be made to re interpret the terms in the formulation of the fundamental laws with the aid of exegetics, so as to get out of them their fullest possible import lying hidden until the necessary em pirical experience draws attention to it.

8148 Declaration of Crisis

Now and again, contradiction between the empirical facts of experience and the currently used fundamental laws per sists, in spite of all the possible precautions to ensure absence of faults and fallacies in the building of the facts of experience and the inference of the implications of the fundamental laws, and in spite of every possible and proper use of exegetics. Then we have to recognise the existence of a new class of facts and declare the incidence of a crisis in the application of the scientific method.

8149 Resolution of Crisis

Then, the new class of empirical facts are accumulated at the nadir and a new cycle gets into full swing and carries the spiral of scientific method further Work in quadrant 2 leads to a new set of empirical laws Work in quadrant 3 leads to the seizing of a new set of fundamental laws. Work in quadrant 4 leads to a new set of deduced laws. Work in quadrant 1 is again started as before This cycle is liable to be repeated without end in many a domain.

815 Definition of Science

Any domain in the universe of knowledge, irrespective of the subject and the method of study which admits of the above-described spiral of scientific method in its development, is a science. In the natural sciences, including the physical and the biological sciences, the fundamental laws are

called hypotheses They furnish a descriptive formulation of the empirical facts of experience. In the social sciences, such as education political science, economics, sociology law and library science—which is also one of them—the fundamental laws are called normative principles They furnish an interpretative explanation of the empirical facts of experience and of the techniques found necessary in experience The terms true and false apply only to facts and the empirical and deduced laws. They do not apply to hypotheses and normative principles—that is, to fundamental laws These can only be described as *helpful* or *unhelpful*, according as they fit in or not with the facts of empirical experience Newton's laws did not fit in with certain new empirical facts found during the present century and in this context, they ceased to be helpful hypotheses and gave place to Einstein's laws of relativity These two sets of laws belong to two different cycles in the spiral of scientific method. As it often happens, particularly if the laws are seized by a sufficiently intensive intuition, the Newtonian hypothesis is contained in the Einsteinian hypothesis. For the former is got out of the latter by taking the speed of light to be greater than any conceivable finite speed. Similarly the old second law of library science—*viz.*, Books are for the Chosen Few—did not fit in with the library practices coming into vogue in community after community during the last century as a result of the onslaught of democracy In this context, it ceased to be a helpful normative principle and gave place to the new second law—*viz.*, Books are for All These two laws belong to two different cycles in the spiral of scientific method It can also be seen that the former version of the second law is contained as a particular case in the latter version Again the old normative principle of political science—*viz.*, The king can do no wrong —did not fit in with the political practices coming into vogue in community after community during the last two centuries as a result of the onslaught of republic-idea In this context, it ceased to be a helpful normative principle and gave place to the new normative principle—The Judiciary can do no wrong. As all the

functions of the judiciary were vested in the king in the earlier days, the earlier normative principle was contained in the latter

816 Delay in Recognising Social Sciences

8161 Natural Sciences

Natural sciences were admitted as sciences, as tested by the use of scientific method in their development much earlier than social sciences. This was because, in the case of natural sciences —

1 observation—corresponding to quadrant 1 of the cycle—can be impersonal and nearly objective subject only to the errors of observation which could be corrected by the curve of errors and the calculus of observations designed more than a century ago by Gauss

2 experiments—corresponding to quadrant 1—can be made without any let or hindrance in the case of physical sciences and with a minimum of mental revulsion even with the living bodies of the lower organisms and

3 the mathematical calculuses, necessary and sufficient to make induction and deduction—corresponding to quadrants 2 and 4—within the domain of the natural sciences, had been forged a few centuries earlier and there has been a continuous sharpening of them

8162 Social Sciences

On the other hand, in the case of social sciences, unfavourable factors prevail in all the three quadrants. Observation is vitiated by the observed entity being man himself with all the obstructions which his mind causes. Experimentation is difficult if not impracticable and even impossible when man himself has to be the subject of experiment even where it is attempted it takes several decades to collect adequate data on account of the large span of each generation and of the low rate of multiplication—compare for example, that rabbits multiply a million within a short period, and that still lower

organisms have a negligibly small span for each generation and their fecundity too is phenomenally high Moreover humane considerations prevent experimenting with the human species. Again, the statistical calculus necessary for work in quadrants 2 and 4 were either unknown or were found to be in a primitive state till about half a century ago Karl Pearson, who died only two decades ago was a pioneer in forging this calculus and fitting it for really advanced work in quadrants 2 and 4 Statistical calculus, operational analysis, and other tools are being sharpened only to-day to a degree sufficient to take allowance for the vitiations, incidental to man and his society being the subject of study As a result of the forging of such powerful tools, however the development of many disciplines in the domain of social sciences is becoming progressively amenable to scientific method Library science is one of them The time has come to recognise the existence of library science as a science

8163 Other Disciplines

To appreciate the claim of some of the social sciences of to-day to the status of a science, it will be helpful to mention some other disciplines, whose development is not amenable to scientific method as outlined above. Theology is an obvious example. In this discipline the zenith is occupied by unalterable authoritative principles, often taken to be revelation. Historically even empirical experiences in the physical world, going contradictory to them, were denied validity indeed, history is full of instances of treating the assertion of such empirical experiences as heresy and of the cruelty meted out to such heretics. Here, the left half of the cycle is thrown out of action and there is thus no scientific spiral at all. Exegetics is put to the severest strain to reconcile the authoritative principles at the zenith and the contradicting facts at the nadir One of the extreme devises used in this exegetics is known as *Artha-Vada* According to this, the occurrence of meaningless words, phrases, sentences and even paragraphs is possible in a text. These are deemed to be un

intelligible, and hence to-be neglected "noises" in the re vealed texts occupying the zenith *Mimamsakas* in Indian philosophy furnish outstanding examples of extreme forms of reconciliation of this kind Christian theology also gives extreme though earnest, attempts at such forced reconciliation of empirical facts and the Bible E. T Whittaker's *Space and pirit*" demonstrates this in a lucid way Fine arts including literature form another domain in the universe of knowledge, which is not amenable to the scientific method described above The development of these subjects do not present quadrants 1 2, and 4 We can only recognise quadrant 3 They are all products of intuition with little play of intellect. No cycle of scientific method is possible in that domain But the discipline of art-criticism including literary criticism and linguistics, involves work in all the four quadrants and these are amenable to scientific method.

817 Emergence of Library Science

Unlike in theology and the fine arts, the development of library science is fully characterised by the spiral of scientific method All the earlier chapters of this book demonstrate it. They describe the typical library practices current before 1931 and corresponding to quadrant 1 They state facts of experi ence corresponding to the nadir They also mention in a few places some empirical laws derived from the facts. The five fundamental laws seized in quadrant 3 form the normative principles corresponding to the zenith. Quadrant 4 is well provided for by showing the then library practices as compelling implications of these normative principles. In later sections, some indications will be given as to how new inferences are being made, and new library practices are explained or suggested by the same normative principles, and new interpretations of their terms are being given in the light of the changes occurring in the boundary conditions imposed by society on library service The formulation of the five laws has set the spiral of scientific method into action This justifies deeming library science to be a science

818 Trivial Truism

Before dealing with these factors, a word should be said about the remark that the First Law—Books are for Use—is a trivial truism The first law of most of the sciences is equally so For example, Newton's first law of motion reads, "Every body preserves in its state of rest unless it is compelled to change that state by impressed forces." Is this not a truism? Perhaps the triviality of a first law is best illustrated by the first law of logic, commented upon as follows in the *New foundations of logic* (1947) by K. R. Popper [81] — The most trivial and at the same time the simplest rule of inference is undoubtedly —"from the statement *a*, the statement *a* can be derived" This rule is so trivial that many classical logicians have hesitated to admit it. They have felt that nothing could be gained by admitting it and that the dignity of the procedure of inference would be imperilled if this were called an inference. Since the rule is, obviously not invalid we should have to admit it even if it were useless. But contrary to first impressions, it is far from being useless. It is even characteristic, altogether of the triviality of the fundamental rules from which the edifice of logic arises. We should furthermore keep in mind that triviality of the basic assumptions is an advantage rather than a disadvantage, provided that what we obtain at the end is adequate for our purpose In spite of the triviality of these rules, the concept of derivability thus determined turns out to provide an exceedingly powerful instrument.

The implications of the first law have been profound, rich, and revolutionising, as worked out in the first chapter of this book We shall now state some of the library-practices set up already or to be set up in the future as implications of the other laws.

82 Second Law and New Types of Books and Practices

Since 1931 *many new library practices have come into vogue* These are all in conformity to the implications of the word

every in the enunciation of the second law These implications suggest also some new practices, yet to be implemented. Stated in general terms, the second law regards every human being as a potential reader Democracy should be allowed the fullest sway in the interpretation of the second law

821 Books for Children

"Every includes children. They too are entitled to books. But adults books are not suited to them. Children s books should cover the entire universe of knowledge in a special key in a distinctive style of exposition with a high proportion of illustrations, and with a physical get up of their own. Accordingly a special class of children s authors and publishers have come into being in some of the countries. This is yet to happen in India A scheme for it has been worked out in the *School and college libraries* (1942) ""

822 Books for the Abnormals

Every includes the blind and the cripple confined to bed Books are now being transformed into sound records for the use of blind readers. Some of the public libraries of the USA are now engaged in their production with the aid of voluntary readers The Library of Congress is taking a leading part in the organisation of their production storage, and circulation Ceiling books were seen by me for the first time in the Carnegie Library in Pittsburg. A ceiling book is a micro-film with projector equipment fit to be projected on to the ceiling by a cripple confined to bed with the aid of any limb of his, such as a toe or a finger which is functioning.

823 Books for Artisans

"Every" includes artisans in the lowest quartile in the intellectual scale as well as the economic scale To make them accept and benefit by library service, it is necessary to produce craft-centred sets of books. Each set will have a specific craft as the central blazing theme. The entire universe of knowledge will be covered by the books in the set, with one book on each

class or region of knowledge, written from the angle of the craft in question. The need for such craft-centred sets of books was first sensed in *Education for leisure* (1946)[344] and more fully expounded in a memorandum to the Government of India and in *Social education literature* (1952)[38]

824 Books for Neo-Literates

"Every" includes neo-literates Neo-literate adults will form an abnormal percentage of the Indian community for at least one more generation. There is need for a set of graded books for their use. The proportion of illustrations to letter press will decrease from, perhaps, 10 to 1 in the lowest grade to perhaps 1 to 10 in the highest grade. The details of this class of books will be found in *Literature for neo-literates* (1953).[344]

825 Books for the Last Deciles

"Every" includes also the persons of lowest ability forming, say the last ten percent in the intellectual scale. Even craft-centred books and the books of the lowest grade for the neo-literates will not be suited to them. They need speaking-books. A speaking-book is a well illustrated book written in a specially simple style carrying in a pouch at its end, sound records of the letter-press in the body of the book. Thus, a sound-book will appeal to the reader in a triple way—through the ear through the eyes, and through the phonetic symbols. The need for this class of books to satisfy the second law was first expounded in a talk given by me in the Chaucer House, London, before a meeting of the Library Association in 1948.

826 Books for the Men at the Bench

"Every" includes the foremen and the workmen at the bench in the factories. The current unbalancing between population pressure and natural and near-natural commodities of consumption calls for enormous productivity drive Rate of production and avoidance and elimination of wastage

depending on organised library service On the other hand, the persons now being pressed into research are in great need of being fed exactly and exhaustively by library service This need is getting intensified every day by the very increase in the rate of output of new thought, caused by research-in-series all the world over It is also intensified by the tremendous amount of cross-breeding and lamination taking place in the universe of knowledge, as a result of intensively organised research in many sectors of knowledge. Even in one and the same industrial house wasteful, unintended, research-in-parallel sets in frequently because of inefficiency in keeping every worker informed promptly of every new achievement of every other worker which may be at least partly or remotely germane to the pursuit of many others. The heaps of unfed house reports on many research projects in one and the same enterprise—and even under one and the same roof—form a staggering monument of costly new thought left idle, without being ploughed back into the research-in-series which is in progress "Documentation" is the name of the new library technique being developed for the purpose.

832 Generalisation of Book

There is another factor in the library service to be given attention to in the economic sphere. Research-in-series will not be fully helped if library service confined itself to whole books and periodicals as service units The unit of service should be an individual article in a periodical or a section and even a paragraph in a book. To use a jargon coined by me, the unit of library service cannot any longer be macro thought it must be nascent micro thought in the research sphere Efficient, prompt, pin-pointed, exhaustive service of nascent micro thought to specialists, necessitated by the social pressure of to-day has now come to be called Documentation Service The reconciliation of this library practice with the third law and the other laws requires a generalisation of the denotation of the term book It should hereafter be used in the sense of Document its definition was attempted in the

Heading and canons (1955).[71] Even this stood out-moded in the light of the instrument-record of phenomena—unmediated by the human mind and untransformed into human thought—gaining in importance as document. This transformation of the content of the third law and the other laws by exegetical means have been discussed in detail in my *Documentation in many lands 4 Document conventional and non-conventional* (1956) published in the *Annals of library science*

833 Effect of Generalisation on Classification

The effect of this generalisation of the term book in the third law has been most pronounced on the discipline of library classification. The technique of classification was cultivated in the early years for mechanising arrangement of books on shelves. Superficial classification of macro thought was sufficient for this purpose Such a classification could afford to be enumerative from the very start. But depth classification is necessary if the unit of service is micro thought. Depth classification will have to be analytico-synthetic In it, enumeration should be confined only to some seminal schedules and a few schedules of common isolates Such a scheme is now being actively investigated by the profession The techniques of phase facet, and zone analysis, the concepts of fundamental categories and postulates for classification and the separation of work in the idea and notational planes—all largely initiated in India—are proving to be productive in this investigation. An international conference was held in England in May 1957 to quote from the official report, for "the study of modern ideas on classification (which are largely due to Ranganathan of India) and their application to information retrieval."

84 Fourth Law and New Library Practices

The fourth law—Save the Time of the Reader—gives the corrollary "Save the Time of the Staff" in order to turn more hands on to reference service. This corrollary has as its implications many practices in library service Some of these

have already made a start, though they have to go a long way to give results to the full satisfaction of the fourth law

841 Centralised Classification and Cataloguing

A fruitful practice gaining support is centralised classification and cataloguing of books. These two techniques are quite impersonal in the sense that the class number of a book and its catalogue entries depend largely on the book itself and not upon the library using it. The slight extent to which they may have to be occasionally oriented to the unusual needs of readers of a particular class or of a particular locality is provided for by the Canon of Local Variation being applicable to both the disciplines. In view of this, centralisation is possible in the technical preparation of books for service. It has been shown in the *Headings and canons* (1955)[m1] that centralisation will effect 79% saving in the man-power needed in the library system of a country to prepare the home-produced books for use. The same book shows also that a similar 79% saving can be effected in respect of foreign books also if each country practises centralisation and participates in the scheme set forth in that book for international co-operation in the matter. The British National Bibliography is the best known demonstration of this implication of the fourth law. Though started only in 1950 it has already effected a considerable saving in the British library system. Its recent organisation to print and supply catalogue cards—in most cases within one day of the receipt of the order—is a highwater mark of efficiency

842 Pre-Natal Classification and Cataloguing

The fourth law has been always dissatisfied with the hold-up of books between their receipt in the library and their release for use in order to classify and catalogue them. The pre natal classification and cataloguing of books, the release of catalogue cards along with the release of the books themselves, the printing of the call numbers on the backs of the title-pages and tooling them on the binding, and the associa

ted routine for order work, described in the *Headings and canons* [71] will make it possible for a library to release a book within not more than a couple of days of its receipt. This is a practice that has not yet come into vogue anywhere. But during my visit to England in December 1956, Mr Wells the editor of BNB, assured me that such pre-natal work was not as impracticable as it was thought to be when it was first expounded by me on 12 August 1948 in an address at the Library of Congress. He does not anticipate any resistance from publishers in their offer of co-operation when it could be started by him

843 INTERNATIONAL AND NATIONAL DOCUMENTATION

To save man-power and money it has been found necessary to centralise documentation work even at the international level. But, in practice it leads to a time-lag of more than one year This is a serious violation of the fourth law Therefore since World War II, the practice of restricted documentation work in each national centre is being tried. The periodicals scanned are restricted to those taken within the country The subjects for which they are scanned are restricted to those in which work is being done within the country These two restrictions bring down the quantity of work involved to a great extent, at least in the newly developing countries. The advance procurement of micro-copies of the title pages of periodicals by air mail makes it possible for the national documentation list to reach service-libraries almost simultaneously with the arrival of the periodicals concerned A further step should be for the national documentation centre of each country to do pre-natal documentation of each of the articles originating within its territory and releasing the documentation list with abstracts. This suggestion of the fourth law may show a way also to make some saving in the money now being spent in the printing of the thousands of periodicals now current. For it may prove sufficient in the case of very specialised articles to supply the specialists concerned dry-line copies of the original on demand. This is a step in international and national

economy and organisation, into which it is not proper to enter in the present context.

844 MECHANISATION

Another way of saving staff time will be to mechanise every item of impersonal work in a library For example, the design of machinery for literature search has been in full swing since World War II A combination of facet analysis in classification and machinery for search—beginning from punched cards and going to magnetic tape—will save the time of the reader directly also So it will be with the electronic and other mechanical methods of charging and discharging work Ralph Shaw[44] has mechanised other kinds of library routine considerably with the aid of photography This indicates the long vista of work to be done in response to the fourth law But most of the work falls within the province of technologists and managerial experts. The library profession can only state the requirements and indicate the areas where mechanisation will prove useful and also harmless This problem has seen set forth in detail in Ranganathan's *Mechanisation of library service*[45] presented to the First Conference of the Indian Association for Special Libraries and Information Centres, held in Calcutta in 1956

85 Fifth Law and Its Diverse Imports

In 1931 the fifth law—Library is a growing organism—was interpreted only in one sense Chapter 7 of this book brings out the implications of "growth" only in the sense of "Child-Growth"—that is, growth involving steady increase in over-all size. But the term holds also another sense It is "Adult-Growth—that is growth by replacement of constituents without increase in over-all size The double import of the fifth law leads to an important principle in the organisation of a national library system. Two types of libraries are to be recognised viz., conserving library and service library This distinction was seen and applied consciously for the first time only in the *Library book selection* (1953).[47]

851 CONSERVING LIBRARY

In view of the continuous demand of a conserving library for additional building, shelves, and maintenance charges, economy would suggest a limit to the number of such libraries in a country The National Central Library should be a conserving library and it may prove sufficient in a country with a small area. Even in a country with a large area, their number need not exceed half a dozen. There can be no useful purpose except that of local prestige in maintaining two such libraries within sixty miles of each other as in Scotland In a polyglot country like India, it will be necessary to have also a State Central Library in each constituent state for conserving copies of the publications in the state A City or a District Central Library or any other service library such as a University Library should not be entrusted with conserving work except in the case of strictly local collections. When a country decides to have additional conserving national libraries—India has decided upon having three additional ones—it may be economical to have some or all of them in micro films. It may be further wise to have one of them located in a deep underground vault beyond the reach of nuclear vandalism such as the one on Hiroshima. The model library acts given in the *Library development plan* (1950) [***] have provided for most of the above points but, it needs amendment about the micro film deposits or perhaps they may be left to the rule-making powers.

852 SERVICE LIBRARY

A service library will admit of a ceiling in regard to the number of volumes, the number of readers, and the strength of the staff and therefore of the building and fittings. The annual accession and weeding out, because of wearing out by use or of getting outmoded will ultimately balance each other But, it will be the duty of each service library to notify the conserving library concerned of all the items to be weeded out, so that the latter may take action on the salvage and

conservation of a few representative copies of each book A similar procedure should also be carried out at the inter national level This implication of the second import of the fifth law shows that the Quincy Plan mentioned in Section 711 of this book is not inconsistent with the fifth law as it was assumed when only its first import was known.

853 Species Formation a Third Import

A third import of the fifth law is phylogenesis, as distinct from ontogenesis This third import emphasises and explains the formation of specialised libraries specialising in particu lar functions Till now specialisation on the basis of classes of special readers has been observed This has been elabor ately dealt with in the *Preface to library science* [*] Certain functions may get elaborated while others may be dropped or thinned out in some species. The relative weight between conservation and service found in conserving libraries and service libraries is itself an instance Among service libraries, the relative weight between macro documents and micro documents found in libraries, for the generalist and for the specia list is another instance in point. Examples of this kind can be multiplied The perceptible difference in the ceiling for size between one class of service libraries and another is analogous to a similar phenomenon in different phylums in nature This third import of the third law was focussed on the cons cious level by Dr Martin Mullerott of the Bavarian State Library during an excursion arranged for the delegates of the Ifla Conference at Munich in September 1956

854 A Fourth Import

Dr Mullerott brought up also a fourth import of the fifth law It arises out of a fourth attribute of growth seen in a social organism This is best seen in a human family which divides into separate and yet closely related sub-families, for convenience of living and development Analogously monolithic libraries of the past will have to give place to separate and yet closely related libraries, for facilitating effi-

ciency of service, in the changing conditions of society and of the social pressure on library service. This idea needs further pursuit.

855 Farmington Plan

The Farmington Plan formulated in U S A about a decade ago is a step in the reconciliation of these four imports of the fifth law It is a new experiment in the formation of a new species of libraries with a considerable service function and with conserving function midway between those of a National Central Library and a normal City or District Central Library

856 Growth of Class Index Entries

To illustrate the incidence of the light of the fifth law even on the details concerning a library mention may be made of class index libraries in a library catalogue The gamma function rate at which they will grow if entries are made for each of the possible permutations of the terms forming the headings and subheadings was brought out for the first time in the *Theory of library catalogue* [illegible] This led to the invention of Chain Procedure in order to prevent such general entries almost occulting the substantive book entries in the catalogue of a library This has been pointedly elaborated in the *Classification coding and machinery for search* (1950) [illegible] The chain procedure is being applied on a large scale in the BNB ever since it started in 1950 Its editor has stated in his contribution to *Library science in India* (1953),[illegible] "The alphabetic part of the British National Bibliography like the systematic part, owes its success to the theories of Ranganathan on which it is built." The theory of chain procedure has been due to the warning of the fifth law

86 Branches of Library Science

Several of the branches of library science are seen to cohere, when they are viewed in the light of the five laws. Further the development of some of them has itself already entered

into the spiral of scientific method The driving force in them is supplied by canons, specific to each branch and derived from the five laws and certain general laws regulating work in any field, such as the Law of Parsimony and the Law of Impartiality The integral quality of the entire domain, with the focus on the Five Laws at the zenith of the spiral of scientific method is well reflected in the family of about four dozen books of mine The ancestor of this family is the *Five laws of library science* (1931) ** All the books form a single unit Indeed they are like chapters of one huge book They satisfy the test of the *Ekavakyata* Principle of *Mimamsa sastra* the science of exegitics

861 Classification

Classification was the first branch to be taken through the first two quadrants. This pioneering work was done by W C Berwick Sayers in 1918 By a comparative study and collation of the then known schemes of classification, he formulated a set of canons of classification Henry Evelyn Bliss made some valuable contribution to the subject The Colon Classification came later Taking its new features also into consideration and utilising the guiding light of the five laws, the canons were amplified in the *Prolegomena to library classification* (1937) ** They number 33 in edition 2 published in 1957 The *Elements of library classification* (1945)*** formulated the principles by which the Cannon of Helpful Sequence can be satisfied The *Library classification Fundamentals and procedure* (1944)*** developed the concepts of fundamental categories, phase analysis and facet analysis. These have since been amplified by zone analysis and are being studied in detail under the auspices of FID/CA, the Committee on General Theory of Classification set up by the International Federation for Documentation and of the Classification Research Group of Great Britain The work done so far has stimulated the convening of an International Study Conference on Classification for Information Retrieval in England from 13 to 17 May 1957 In a letter of 20 Dec

1956 addressed by the conveners to the Insdoc, the following passage occurs, "This Conference will be a development of all Dr Ranganathan's work in the last twenty years and it will no doubt be a means of spreading interest in his work and appreciation of it It is essential that the Indian Government should receive notice of the Conference." A significant import of this Conference is that classification has reached maturity as a branch science of library science, in which the spiral of scientific method is being actively pursued.

862 Cataloguing

Cataloguing is perhaps the latest branch to follow the spiral of scientific method in its development. For it had all along been treated as a rule-of thumb affair And a catalogue code continued to be an incoherent bundle of rules. The pioneer code to originate from the third quadrant was the one by Cutter (1876). Two later codes shaped in the light of the five laws were the *Classified catalogue code* (1934) and the *Dictionary catalogue code* (1945) The first attempt to base cataloguing on a set of canons, in conformity to the five laws, was made in the *Theory of library catalogue* (1938) This was based on Cutter the first of the codes mentioned above and the Anglo-American Code. A more systematic study corresponding to quadrants 2 and 4 of the spiral of scientific method was made in the *Heading and canons* (1955) An application of the objective scientific method will be found in the comparison of the classified and dictionary catalogues found in the *Library catalogue Fundamentals and procedure* (1950). In 1954 the International Federation of Library Associations entered on the pursuit of cataloguing rules. It is an appeal to that body that it should go beyond the work corresponding to quadrant 2, use the light of the five laws and the canons and enter into work corresponding to quadrant 4

863 Reference Service

Reference service is the primary motive and the culmina

tion of all library practices. Its varieties, the what, why and how of them, the preparation for them the varieties of bibliographical and reference materials needed for their efficient performance, and the organisation of the time of the staff in relation to them—all these are drawn out of the five laws in the *Reference service and bibliography* (1940).[867]

864 Library Administration

To fulfil the exacting demands of the five laws in general and the corollary of the fourth law in particular with due regard to economy in time, money and man-power attention was turned to library administration and to its rationalisation Here again, the light from the five laws was of immense help This will be seen from the *Library administration* (1935).[87] In his thesis for the Fellowship of the (British) Library Association C.A Crossley[487] remarks that "It forms an essay which any librarian who dreams of administrating his own system can profit by reading, and received warm commendation from experts in management on its appearance. Whatever merit it has is derived from the normative quality of the five laws. This is a branch that needs much more of cultivation along scientific lines. Further work of this kind was started in the pages of the *Abgila*[**] and its successor the *Annals of library science*[**] by the collection of empirical data on library man-power S. Ramabhadran has left the work in the middle. But it is worth being pursued and completed.

865 Book Production

Physical bibliography comprehends paper-making, printing, and binding, expounded from the angle of the needs of the library profession But this had been taught in the past in a way not different from the one suited to the technicians in these different arts. Its teaching is not infrequently left to the care of the technicians themselves This had always been revolting to the students of library science. But a method of humanising these subjects and processing it to meet the exact needs of the library profession was made possible only after

the five laws could be used as probes The result of this probing has been embodied in the *Social bibliography* (1952).[illegible] Its first five chapters explore respectively the implications of each of the laws in the field of physical bibliography No less is the message of the five laws to the authors and artists who have to create the thought of the book and carry out its exposition. The implications of the five laws in these aspects of book-science have been recorded in the *Social education literature* (1952)[illegible] Further details in one sector of this subject will be found in the *Literature for neo-literates* (1953).[illegible]

866 BOOK-SELECTION

The very first question raised by the students in the very first school of librarianship visited in my tour of Great Britain in December 1956 was born of the despair felt in learning book-selection. The question was, "Is it possible to derive the principles of book-selection from the five laws" This work on book-selection, corresponding to quadrant 4 of the spiral of scientific method, has been done in *Library book selection* (1952).[87] The very headings of its chapters read "First Law and Book Selection" etc up to "Conflict of Laws."

867 LIBRARY ORGANISATION

The need for linking up all the libraries in a country into a national library grid is a compelling conclusion arising out of an attempt to resolve the conflict between the financial resources and the five laws, and the conflict among the laws themselves. The details in the structure of a national library system, the enumeration of the functions of the national central library its corresponding departments, the functions and structure of the libraries of all other grades, and the outline for the legislation on which the national library system should be based are all deducible systematically from the five laws. This work corresponding to quadrant 4 has been demonstrated in the *Library development plan* (1950),[illegible] *Li-*

brary legislation A handbook to the Madras Library Act (1953), and similar books for the constituent states of Bombay (1947) and Uttar Pradesh (1949) and for the Allahabad University Library (1947). The library development plans for the University of Delhi (1942) the State of Madhya Pradesh (1945), the State of Travancore (1946), the State of Cochin (1946), the State of Madras (1946) the University of Nagpur (1946) the Forest Research Institute Dehra dun (1947) the Institute of Science, Bangalore (1947) the University of Mysore (1947) the University of Bombay (1948), the City of Jaffna, Ceylon (1953) and the Secretariate of the Hyderabad Government (1954), could all be done systematically and without much effort only on account of the deductions furnished by the five laws corresponding to quadrant 4 of the spiral of scientific method and subject to the boundary conditions imposed by the factors prevailing in the respective host-bodies.

868 Popular Epitome

A brief popular epitome of all the implications of the Five Laws at the public library level in a style suited to serve as an easy handbook for the day to-day use of librarians administering and serving in small libraries was published as the *Library manual* (1951) in English and as the *Granthalaya-prakriya* (1951) in Hindi The technical terms used in the latter were selected or coined in consultation with a number of old students with different languages as their respective mother tongues, and in conformity with Ranganathan's *Canons of terminology* worked out for this purpose

87 Teaching and Research

Perhaps the most far reaching effect of the potency of the entrance of the development of library science into the spiral of scientific method will be seen in due course in the areas of teaching and research in the field of that discipline These two areas are well known to feed on each other The glow of contact with growing minds lights

up the path of research in unexpected ways. Reciprocally the experience of active participation of the teacher in research work endows the teaching with a high quality of elevation inspiration and suggestion. The five laws form the common directing factor in teaching as well as research They have humanised teaching and systematised research.

871 Versatility in Teaching Technique

The spiral of scientific method makes teaching technique more versatile than it was in the past. It makes it possible for the needs of different levels of learners to be met with equal efficiency without undue strain It is possible to begin with the concrete and reach the abstract, to suit the lowest level of learners. In other words, teaching can begin in their case with the experiences and the facts corresponding to quadrant 1 and the nadir and then proceed to help the learners to traverse quadrant 2 and get a glimpse of the unifying five laws corresponding to the zenith At the other extreme, it is equally possible to begin with the abstract five laws and deduce the concrete practices in a coherent way In other words, teaching can begin in the case of disciplined learners with the five laws corresponding to the zenith logically work out their implications in the form of library practices, thus traverse quadrant 4 get them verified by actual practical work and observation, and thus traverse quadrant 1 Teaching can also follow any path intermediate between these extremes. These points are being covered in detail in a series of articles on the *Training in library science* *** There is scope for a full fledged book on the subject

8711 Lifting of the Tone of Teaching

As a consequence of library science having picked up the cyclic attribute of a science, there is no more need to teach any branch of it as a bundle of skills, as it was done in the past and alas, is still being done in some schools. There is no particular virtue any longer in picking out unshaven lads and engaging them as juniors at five shillings a week to train them

as apprentices and discharge them into other libraries when they come of age. The transition from the pre-war apprenticeship method of preparing for the professional examination to the modern method of learning the subject as a system of science after coming of age and completing a general course of education is still in process in many places. I have always enjoyed the sense of relief and joy felt by students when they experience a lesson in library science conducted as for a systematic science. The speed of learning becomes great and the comfort in learning becomes greater still. The teachers too feel similarly. This long experience of mine as a teacher was pleasantly confirmed both by the teachers and the taught when I visited the library schools in Great Britain during December 1956 and gave a few lessons in each of them. But I could also sense a feeling of handicap and frustration covering the students as well as some of the teachers, caused by the weight of out moded curriculum and the perpetuation of cram methods imposed by the out moded types of questions figuring in some of the examination papers. The reason for this seems to be that neither curriculum nor the syllabus nor the question papers have the benefit of the health-giving nascence born out of actual teaching work. The courses seem to be controlled largely by those who have never taught and had not even had the benefit of having learned the subject in a school, not to speak of having learnt it as a system of science. Lifting the tone of teaching library science thus suffers from the usual evils of a vicious circle.

8712 Outlook of the New Generation

I have however every confidence that the vicious circle will soon be inevitably cut. This confidence is based on the unmistakable change in the outlook of the new generation of students and teachers alike. This change will get increasingly pronounced as and when those who had gone through the new schools become themselves teachers. Here is an experience confirming this view. When I started my visit to the schools, I was warned that I should not presume a knowledge

on the part of the students, of the five laws, or facet analysis, or chain procedure and I also verified that these ideas did not find a place in the syllabus. But to my surprise, the students of all the schools were not only familiar with these ideas, but invariably asked me to demonstrate some of their advanced applications! This showed two things The teachers have found it useful to teach them and this implied that they preferred to teach the subject as a system of science. The students feel more at home with the higher tone which this way of teaching gives to their own comprehension of the highways and byways of the subject This trend in the new generation cannot be curbed for long.

8713 No Avoidance of Grind

This does not mean that teaching library science as a system of science will eliminate all grind and make the path of learning a path of roses In getting trained for work in libraries there are many tasks of experience, observation and familiarisation with the world of books in general and with the structure and idiosyncracies of reference books and bibliographical tools in particular No student can evade these and these are no less exacting than the tasks in the training for any other profession or in the learning of any other science. The advantage of utilising the versatility in the method of teaching born out of the spiral of scientific method having taken library science into itself is of a different kind, in respect of grind. It throws a leaven on the matter The five laws dower the tasks with a charm They enable the students, living through the tasks with a purposeful cheer Tutorial discussion, based on the experience picked up by the individual performance of the tasks done with such a purposeful cheer and irradiated by the five laws, becomes illuminating. The occasional summing-up-lectures,—tying up all the experience gathered during individually done tasks, on to the five laws and the canons, and indicating further lines of pursuit arising out of them—gain considerably in inspirational value

8714 Experience of Teaching the Subject as a Science

All this is not mere theoretical talk It is based on thirty years of teaching library science What is more, this experience has been well compared with the teaching of mathematics and physics at different levels during the seven years preceding that period The following books have grown out of that experience —

1 Library classification Fundamentals and procedure with 1 008 graded examples and exercises (1944).[m]
2 Elements of library classification (1945)[m]
3 Theory of library catalogue (1938).[m]
4 Library catalogue Fundamentals and procedure with 306 graded examples and exercises (1950).[m]
5 Reference service and bibliography (1940).[m]
6 Library book selection (1952)[m]
7 Social bibliography Physical bibliography for librarians, authors and publishers (1952)[m]

These are all based on actual day to-day work in the class room A perusal of them will show how the five laws turn up at every corner to cheer up and guide the teacher as well as the students The aroma of the five laws will be experienced in every book The coherent and comfortable way in which each subject gets spun out by the omnipresent five laws cannot be missed. S Das Gupta has experienced this both as a student and as a teacher On his return from a library tour of U S A in 1955 he looked back on the standard of teaching of library science reached in the pioneer school of librarianship in India and wrote in the *Annals of library science* " 3 1956 104 Dr S R Ranganathan had turned library education into an intellectual discipline and lifted it above the level of simple skills " His tracing the result to me is really in the measure of his affection for me It should really be traced to the fact that the spiral of scientific method has already seized library science, has disclosed the five laws, and has made possible systematic experiment observation induction of empirical laws, and deduction of every possible

library practice and technique—past, present, and future—as possible in library science as in any other intellectual discipline in the domain of science and that that spiral has vitalised teaching.

8715 A Peer among Scientific Disciplines

Recognition of library science as a science and the teaching of it as a science easily earns for the subject a place equal to any traditional discipline prevailing in universities, such as law economics, political science, or any of the biological or physical sciences. A course in library science, conducted along the lines made possible by the completion of a full cycle of scientific method in its development, secures for the student every general benefit in clear and analytical thinking as any other discipline does. It fits the student to sail on his own steam, not merely in the performance of repetitive work, but also in facing new situations and in contributing to the further development of the subject itself Teaching some of the branches like classification cataloguing, reference service, and organisation, on the basis of the five laws and the specific canons appropriate to each branch, gives a student of library science an unusual insight into the structure and the trend in the development of many domains in the universe of knowledge. The discipline and power of thinking earned by a student of library science makes him a peer of the student of any other discipline Indeed the development of library science as a science in the class-room, with a structure and character of its own makes it truly a peer among the other disciplines, old and new found in a university course.

872 Research in Library Science

During the last one century a few outstanding men of genius had ploughed the field of library science almost in solitude. This has been spasmodic. Occasionally there has also been some group work. Wyndham Hulme told me in 1948 some anecdotes about the attempt at research in library matters at the beginning of the present century He was then

librarian of the Patent Office in London James Duff Brown was a public librarian These two were men with an inner urge for research. They had strayed into the library profession. Their personality attracted a few more towards the re thinking of library techniques. Public opinion was then too cynical to tolerate talk about research in library technique. It was so even among the public of librarians! In deference to this cynicism, the Hulme Brown associates could only circulate their findings " secretly among themselves. They named their formation Anonymous Society " Those days are now fortunately gone

8721 Systematic Research

But no subject can grow fast enough if it depended only on casual work by a few exceptional men Research ought to be systematic and properly organised, if it is to meet the practical demands in the life of to-day Apart from *freedom* from fear of ridicule the pursuit of library science admits of systematic research since its development has entered the spiral of scientific method Mathematical tools of new kinds are being forged to-day for use in quadrants 2 and 4 of the cycle in the development of social sciences. Some areas of library science are amenable for study with the aid of such tools. Operational analysis, for example, can be put to a considerable use in a reliable study of problems in library administration and organisation which have been hitherto exposed to the hazards of individual flair and irrational dogmatisation A few simple problems in classification and cataloguing had been wasting the energy of the all too-few brains available within the profession for original thinking. The fixing of the most helpful sequence of the main classes was one such problem The alternative renderings of a multi-termed subject-heading was another These have now been once for all set at rest with the aid of elementary algebra, in the *Classification and communication*[44] and the *Theory of library catalogue*[44] A couple of years ago the Library Research Circle of Delhi was able to settle the criteria for choice be-

tween octave notation and group notation for a given universe of isolates, with the aid of a transcendental equation. Though this equation does not admit of a formal general solution, it easily yields particular solutions, which are sufficient for our purpose. A detailed account of this will appear in the forthcoming second edition of the *Prolegomena to library classification*[14] Another example Classification can be viewed as a transformation of a space of many dimensions into a space of one dimension. This is exactly similar to the problem of Linear Programming, which is being studied in connection with the newly evolving science of management. Many of the results set forth in this branch of mathematics—*e.g.*, those in the *Introduction to linear programming*[44]—should be of value to the classificationist.

8722 Librametry

With such a vast range of possibilites in view I coined the term "Librametry" in the course of a talk before the Aslib Conference of 1948 at Leamington Spa. This is on the analogy of the terms such as Biometry Psychometry and Econometry It is well-known how application of mathematics to the subjects concerned has itself led to the forging and sharpening of the exact mathematical tools needed in those subjects. Some tools designed for one subject may be applicable to other subjects also This type of tools has been growing in number only during the last few decades. The development of such tools has accelerated the growth of the subjects concerned. Problems which were beyond the reach of objective pursuit have now been brought under precise control. There is no reason why the pursuit of library science with the aid of librametry should not lead us to equally happy results with certitude.

8723 Chain of Unsolved Problems

There is no fear of the field being soon exhausted of problems needing investigation. On the other hand, pursuit of library science during the last few years along scientific lines

has disclosed the appearance of a never-ending chain of unsolved problems. The solution of one set of problems and the sharpening of a technique reveal a host of new problems lying hidden hitherto under the problems solved. For example, in the first edition of the *Prolegomena* (1937) [1] a few unsolved problems were listed. Many of them have since been solved But, these have revealed new problems. The number of new unsolved problems listed in the second edition (1957) contains 45 items. So it is with the list of unsolved problems in cataloguing. *There is also another source* which will supply new problems for pursuit. That is the change in the boundary conditions set by changing social values and demands. This is a never-ending phenomenon Therefore there can be no end to the problems that turn up for systematic research in library science

873 Organisation for Research

Society at large is becoming sensitive to the need for setting up permanent organisations for research in library science We see much evidence of this in USA Business concerns feel the need for this research much more than anybody else The Defence Department feels the need much more than the Civil Departments. But, *the sensitiveness to this need is* spreading rapidly among others too Some Foundations have already established endowed chairs for research in library science The Graduate School of Library Science in the University of Chicago the School of Library Science in the Western Reserve University in Cleveland and the Graduate School of Library Science in the Rutgers University in New Brunswick are examples. A great forward step was taken by the Ford Foundation on 18 September 1956 by setting apart five million dollars to found the Council on Library Resources Inc., to support research in library science. Dr Verner Clapp, who had been working in the Library of Congress for 33 years, has become its first President. Sir Maurice Gwyer formely Chief Justice of India and Vice-Chancellor of the University of Delhi, was the first person in India to have the

vision of the economic value, apart from the intellectual one, of setting up an organisation for research in library science in India. He opened a Department of Library Science for the purpose in the University of Delhi But, after him, there has not been a sufficient appreciation of its value However a new organisation for research in library science has been stimulated by a private endowment to the University of Madras. It is coming into existence in 1957 The scope for such a Research Institute for Library Science and some of the other problems connected with it can be seen from the extracts given in the succeeding sections from a series of memoranda sent by me to that university on the subject.

874 Specialisation of Workers and Sectors for Research

1 The functions of the professor should be to conduct research, to guide others in research, and to teach the MLibSc (Master of Library Science) class. The functions of the readers and the lecturers should be to conduct research and to teach both the MLibSc and the BLibSc classes. Exchange of teachers with other countries for short periods should be arranged at suitable intervals Research students should be attached to each teacher

2 As far as possible the teachers should specialise in different regions of the subject. For the time being, this should be arranged informally It will take some years before we shall be able to earmark particular posts for particular subjects in a formal way Some of the major regions that may be recognised for this purpose for the time being are—

21 Classification including general theory and the design ing of depth classification

22 Catalogue, including general theory construction of documentation lists and abstracting periodicals, and catalo guing of non-conventional documents

23 Machinery for literature-search and other kinds of mechanisation in library work

24 National library system, including comparative library legislation and other problems in organisation and administration and

25 Reference service including book-science and standards and readability for different intellectual strata degrees of literacy and age groups.

3 The staff should be provided facilities for field work in their respective regions of specialisation Here is an illustration —

31 Those specialising in the first three of the regions mentioned above should spend short periods, from time to time, in observing industrial processes and studying the documentation needs of workers in institutes devoted to industrial or fundamental research in the natural and the social sciences including the work of departments of administration

32 Those specialising in the last two of the regions mentioned above should do field-work in public libraries and academic libraries They should also work with and observe neo-literates of various grades.

33 Those specialising in depth classification should work in close contact with the departments of the university in the conventional subjects of research.

4 There should be a periodical exchange between the teachers of library science and practising librarians in industrial academic, and public libraries. This is essential to make the research of the department of value to the community

5 The sectors for research are implicit in the list of regions for specialisation

875 Relation with Industries and other Organisation

8751 Industries

Steps should be taken to associate the industries in the country with the work of the Institute of Library Science. Industries should be persuaded to utilise its service in the matter of documentation The Institute should take up special

projects of research in consultation with the industries. Apical industrial organisations such as Textile Research Institutes Chambers of Commerce and similar state and national organisations, and even large industrial houses like the Tatas, should be persuaded to maintain research studentships and fellowships in the Institute, either to pursue specific problems proposed by them or to do fundamental research. The Institute should seize problems arising in the day-to-day work of practising documentalists. For this, it should be in close touch with the factories, industrial research institutes, and departments of administration.

8752 Insdoc

The Insdoc should be used as an extra-mural laboratory for depth classification. This will lead to reciprocal advantage. It is difficult for the same man to bring out the weekly documentation lists and at the same time sit back now and then to think over the fundamentals of the documentation work to solve the problems arising from time to time. He can only spot out the fundamental problems needing investigation. The investigation itself should be left to the care of the research staff of the Institute. For the same reason, the Institute itself should not take up the work of producing documentation lists.

8753 Indian Standards Institution

The advantages of standardisation are now universally recognised. The Indian Standards Institution can only provide the forum for standardisation. The preliminary draft standard on any matter should be put up by the practitioners concerned. All the investigations, experiments, and studies on which the draft should be based are also the concern of the practitioners. The standards body takes up the matter only after this stage. It then arranges to convene meetings to consider the draft collects opinions, consolidates them for consideration at a meeting and finally publishes the established standard. The Institute should take a leading part in the establishment of

tandards on all matters pertaining to library science and practice and to bring them up-to-date periodically

876 Relation with State and National Bibliographies

The State Central Library and the National Central Library where the State and the National Bibliographies are prepared, should be used as extra mural laboratories for problems in cataloguing The book trade will be, consciously or unconsciously introducing changes in physical bibliography Some of them may transcend the capacity of the current catalogue code in spite of the full use of exegetics in interpreting the rules. The need for new rules should be established and new rules should be framed by the Institute. Again there is a constant decrease in the extension and a corresponding increase in the intension of the books and other documents being produced as a result of research out put This creates new problems for investigation in the construction of subject headings, by chain procedure or by other methods suited to retrieval Without the stimulus of facing real occurrences in the world of books, research in cataloguing cannot make much progress. Apart from the ever recurring problems, which the State and national central bibliographies will bring to notice from time to time, there is also the immediate problem of the study of the structure of names in the different parts of India and the framing of fool proof rules for rendering them in cataloguing headings In this work also the libraries mentioned above will serve as laboratories.

877 Status and Salary Scale

Casual, discontinuous research and teaching will be possible in library science, as in any other subject even in the absence of the profession being vouchsafed an attractive status and salary scale For sheer inexorable, inner force will push an exceptional man of genius into them. Salary and status are not necessary either to lure him into the work or

to retain him in it. Even if they fall on him unsought they sit on him quite lightly The pioneer librarian, Melvil Dewey was such a man of genius. Sheer inner force led him to lay the foundations for library science He even left a salaried position prematurely when lesser men turned envy and jealousy on him. In his lectures in the University of Madras in 1928, Sir C V Raman told the story of a young man who later became a renowned physicist. The young man travelled with his family all the way to Calcutta, a distance of more than a thousand miles from his home and lived there in a hovel on a pittance of not more than Rs. 40 a month. When the mathematical genius, S Ramanujan, was offered a salary of Rs. 500 a month by the University of Madras when he was still living in a nursing home in England fighting tuberculosis, he wrote back, "I feel that the total amount of money to which I shall be entitled will be much more than I shall require I should hope that £50 a year will be paid to my parents and that the surplus, after my necessary expenses are met, should be used for some educational purpose such in particular as the reduction of school fees for poor boys and orphans and provision of books in schools."[344] But systematic, continuous research and high order of teaching will be possible in library science as in any other subject, *only if the profession is vouchsafed* an attractive status and salary scale Then only can a research team which will have to include many men quite able but without the inexorable urge of a genius, be formed and maintained without break

8771 Practising Librarian

In USA the profession of practising librarians is already having a good status and salary scale. In Great Britain, the Library Association is exercising a great vigilance over the status and salary scale of every library post in the country as the pages of the *Library Association record* show In the other countries of the West too conditions are steadily improving. But it is not yet so in India The University of Madras

was the first body to create a library post with an attractive status and salary scale For many years, it was the only one of the kind barring the post of the librarian of the Imperial Library which was originally intended for a foreign-born By *personal influence it was possible to lift* the post of the librarian in two other universities to a slightly higher level but regression soon set in by the accident of the first incumbent with the higher salary having proved to be of no worth or even of loyalty to the profession s ideals After much correspondence, it was possible to persuade the Pay Commission of 1946 to give a proper status and salary scale to the librarians employed by the Government of India After years of persuasion five more universities have done justice to their library posts. There are 27 universities still keeping out The situation is even worse in public libraries The Madras Library Association succeeded in 1929 to secure a proper status and salary scale for the post of the librarian of the Connemera Public Library But no further progress has yet been possible In spite of the Public Library Act the District Librarians of the States of Madras and Andhra Pradesh are kept only on a miserable scale of salary Their miserly status prevents the Government from making them Secretaries of the District Library Authorities and the District Educational Officers are asked to function as Secretaries! The following *Memorandum*** extracted from the Report for 1955 of the Madras Library Association will show the struggle still going on in the matter

"On 9 April 1955 Dr S R Ranganathan had a discussion with the Hon'ble Sri C Subramaniam, Minister for Finance and Education on the working of the Madras Public Libraries Act. The following is a brief summary of the points covered by this discussion The post of the Special Officer for Libraries should be transferred from the Department of Public Instruction to the Department of Public Libraries The Director of Libraries should have the privileges of the Head of a Department The District Librarian should be made the *secretary of the Local Library Authority He can then be* given more powers than now The salary scale and status of

a District Librarian should be similar to those of any other District Officer The extent to which the objects of the Library Act can be realized will depend on the personality of the District Librarians and of the Director of Libraries. Proper persons can be secured only if their status and salary are comparable to those of District Officers and Heads of Departments respectively " It was learnt since then that the Minister was in favour of this proposal but that curiously resistance came from a predatory within the profession. It is hoped that such opposition will not unduly delay the advent of better days for the practising librarian all the country over

8772 Teaching and Research Librarian

USA was perhaps the first country to provide full-timed posts to teach library science. Recently it has also provided posts for research in library science Great Britain provided a few full-timed teaching posts in about a dozen library schools after World War II, for the benefit of aspirants to the profession returning from war-duty The value of having full timed teachers and full-timed students was brought home by this arrangement. Therefore the schools have come to stay But they are attached largely to Schools of Commerce and Polytechnics, which seem to have the tradition of making it obligatory for a teacher to teach for more than twenty hours in a week. This reduces the position of teachers of library science to that of elementary school teachers. Little time could be found for meditation on the subject and research In fact all the wealth of experience and promptings for research, got by contact with growing minds in the class room have largely to run to waste. One remedy for this evil will be the transfer of the library schools to universities, where the tradition of intertwining teaching and research has produced excellent results. In the other countries of the West also there is, generally speaking, some provision for full timed teaching posts, but little for full-timed research or research *cum* teaching posts. In India, teaching of library science was begun in the City of Madras as early as 1929 as stated in Section 1727 of this

book. By now there is provision for teaching in eight other universities But it is all left to the part time care of practising librarians, mostly without even any extra remuneration for this extra work. Research in library science can hardly be possible in such circumstances, unless the inner force of an exceptional man pulls him towards it As stated in Section 873 the University of Delhi was the first to allow for a short span of years at least, a retired librarian to indulge himself in full-timed teaching *cum* research But this is not sufficient for systematic continuous research and higher teaching It is hoped that the Sarada Ranganathan Chair of Library Science being established in the University of Madras under the Endowment mentioned in Section 873 will give a new character to research and teaching.

8773 National Professor of Library Science

India s renascence of to-day is helping her to value research She has begun to take interest in recognising any research done in any field within the country For example the Government of India has been impressed by the place India gained in the international world of physics by the brilliance and the quantity of output of research in physics, against all odds, even in the pre independence days. It has shown its appreciation of this by the appointment of a National Professor of Physics, and providing for research students to work with him This gesture is of great value in inducing a few gifted young persons to prefer the career of research *cum* teaching in the field of physics to being sacrificed in the net of red-tape as the only means of getting a higher status and salary scale It is now widely acknowledged that Providence has helped India to gain a place in the international world of library science by her original contributions to the subject, against all odds, even in the pre-independence days—contributions which are now being used as the basis for further research and for better teaching in foreign countries and in the international level Witness for example the passage quoted in Section 861 The momentum thus gained should not

be allowed to slacken Discontinuity should not be allowed to set in in the march of research in library science in India. A few gifted young persons should feel induced to prefer the career of research *cum* teaching in the field of library science to being sacrificed in the net of red-tape as the only means of getting a higher status and salary scale The Government of India has a responsibility in this matter It should extend its gesture to library science by appointing a National Professor of Library Science and providing for research students to work with him This is necessary even in the interests of the economic development of the country and to avoid wastage in research-man-hour in other fields as shown in Section 831

878 Wish Over Wish

8781 Fulfilment of Old Wish

In relation to the establishment of the School of Library Science in Madras in 1929 Section 1727 of the 1931 edition of this book had expressed the wish, "May that seedling grow from more to more! And may its harvest of fruits enrich the land from the Himalayas to the Cape Comorin!" That wish has now been fully realised Its old students are now heads of many libraries in India and one of them even outside our country Some of them have established Schools of Library Science in their respective libraries. The chain phenomenon is in full play Persons trained in the Madras School and other schools run by its old students are now scattered all through the country from Dehra Dun and Nepal in the Himalayan region down to Tinnevelly and Trivandrum in the Kanya Kumari region

8782 A New Wish Now

Sincere thanks go to Providence for the fulfilment of that old wish. Now twenty-five years later the second edition of the self-same book synchronises with the founding of a full timed Chair of Library Science with provision for full-timed Research Fellows. On this occasion the prayer to Providence

takes this form "May the new Institute of Library Science take the foundations of library science deeper and make it fit to keep step with every change in the social service demanded of it! May the Sarada Ranganathan Professorship in library science irradiate the field!! And may research workers come to it from all lands and enrich the world from end to end!!!"

88 March of Digvijaya

Chapter 3 entitled Second Law and Its Digvijaya" is virtually a rapid history of library movement in different countries. It is brought up to the time of the first edition viz., 1931 During the last twenty five years, library movement has made an enormous progress in those countries and has taken shape in some new countries too To trace its history in detail will require far more space than this book can spare, and far more effort than I can spare. The library happenings in the world are now so many that a separate volume should be set apart for them and that a person should devote several months, if not years, to collect all the necessary data for writing that volume

881 Increase in Quality and Variety

The salient new trends observed a few years ago have been described in the *Library tour 1948 Europe and America*[14] It deals only with changes in the quality and developments in the variety of library service Most of these are in consonance with the implications of the Five Laws. As stated in Section 83 and its subsections, the main character of the new trends is traceable to the shift of emphasis from macro thought embodied in whole books and volumes of periodicals to micro thought embodied in articles in periodicals and in sections and paragraphs of books.

882 Increase in Quantity

The following data are typical of the quantitative increase of library service in some of the countries of the West. They pertain to England and Wales The people accepting library

service and actively reading books belonging to public libraries rose from 15% of the population in 1931 to 64% in 1956. Of this, about 10% is now accounted for by book service to centres of adult education. It also presumes that, at present, a book borrowed from a public library is read at least by two members in the family. In the village of Bakewell, the number of library users is nearly 90%. There is now rate-supported library service available to every town, village, and hamlet except Mountainash, a mining town in Wales. It alone still prefers to rely solely on the local Mining Institute Library. The issue of fiction fell down from 70% in 1931 to 40% in 1956. This is largely traceable to the interest in ever-changing know how books under the pressure of progress in technology. The advent of automation is likely to intensify this change in the quality of books read. In Nottinghamshire, which is highly industrialised and urbanised, the annual book issue rose from 800,000 in 1935 to 4,000 000 in 1956. In Northumberland, which is highly hilly and rural, the annual issue rose from 500 000 in 1935 to 1,500,000 in 1956. In Nottinghamshire, the annual book fund rose from Rs. 30,000 in 1935 to Rs. 600,000 in 1956. In Northumberland, the annual book fund rose from Rs. 12,000 in 1935 to Rs 300,000 in 1956. The number of volumes available for free use in libraries rose from 15,000,000 in 1915 to 40,000,000 in 1956.

883 Transformation

The development of library service in post war Germany is typical of certain kinds of transformation in some countries of the West. In the first place, greater attention is being paid to library service to the common man, as against the scholar. The People's Library Association is gaining in influence. The 1956 Conference of this Association was held in Berlin side by side with the Conference of the German Library Association which is predominantly an Association for scholarly libraries. Attending both and addressing both I could see the transformation coming over Germany in this respect. In that conference there was also evidence of the great impact of

American ideas in librarianship A whole session was devoted to open access and the problems associated with it Library architecture also is undergoing transformation as a consequence A pleasant surprise is worth recording on account of its relation to the mention of W Hofmann in the first edition in Section 3515 I was addressing the Conference of the People s Library Association The subject was *Cheque book of five leaves for libraries*[811] I paid a tribute to Hofmann s work in the cause of People s Libraries and referred to my *correspondence with him thirty years earlier* At the end of the talk, the son of Hofmann came out from the audience and announced himself to me He himself is working in the People s Library at Stuttgart When I visited his library later he showed me the first volume of the biography of his father and said that the correspondence with me was still in the family archives for being fed into the second volume.

884 Conquest of New Regions

The Digvijaya of the Second Law has made considerable progress into the continents of South America and Africa and into the countries in Western and South Eastern Asia Active Library Associations have come into existence in many countries in these regions. Library consciousness is developing among the people of these regions at a rapid rate. The basic cause for this is the recovery from centuries of cultural exhaustion and political subservience. Another cause is traceable to the influence of the library service given by the British Council and the United States Information-Service This is disclosing to the governments of the countries concerned the great book-hunger of the people entering into renascence

885 India

In India in general, the political independence gained on 15 August 1947 has provided facilities and freedom to accelerate the *Digvijaya* of the Second Law An Indian Library Association was formed in October 1933 It is essentially an Association of the members of the library profession. There

are now State Library Associations in practically every constituent State. These will have to be soon realigned to fit in with the formation of linguistic States in November 1956 The State Library Associations are made up mostly of the general public They have therefore great potentiality to facilitate the march of the Second Law The adult education centres, established by the Municipality of Delhi in various parts of the city brought prominently to view the hitherto unnoticed book hunger of the common man including the illiterates. These centres were established from 1948 onwards. This led to the acceptance of Unesco-help to establish a pilot library project in Delhi This has demonstrated the persistence of desire to read to be found among the common people The same phenomenon was seen by me all over the country—in cities as well as villages. The intensity of book hunger is so great in some places that the people have voluntarily established library service. Of course, they could not know that such voluntary efforts have many handicaps and may not last long. The libraries in towns are beginning to give better service, as the 500 and odd librarians trained in university library schools and the still larger number trained in the shorter courses conducted by the various State Library Associations have begun to fill the places in them.

8851 Madras State

Madras made library history in India by the adoption of the Public Library Act in 1948 The story of this Act is fully told in *Library legislation Handbook to the Madras Library Act* (1953)[591] It is enough to state here that it was due not a little to the two decades of persistent effort of the Madras Library Association to make the public of the state library conscious and to the demonstration inherent in the state wide almost aggressive, library service given by the Madras University Library during the same two decades. A second fact to be stated is that the stage of teething trouble is now over It had lasted much shorter than in the countries which started library legislation before World War II The library rate

started collection even in 1949 and was continued all through the period of teething trouble During this period the Government also had been giving its statutory grant on a rupee-for rupee basis. The forced accumulation of these funds in the earlier years is now seving a useful purpose By the end of 1955 each of the 13 Districts of the residual Madras State had established its Central Library Among themselves, they now have 202 branch libraries in towns and 260 delivery stations in villages. In the financial year 1954-55 the library rates brought Rs. 5¼ lakhs. In addition to giving an equal sum of Statutory grant, the Government of Madras gave Rs. 36,000 to Aided Libraries and spent Rs. 60 000 on the State Central Library Further the Community Project *Department gave a grant of Rs. 1¼ lakhs for library service* in seven areas. The following further extracts from the *Memorandum*[19] given by me to the Minister for Education and Finance on 9 April 1955 indicate the possible trends in future policy It would add to considerable efficiency if the Government uses its contribution to the maintenance of the library staff and the proceeds of the library cess are spent entirely on the other items of library expenditure. There are analogies to this proposal in other departments such as Medicine and Public Health

"The classification and cataloguing of the books published within the state and also most of common foreign books taken by the District Library Systems should be done at the State Central Library This library should supply printed catalogue cards to the District Library Systems. The staff of these systems will have thus little work to do "behind the screen." Their time can be spent mostly in direct service to readers

"The State Central Library should be

1 a reservoir library from which any service library in the state can borrow for local use and
2 only a reference library to those who visit it Even the residents of the City of Madras should draw books from it only through a local service-library

"The State Library Committee should deal only with general principles of policy

"The censorship clauses in the rules for the grant to aided libraries should be removed In a democracy censoring of books should not be delegated by the Government to any lower authority particularly to a library Every citizen is entitled to get from or through his library any book allowed to be published within the State or to be brought into the State and not banned by the Government.

"Book-selection should be severely a local affair Neither the State Library Committee nor the Director of Libraries should interfere in the matter The State Library Committee may ask the Director of Libraries to publish periodically an annotated book-selection list for the use of the District Library Systems.

"The copyright list should be prepared and published according to the latest professional standard. It should consist of a classified main part and an alphabetical index.

"Centralised purchase of books and centralised binding may not work satisfactorily But some saving of cost may be effected by some co-operative effort in these matters.

"The existing rules need amendments but there is no urgency to amend the Act"

8852 Other States of South India

When Andhra Desa was formed, it took the Madras Library Act with it. It has also worked it with zeal The State of Hyderabad had its Public Libraries Act in 1955 This has now been split up and the parts have been amalgamated with the neighbouring States. This redistribution of the areas of the State has a possible good import in respect of public library provision. This is brought out by the following extract from my *Message*[**] to the Third or the Swan-song Conference convened by the Hyderabad Library Association during August 1956. "It had been given to me to play some part in the library legislation of Madras and Hyderabad After the Library Act came into force, Madras was bifurca-

ted, the Andhra Desa took the Library Act with it. It is working it with interest. The residual Madras State is again getting divided It is now contributing Malabar to Kerala and South Kanara to Karnataka. But these districts form only a fraction of their new States. Will they too carry the Madras Act with them? Will Kerala and Karnataka adopt the Act brought by their tributaries?

"After its Library Act came into force Hyderabad is being trifurcated. There will be no difficulty in amalgamating into a single Act for Andhra Pradesh the Hyderabad Act brought by Telengana and the Madras Act brought by Andhra Desa

"The position in Maharashtra will be different. Will it adopt the Hyderabad Library Act being brought in by Marathawada? The partner from the old Bombay State has been brought up in a different library tradition. Its host State had believed that library service could be developed by a mere executive action without a special Library Act. It had also believed that library finance could be based on annual voluntary subscription by those who wish to read. As early as 1948, I had occasion to warn the Education Minister of Bombay about the futility of such beliefs The vicissitudes in the library affairs of the Bombay State during the last eight years have amply demonstrated that futility I wish that Maharashtra accepts from Marathawada this gift of a Library Act.

"Karnataka should feel the pressure of a similar gift even more It is being formed of four constituents. South Kanara will bring the Madras Act with it The Kannada area of Hyderabad will bring the Hyderabad Act with it. The Kannada area of Bombay will bring the futile tradition of Bombay As for the old Mysore, it is virgin soil for library legislation. But adult education has progressed well and fostered library-consciousness. The least that should be done is for the areas who bring Library Acts with them to continue to work them The best that can be done is for the enlarged Karnataka, as a whole to adopt the amalgamated Act.

"In Kerala Malabar which will be a big partner brings the Madras Act with it. Both the other partners—Travancore and Cochin—had considered Library Bills drafted by me for them about nine years ago Moreover their Library Associations had been very active. There has also been a Kerala Library Association, in anticipation of the present amalgamation, which can put its weight on the side of Malabar's Act being adopted by the new Kerala State If these wishes become a reality five of the fifteen States of India will have Library Acts, to put their library service on firm foundations. These five States will cover the whole of South India This will be a source of inspiration for the other ten States to proceed with library legislation.

8853 Other States of India

But the delay of library legislation in the other States of India has now brought a new cause of confusion Though library is a State Subject according to the Indian Constitution, the Government of India has powers of co-ordination. A second factor is the scheme of Community Projects and National Development Plan, which are virtually controlled by the Government of India. But the Central Government cannot be in touch with the requirements of library service, which is really a local affair That is the reason for the makers of the Constitution having put it in the State List. This is liable to be forgotten by the Centre Here, a third factor comes in. The tax pattern of the country as a whole puts more revenue in the hands of the Centre this is a measure of abundant caution for the Centre to discharge its defence responsibilities in case of foreign aggression. In peace-time, however the surplus money has to be given back to the States. Though the money comes from the people living in the States, this unavoidable financial arrangement produces a double illusion. It makes the Centre look upon itself as a patron and the States also share this illusion. The result is the tendency to the acceptance by the States of dictation from the Centre in library matters, among others. There

is naturally a desire on the part of the Centre to make library service everywhere to depend on itself. The result is the usual phenomenon of the bureaucracy at a distant centre. There is also a fourth factor to make matters worse. The country is now helped by some foreign sources in working out the National Development Plan. It leads to an illusion that makes one forget that this source will not be there for all time and that a local service, like library service cannot be enduring and receive hearty acceptance unless the Local Body concerned raises some at least of the library fund by local rate.

8854 Side tracking and Delay

The four factors mentioned above are putting the State Governments off the track and delaying library legislation in the States not having them already. In view of the delay in putting the library service of each State on a proper legislative basis and thereby ensuring unbroken continuity of funds, one cannot help seeing anything more than a well-meant wish in a statement like the following put up by the bureaucracy for a Ministerial Announcement of programme: "Out of the 320 and odd districts of India 100 have either already set up circulating libraries or are in the process of doing so. The programme that we have drawn up will ensure that by March 1961 there will be no district without its own District Library and circulating service."

8855 Full Fledged Library Personality

A picture of the ultimate full fledged library personality of India was drawn up in the *Library development plan* (1950)*. It was given as the goal to be reached by 1980. For reaching that goal and maintaining it thereafter without any deterioration in quantity or quality it is necessary for each constituent State and the Central Government to put a Library Act on their respective statute books—the necessary drafts are given in Sections 42 and 43 of this book. There is every hope that this will soon be done. For the difficulties of the kind mentioned in Sections 8653 and 8654 will be warded off in due

course, as informed public opinion and vigilance develop, safeguard democracy from the dangers of being swamped by bureaucracy and bring about a pattern of life in which democracy and bureaucracy can do their best for the true and lasting benefit of the people. As modified by the re-drawing of the political map of India and the full realisation of the formation of linguistic States in the near future, the library system of India will be made up as follows—apart from the university college, school and other academic libraries, and industrial commercial departmental, and other business libraries.

14 000 Travelling Library Units serving the 80,000 villages and 600,000 hamlets once in a fortnight

2,500 Rural Branch Libraries serving the towns with population between 5 000 and 50 000

360 Rural Central Libraries in the headquarters of the Districts

200 City Central Libraries in the cities with a population of 50 000 or more

2,500 City Branch Libraries in the Cities

15 State Central Libraries located in the capitals of the constituent States

1 National Central Library located in the capital of India

May India develop this full-fledged Library Personality before 1980!

886 Danger of Money Sieve

The Digvijaya of the Second Law has to depend as much on money as any other world-conquest. The money has ultimately to come from the people. The perennial channels for the flow of money are provided by the tax-system of a country. Local rate, State tax, and also Federal tax in the larger countries, are the usual channels. The proportion in which these three channels bring in money for the Digvijaya of the Second Law is determined by the tax-pattern of the country. This tax-pattern varies from country to country and from time to time in one and the same country. In the past, Great Britain allowed only the channel of local rate to feed

libraries. But, the last Labour Government felt that this was proving inadequate in the present-day tax-pattern. The Library Association also felt the same way A library bill, to authorise the opening of the channel of Government grant had however to be postponed for various political reasons In USA after a decade of systematic lobbying by the American Library Association with the help of a special establishment for the purpose in the Capitol Buildings themselves, a Federal Library Act came into force in 1956 providing for the opening of the channel of Federal grant The Model Library Acts in Sections 42 and 43 of this book provide for the flow of money to the Second Law through all the three channels While seeking the keeping open of all the three channels, the Second Law insists that no strings should be attached to the money packets coming through the channels of State and Federal grants. Vigilant public opinion has secured this safeguard for the Second Law in USA. It will do so in India too Perhaps as stated in section 8653 the safeguard has not yet assumed sufficient vigour But there is no reason to doubt that it will establish itself in due course—by the time the Library Acts are put on the statute book Perhaps, an even greater concern of the Second Law is that no money-sieve develops between the reader and his book. It insists that payment for library service should be made by every citizen only through the medium of rates and taxes—that is, in the measure of his taxable capacity whether *he himself has occasion to take the service or not,* but never at so much money for so much book-service or information service, or bibliographical service In this view for example the charge for bibliographical service provided in the rules of the Insdoc is repugnant to the Second Law The danger of frivolous demand for bibliographical service alleged as the reason for the money sieve should be met by other means. The Select Committee introduced in the Madras *Library Act a provision which can be abused by a Library* Authority to charge subscriptions from readers. This had happened when I was away from the country However on

my pointing out this fault, the Minister for Education agreed to make it clear in the Rules framed under the Act, that no such subscription should be levied The Rules have been framed accordingly

887 Library Magna Carta

A more serious threat came to the Second Law in this matter from a very influential library the Library of the United Nations, in 1948 It had proposed the institution of "Contract Services" with other libraries, according to which any library may be paid by the United Nations for the use of its holdings. As a member of the Inter national Advisory Committee of Library Experts of the United Nations, I felt alarmed at this proposal brought up for the approval of the Committee. I suggested the amendment of "contract services with consultants" in the place of "contract services with libraries." The amended proposition read "The UN Library may whenever it is necessary or expedient, secure contractual services by entering into contracts with *ad hoc* consultants for collecting reference and bibliographical data on specific subjects from the resources of other libraries." The following text of my speech on that occasion is worth quoting —

"The consideration for the contractual service will have to be monetary But it is essential that no occasion should be created for any library to give its service to any individual—personal or corporate—on the basis of so much money for so much service The Anglo-American world for example has succeeded after a century's arduous thinking and living in this matter in setting up the principle that service of a library should be free This, I regard as the Library Magna Carta, for which the world is indebted to Anglo-American countries. I know how difficult it is even now in some other countries in Europe and Asia to shake off what may be described as the old, old tradition of inserting a money sieve between the resources of a library and its potential consumers. Indeed, human nature seems to have a heavy gravitation towards every kind of tradition which brings in bargain of

one kind or another This Committee must be extremely on the alert to see that no element in the policy it recommends puts the unique UN Library in a position that may be interpreted as helping perpetuation of that gravitation, directly or obliquely and knowingly or unknowingly

Perhaps this gravitation has been eliminated for so long in the Anglo-American nations that they even fail to recognise it when it appears in a slightly disguised form But the library profession practising in other countries is daily coming up against it. And it is very apprehensive of the repercussion of contracts with libraries on *ad hoc* monetary basis on the fate of the Library Magna Carta in the world at large. It will set the the clock back. This must be avoided I would appeal to this Committee of Library Experts to resist out right whenever the service for payment spirit begins to appear among libraries in an apparently innocent form

"The formula set forth in the first paragraph of this memorandum appears to my mind to give freedom to the UN Library to secure *ad hoc* hands to explore materials in other libraries without any violence to the Library Magna Carta It will give freedom to employ part time consultants. As such consultants will be able men in the library profession they can dig into the resources of any library without causing undue additional strain on its staff Indeed in some cases the consultants may even be part time men working in the library being explored. All that the UN may have to pay for to the library occasionally will be for the reservation of a room for the secretary of the consultant, if it is found absolutely necessary Even here, it is possible for the contract with the consultant to cover such rents for office room, so that he pays the library out of what he gets from the UN instead of money passing directly from the UN to the library even in this extreme form.

Incidentally this formula also provides against political and emotional prejudice that may possibly be induced in the constituents of the UN if the dressing of the intellectual pabulum needed for it is left in the hands of an employee of

another library who has neither official nor contractual relation with the UN

"This formula will invest the UN Library with full capacity to draw from the lump sum provided in the UN budget for contractual services not involving permanent addition to the staff."

Indeed every member of the library profession, every library and every member of the public owes a duty to the Second Law in keeping the greatest possible vigilance necessary to prevent the insertion of any kind of visible or invisible money-sieve between the documents in a library and their seekers, and to protect the Library Magna Carta in its letter and in its spirit.

888 Unesco

The greatest event in the library world, since World War II is the establishment of the Division of Libraries in Unesco an auxiliary of the United Nations to promote educational, scientific, and cultural matters in the world Though library service pervades all the three main spheres of Unesco the Division of Libraries is, for administrative purposes, attached to the Cutural Wing. Since its formation in 1946, the Division of Libraries has been doing its best to be a powerful ally of all the Laws of Library Science. It is exercising its powers of influencing to persuade the governments of the member nations to organise a net of public libraries in their respective areas and for this purpose, to put on their respective statute books comprehensive Library Acts. It has been running public library projects in different regions of the world for demonstrating the book-hunger in the people and the use of a free library service It helps the translation of the classics of every nation into the languages of other nations. It is exercising its influence on the production of international abstracting and other bibliographical periodicals and serials, so that overlapping may be eliminated and no field of knowledge may be left uncovered. For this purpose, it arranges for factual surveys of existing materials in the field It is

helping the establishment of national documentation centres in several countries It provides or promotes facilities for study tours by librarians. It is beginning to wield some influence over the international non-governmental bodies, such as the Ifla and the Fid and to promote some degree of inter national standards in library techniques. It is also endeavour ing to promote copyright deposits, national bibliographies and international exchange and loan of documents. There is immense scope for the activities of Unesco to help the establishment of the continuous sway of the Five Laws of Library Science over the entire world.

APPENDIX 1

SPECIFICATION FOR A TEAK WOOD BOOK RACK

(*See p 332 for Illustration*)

The standard unit-rack designed by me for the Madras University Library in 1926 has two faces. Each face has two bays, so that the unit rack is a four-bayed rack—two bays on each side. While the height may be 7 ft. in adult libraries, it should not exceed 5 ft. in children s libraries.

The detailed dimensions and specification for an adult library unit are as follows —

1 External dimensions 6 6 × 1 6 × 7

2 Three uprights, each 2" × 1 6" × 7'

3 Seven shelf planks for each bay each 3 × 8½ × 1

Two of the shelf planks are to be fixed ones—one near the top and the other near the bottom The other five are to be movable ones supported by Tonk s fittings, so that they can be adjusted to an inch. It may be an advantage to provide four spare shelf planks for each unit.

4 The book-rack is to have sanitary bottom, *i.e.*, the lowest shelf-plank is to be fixed at a height of 6 ins. from the floor to facilitate cleaning the floor beneath the rack and easy vigilance. The topmost shelf plank is to be fixed 6 ins. below the top of the uprights.

5 To prevent the books on the shelves in one face getting mixed up with the books on the corresponding shelves in the other face a weld mesh or other partition is to separate the two faces. It is to accommodate its frame that the planks are made only 8½ inches broad thus leaving a gap of 1 inch in the centre of the rack. The weld mesh or other partition is to begin only from a height of 6 inches from the lowest fixed shelf plank and go right up to the lower side of the upper most fixed shelf-plank. The advantage in beginning it only from a height of 6 inches from the lowermost shelf-plank is that giant folios, which are more than a foot broad can be made to lie flat, on the bottommost fixed shelf-planks.

extending from one face to the other If the weld-mesh is of steel and not of brass, it should be coated with an anti-corrosive paint.

6 The front edge of each shelf plank is to have a wedge-shaped groove cut in it, to hold the shelf-cards If the groove is carefully cut the shelf-cards can be easily slided from end to end as the books are necessarily moved in course of time

7 The three uprights are bound together by the four pairs of fixed shelf-planks It would be an advantage to reinforce this by means of two steel tie rods binding them together one at a height of 2½ft. from the bottom and the other at a depth of 2½ ft. from the top To accommodate these rods it may be necessary to make the weld mesh partition in three parts, the rods running between the frames of the parts.

8 It may be convenient to fix spring blind-holders to each bay to hold maps. At least two maps can be accommodated in front of each bay The maps are to be normally in the rolled up position. Whenever necessary they are to be pulled out for reference and then released so as to roll up

9 The teak wood used should be well-seasoned and the contractor should make good any crack that it may develop within a year of supply

10 The length of all the shelf planks should be quite accurate so that they can be interchanged without any restriction

This unit rack requires about 10 cft of teak wood It has 84 running ft. of shelf-space It can accommodate, on an average 1 000 volumes. When full of books, it will weigh about 1 ton.



UNIT BOOK RACK WITH ADJUSTABLE SHELVES, BAY-GUIDES AND SHELF-GUIDES

this frame-work to be out of 3 inches by 1¼ inches two members will be 6 feet long, while the other three will be 4 feet long.

4 A double faced gallery to be inserted in the gap between the two table-top planks. The gallery to be in two units each with overall dimensions approximately 3 feet wide and 2 feet deep at the bottom tapering to 6 inches deep at the top and 2 feet 10½ inches in height Each face of the gallery to have six steps sloping inwards to accommodate periodicals. The lowest step to be 6 inches below the table top plank. Spring steel-curtain-wire to be fixed to "screw eyes" suitably positioned on the end upright panels of each face of each unit of the gallery one wire corresponding to each step so as to prevent periodicals from falling forward.

5 Three fully planked panels, one at each end and one at the middle to "house" the steps and the sloping back-planks of the gallery

6 Two galvanised pipes of one inch outside diameter threaded into flanges which are screwed into 3 inches by 2 inches teak wood members, connecting the two end-pairs of legs, at a height of 22 inches from floor level, so as to act as strengthening cross ties.

7 Along the foot of the gallery on each of the table-top planks, an inclined label holder to be provided It should have a groove with a slightly wedge-shaped cross-section to take a strip of cardboard 1¼ inches wide and about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch thick

BIBLIOGRAPHY

NOTE—The reference after the serial number is to the number of the section in the book where the reference occurs.

1 Sec. 126. Koch (Theodore Wesley). On university libraries. 1924 27

2. Sec. 128. Janzow (Laura M). *Ed.* Library without the walls, reprints of papers and addresses (Classics of American librarianship ed by Arthur E. Bostwick, 6) 1927 19

3 Sec. 135 Wilson bulletin. V 4 1918. 65

4 Sec. 135. Reclus (Elsee). Earth and its inhabitants A universal geography ed by E G Ravenstein 1882. 1 484

5 Sec. 138. Harper (William Rainey). Trend in higher education 1905 120-1

6. Sec. 1391 *Ibid* 121 5

7 Sec. 142. American Library Association. Survey of the libraries in the United States. 1926. 2 94-5 159-60.

8. Sec. 143 Shakespeare (William). Merchant of Venice. Act I Scene I

9 Sec. 144 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 75

10. Sec. 16. Edwards (Edward) Free town libraries, their formation, management, and history in Britain, France, and America, together with a brief notice of book-collectors, and of the respective places of deposit of their surviving collections 1869 73

11 Sec. 17 Cannons (Harry George Turner) Bibliography of library economy A classified index to the professional periodical literature in the English language relating to library economy printing, methods of publishing, copyright, bibliography etc. from 1876 to 1920. 1927 225-82.

12. Sec. 1701 Library Association record. NS 6. 1928. 237-8.

13 Sec. 170... Bellot (Hugh Hale). University College, London, 1826-1926. 1929 418

14 Sec. 1702. Murray (David). Memoirs of the Old College of Glasgow some chapters in the history of the University 1927 54

15. Sec. 1703 Smythe (George Franklin). Kenyon College, its first century 1924 39

16. Sec. 1703. Koch (Theodore Wesley). On university libraries. 1924 40-1

17 Sec. 1704. Smythe (George Franklin). Kenyon College, its first century 19 4. 123.

18 Sec. 1704 Smythe (George Franklin). Kenyon College, its first century 1924 124.
19 Sec. 1708 Adult education and the library 3 1928 52.
20. Sec. 1711 Library Association. Great Britain Proceedings of the fiftieth conference. 1927 57
21 Sec. 1712 Birrell (Augustine). Collected essays and addresses 1880–1920. 3. 1922. 206.
22. Sec. 1721 *Ibid*. 227-8.
23 Sec. 1725 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 88.
24. Sec. 1732. Panchatantra (Harvard oriental series, 11). 1908. 152.
25 Sec. 1732. Bhartrihari. Niti-sataka and vairagya-sataka ed by Gopinath with Hindi and English translation. 1924 .99
26. Sec. 1732. Syr peny a fourteenth century poem quoted in Coulton (George Gordon) Social life in Britain from the Conquest to the Reformation. 1918 369-70.
27 Sec. 1737 Hyderabad. Archaelogy (Department of —). Inscriptions of Nagai. (Hyderabad archaeological series, 8). 1928
28. Sec 174 Kamban. Ramayanam Kishkinda-kandam, Chap 8, Verse 2.
29 Sec. 174 Valmiki. Ramayanam, Kishkinda-kandam. Chap 33-4
30. Sec. 174 Library Association record. NS 6. 1928. 237
31 Sec 1765 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales 1927 88.
32. Sec. 1772. Adult education and library 4 1929 16.
33 Sec. 1773 Library movement A collection of essays by divers hands. (Madras Library Association, publication series, 1). 1929 2.
34 Sec. 178. Tayumanavar Parapara kanni. Verse 155
35 Sec. 178 Tambyah (Tambi Pillai Isaac). Psalms of a Saiva saint, being selections from the writings of Tayumanaswamy tr into English verse. 1925 Verse 76.
36. Sec. 1781 Edwards (Edward). Memoirs of libraries, including a handbook of library economy 2. 1859 96-7
37 Sec 18. Bhagavad-Gita. Chap 2. Verse 47
38. Sec. 211 Aristotle. Poetics, tr by Edward Walford. Book 1 Chap 5 P 13
39 Sec. 11 *Ibid* Book 1 Chap 13 P 30
40. Sec. 211 Hodgen (Margaret Trabue) Workers education in England and the United States. 1925 8.
41 Sec. 212. *Ibid* 13
42. Sec. 212. Jackson (George Leroy) Privilege of education, a history of its extension. (Library of educational methods). 1918. 39

43. Sec. 213. Mandeville (Bernard). Fable of the bees or private vices, public benefits, with a commentary critical, historical and explanatory ed by F B Kaye. 1. 1924. 288.

44. Sec. 214 Wallas (Graham). Life of Francis Place 1771–1854 1919 112.

45. Sec. 214 *Ibid.* 37

46. Sec. 214 Green (Thomas Hill). Works, ed by E L Nettleship. 3 1890 387

47 Sec. 214 Hansard. 104 1918 344

48. Sec. 215 Bryce (James). Modern democracies 1 1929 79

49 Sec. 2151 Library Association record. N s. 4. 1926 99

50. Sec. 2151 *Ibid.* 194

51 Sec. 2152. American Library Association. Bulletin. 20. 1926. 261 2.

52. Sec. 216. Smith (Adam). Enquiry into the nature and cause of the wealth of nations, ed by Joseph Shield Nicholson. 1884 328-9

53 Sec. 216. *Ibid.* 328-30.

54. Sec. 217 Sharpless (Isaac). English education in the elementary and secondary school. (International education series ed by W T Harris, 22). 1892. 10.

55 Sec. 217 Great Britain. Law reports. Statutes. 33 and 34 Victoria. Chap 75 sec 74 43 and 44 Victoria, chap 23 sec 2 54 and 55 Victoria, chap 56, sec 2.

56. Sec. 217 Huxley (Thomas Henry). Life and letters, ed by his son Leonard Huxley 3 1913. 7

57 Sec. 2171 Adult education and the library 3 1928. 12 3

58 Sec. 2173 *Ibid.* 20

59 Sec. 2174 *Ibid* 22.

60. Sec. 2175 Bishop (William Warner) and Keogh (Andrew). *Ed* Essays offered to Herbert Putnam. on his thirtieth anniversary as Librarian of Congress, 5 April 1929 1929 374-6

61 Sec. 2231 Wright (Frederick Adam). Greek social life 1925 6-13

62. Sec. 2231 Monroe (Paul). Source book of the history of education from the Greek and Roman period. 1901 34.

63 Sec 2231 Bible. Epistles of Paul 1 Corinthians. 35.

64 Sec. 2232. Chesterfield Letters, ed by John Bradshaw 1892. Letter 76.

65 Sec. 2232. Compayre (Gabriel). Jean Jaques Rousseau and education from nature, tr by R P Jago. 1907 85

66. Sec. 2231 Rousseau (Jean Jaques). Emile or treatise on education, abridged, tr and annotated by William H Payne. (International education series ed by W T Harris, 20). 1911 281

67 Sec. 2233. Arthur (T S). Advice to young ladies. 152 3.

68 Sec. 2233 Saturday review. 1860, quoted by Thomas Woody in History of women's education in the United States.
69 Sec. 2234. Monroe (Paul). Cyclopaedia of education. 5. 1911. 805
70. Sec. 2234 Cambridge history of English literature. 9. 1912. 404
71 Sec. 2234 Wharton (Anne Hollingsworth). Colonial days and dames. 1895. 195-6
72. Sec. 2235 Woody (Thomas). History of women's education in the United States. 1. 1929. 13_
73 Sec. 2235 Milton (John). Comus. Lines 69-75.
74 Sec. 2241 Woody (Thomas) History of women's education in the United States. 1. 1929. 129
75 Sec. 2242. Home economics and the curriculum in *School and society* 32, 1915. 279
76. Sec. 2243 Beecher (Catherine Esther) and Stowe (Harriet Beecher). Principles of domestic service, as applied to the duties and pleasures of home A text-book for the use of young ladies in schools, seminaries and colleges. 1870. 13-4
77 Sec. 2243 Bishop (William Warner) and Keogh (Andrew). *Ed* Essays offered to Herbert Putnam...on his thirtieth anniversary as Librarian of Congress, 5 April 1929. 1929. 368.
78. Sec. 2251 Pearson (Karl). Chances of death and other studies in evolution. 1. 1897. 256-377
79 Sec. 2251 *Ibid* 376-7
80. Sec. 225_ Ellis (Havelock). Men and women. A study of human secondary sexual characters. 1926. 284
81 Sec. 2252. Hollingworth (Leta Statte). Functional periodicity an experimental study of the mental and motor abilities of women during menstruation (Teacher's College studies, Columbia University 60). 1914
82. Sec. 226. Great Britain. Indian Statutory Commission. Interim report. Review of the growth of education in British India by the Auxiliary Committee appointed by the Commission. 1929. 151
83 Sec. 226. *Ibid.* 151
84 Sec. 231 Xenophon. Hellinica. Book 3. Section 2. Subsection 30. Page 215 of volume 1 of the Loeb classical library edition, 1918.
85 Sec. 231 Ashby (M K). Country school, its practice and problems. 1929. 29
86. Sec. 2312. Great Britain. Indian Statutory Commission. Interim report. Review of the growth of education in British India by the Auxiliary Committee appointed by the Commission. 1929. 37

87 Sec. 2312. Great Britain. Agriculture in India (Royal Commission on—). Report. 1928. 67
88. Sec. 2321 Felton (Ralph Almon) and Beal (Marjorie). Library of the open road. (Cornell extension bulletin, 188). 1929 14–5
89 Sec. 2322. Carnegie Rural Library Conference, London, 1920. Proceedings. 12.
90. Sec. 2322. *Great Britain. Law reports. Statutes. 9 and 10, George V chap 93 sec 1*
91 Sec. 2322. Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 8.
92. Sec. 2331 Great Britain. Agriculture in India (Royal commission on—). Report. 1928. 539
93. Sec. 2362. County Library Conference. Great Britain. 2. 1924 Proceedings. 12–5
94. Sec. 2364 Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Annual report 15 1928. 33
95 Sec. 2364 Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Some impressions of the public library system of the United States of America. 1927 84
96. Sec. 2365 County Library Conference. Great Britain [illegible] 1924 Proceedings. 61
97 Sec. 2371 Library Association. Great Britain. Proceedings of the fiftieth conference. 1927 79
98 Sec. 2382. County Library Conference. Great Britain. 3 1926 Report of the proceedings. 89
99 Sec. 2383.——2. 1924 — 59
100. Sec. 2383. *Ibid* 59
101 Sec. 2384 *Ibid* 61
102. Sec. 2386. *Ibid.* 66.
103 Sec. 2386. County Library Conference Great Britain. 3 1926. Report of the proceedings. 11
104 Sec. 2387 Felton (Ralph Almon) and Beal (Marjorie). Library of the open road (Cornell extension bulletin, 188). 1929 34-5
105 Sec. 241 India. Census of India, 1921 V 2 Part 2. Tables. 141
106. Sec. 241 — — V 1 Part 1 Report. 211
107 Sec. 41 Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Annual report. 1 1914 13
108. Sec 41 Great Britain Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 142.
109 Sec. 41 Encyclopaedia Britannica. Ed 14 1929 3. 721
110. Sec. 241 *Ibid.* 723
111 Sec. 241 Librarian's guide. 1928/29 66
112. Sec. 241 Minerva jahrbuch. 1930 1 1387

113 Sec 241 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 141
114 Sec 241 Bible Mark. Chap 8 Verse 18.
115 Sec 241 Adult education and the library 3 1928. 20.
116 Sec 26 India. Census of India 1971 V 1 Part 2. Report. 204
117 Sec. 26. Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Annual report. 13 1926 31
118 Sec 26 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 144-5
119 Sec 261 Carnegie United Kingdom Trust. Annual Report. 15 1928. 192.
120 Sec 262 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 19 7 146.
121 Sec. 281 Sundaram Pillai (P). Age of Tirujnanasambandhar (in the *Tamilian antiquary* 2, 1913 65).
122 Sec 281 Sekkilar Peria-puranam Chap 2 Verses 1250-5
123 Sec 311 American Library Association. Bulletin. 20 1926. 303
1 4 Sec 312 — Library Extension Board. Library extension, a study of public library conditions and needs. 1926. 19
125 Sec. 3122 — Bulletin. 20 1926. 339
126. Sec 3123 — — 24 1930 207-28.
127 Sec 313 McLean (Robert Norris). That Mexican! As he really is, north and south of the Rio Grande 1928. 106.
128 Sec. 3131 Saenz (Moises) and Priestley (Herbert I.). Some Mexican problems. (Lectures on the Harris Foundation, 1926). 1926. 55-7
129 Sec 3133 Carnegie Endowment for International Peace. Year book. 1920. 68-9
130 Sec 3133 Tannenbaum (Frank). Mexican agrarian revolution. 1930 426.
131 Sec. 314 Shepherd (William Robert). Central and South America (Home university library of modern knowledge). 1914 193
132. Sec. 3141 American Library Association Bulletin. 23 1929 315
133 Sec. 3142 International conciliation. 1928. 346.
134 Sec 3151 Dictionary of American biography 3. 1930. 500
135 Sec. 3151 Gardiner (Alfred George). Pillars of society 1914 88.
136. Sec. 3153 Manual of public benefactions of Andrew Carnegie 1919 1
137 Sec. 3154 *Ibid* 210.
138 Sec. 3155 *Ibid* 207
139 Sec. 3155 *Ibid* 206.
140. Sec. 3155 Carnegie Rural Library Conference London. 1920. Proceedings. 12.

141 Sec. 3156. Manual of public benefactions of Andrew Carnegie. 1919 210

142. Sec. 323 Ferguson (Milton J). Memorandum Libraries in the Union of South Africa, Rhodesia and Kenya Colony (Carnegie Corporation of New York, African report series, 2). 1929 10.

143 Sec. 332 World Association for Adult Education. International handbook of adult education. 1929 41

144 Sec. 332. Russell (William Fletcher) Schools in Bulgaria, with special reference to the influence of the Agrarian Party on elementary and secondary education. (Studies of the International Institute of Teachers College, Columbia University 1). 1924 25

145 Sec. 3332. Mitrany (David) Land and the peasant in Rumania, the war and the agrarian reform (1917–21). 1930 509

146. Sec. 334 *World Association for Adult Education. International* handbook of adult education. 1929 476.

147 Sec. 336. Masaryk (Thomas Garrigue) Making of a state, memoirs and observations 1914–1918, tr by Henry Wickham Steed. 1927 15

148. Sec. 336. *Ibid* 18

149 Sec. 336. School life 15 1914 113

150. Sec. 3362. *Ibid* 13 191 129

151 Sec. 3363 *Ibid* 13 191 129

152. Sec. 3363. Statesman's year-book 1930 775

153 Sec. 3363. *Ibid* 127

154. Sec. 3365 World Association for Adult Education. International handbook of adult education 1929 62 3.

155 Sec. 337 Education year-book 1926 321

156. Sec. 3371 World Association for Adult Education. International handbook of adult education 1929 349

157 Sec. 338. International conciliation 1929 590-1

158. Sec. 3381 Pinkevitch (Albert Petrovich) New education in the Soviet Republic tr...by Nucia Perlmutter ed by George S. Counts. 1929 3...

159 Sec. 3381 *Ibid.* 374–5

160. Sec 3382. Goode (William Thomas) School teachers and scholars in Soviet Russia. 1929 61 3

161 Sec. 3383. Pinkevitch (Albert Petrovich) New education in the Soviet Republic tr...by Nucia Perlmutter ed by George S. Counts. 1929. 380-1

162. Sec. 3383. Soviet Union year-book. 1929 479 43

163 Sec. 3384 Harper (Samuel Northrop). Civic training in Soviet Russia. 1929 271

164 Sec. 3385 Weekly news bulletin of the Russian Society for Cultural Relations.
165 Sec. 3386. Madras Library Association. Annual report. 2. 1930. 21 ...
166 Sec. 3387 Hindu. 23 Oct 1930
167 Sec. 341 Young (Ernest) Finland, the land of a thousand lakes. 1912 208-9
168 Sec 341 Statesman's year book. 1930 837
169 Sec. 3411 Young (Ernest). Finland, the land of a thousand lakes. 1912 210.
170 Sec 3413 World Association for Adult Education. International handbook of adult education. 1929 122.
171 Sec. 342 American Library Association. Bulletin. 20. 1926. 257
172 Sec 343 Guinchard (Axel John Josef). *Ed.* Sweden, part 1—Land and people—historical and statistical handbook 1914 383-4.
173 Sec 3431 School life 15. 1914 113
174 Sec 344. Sandiford (Peter). *Ed.* Comparative education, studies of the educational systems of six modern nations by H W Foght etc 1918. 439
175 Sec 3443 Brochner (Jessie). Danish life in town and country 1911 28
176. Sec. 353 American Library Association. Bulletin. 20. 1926. 202,
177 Sec. 354 Statesman's year-book. 1930. 677
178 Sec. 3561 Great Britain. Public Libraries Committee. Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 ..40.
179 Sec. 3562 Carnegie Rural Library Conference London. 1920. 1 3
180 Sec 3563 County Library Conference. Great Britain. ... 1924 10.
181 Sec 3621 American Library Association. Library Extension Board. Library extension, a study of public library conditions and needs. 1926. 80.
182 Sec. 371 Bland (John Otway Percy). China, Japan and Korea 1921 176-8.
183 Sec 3711 Nitobe (Inazo Ota). Japanese traits and foreign influences. 1927 15
184 Sec. 3711 Sharp (William Hastings). Educational system of Japan (India. Education (Director-General of —). Occasional reports, 3). 1906 28.
185 Sec. 3712 Statesman's year-book 1930. 1,050.
186. Sec. 374. South Indian teacher 3 1930. 537
187 Sec 381 Punjab. Instruction (Director of Public —). Report on the progress of education in the Punjab 1927 28 66.

188. Sec. 382. India. Education (Commissioner for —) Progress of education in India, 1922–27 268–9
189 Sec. 383 *Ibid* 269
190. Sec. 3851. Dutt (Newton Mohon). Baroda and i ibraries. 1928. 21 2.
191 Sec. 411 Bible. Exodus. Chap 16. Verse 4
192. Sec. 4122. Bishop (William Warner) and Keog (Andrew) *Ed.* Essays offered to Herbert Putnam...on his thirtieth ann ersary as Librarian of Congress, 4 April 1929 1929 1 (
193. Sec. 413 Great Britain. Public Libraries Comm Report on public libraries in England and Wales. 1927 3
194 Sec. 414 Journal, Statistical Society of London) 1853. 250–81
195. Sec. 4143 Edwards (Edward). Memoirs of libraries, including handbook of library economy 1 1859
Edwards (Edward). Free town libraries, their formation, management, and history in Britain, France, and America, together with a brief notice of book-collectors, and of the respective places of deposit of their surviving collections 1869
196. Sec. 418. Great Britain. Indian Statutory Commission. Interim report....Review of the growth of education in British India by the Auxiliary Committee appointed by the Commission. 1929 43.
197 Sec. 418. India Education (Commissioner for—) Progress of education in India. 9 1923 1 2 3.
198. Sec 418. *Ibid.* 122.
199 Sec. 418. Yeaxlee (Basil Alfred). Working of the Fisher Act, the human aspect of the continuation schools, 1921 78.
200. Sec. 418. India, Education (Commissioner for—). Progress of education in India 9 1923. 1. 261.
201 Sec. 418. Great Britain. Agriculture in India (Royal Commission on—). Report. 1928. 45–8.
202. Sec. 418 Great Britain. Medical Officer (Chief State—). Annual report. 1927
203 Sec. 418 India. Public Health Commissioner Annual report. 1927 233.
204 Sec. 418. Gore (John K). World's war against disease 1911 54.
205 Sec. 418. Carnegie Rural Library Conference London 1920. Proceedings. 66–7
206 Sec 418 Bishop (William Warner) and Keogh (Andrew). *Ed.* Essays offered to Herbert Putnam...on his twentieth anniversary as Librarian of Congress, 5 April 1929. 1929 373–4
207 Sec. 461 Iwinski (M B). Statistique internationale des imprimés in Instit t International de Bibliographie, bulletin. 16, 1911 1 139

NOTE Bibliography of the books and periodicals by or edited by S. R. Ranganathan, and a few articles by him most of which are referred to in chapters 0 and 8.

250. Abgila, 1–3 1949–1953 the Annals part *continued as*
251. Annals of library science, 1— 1954—
252. Anuvarga-suchi-kalpa. 1952 (Indian Library Association, Hindi series 3). Jointly with Murari Lal Nagar
253. Bibliography of reference books and bibliographies. 1941 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 10). Jointly with K. M. Sivaraman.
254. Canons of terminology in Abgila 1 1950.
255. Cheque book of five leaves for librarians in Granthalaya 2, 12, 1956, Dec., 1–13
256. Classification and communication. 1951 (University of Delhi library science series, 3).
257. Classification and *international documentation*. 1948 (F I D publication, 227).
258. Classification, coding, and machinery for search. 1950. (Unesco publication).
259. Classification of Marathi literature. 1945
260. *Classification of Telugu literature. 1947*
261. Classified catalogue code. Ed 1 1934 Ed 2, 1945 Ed 3. 1951 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 4, 13, 17). Ed *4 in preparation.*
262. Colon classification. Ed 1 1933 Ed 2, 1939 Ed. 3 1950. Ed 4 1952. *Ed 5 1957 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 3 8 16, 19 22)*
263. Depth classification and reference service materials. Symposium of papers offered to the Tenth All India Library Conference, 1953, Hyderabad. 1953. (Indian Library Association, English series, 6).
264. Dictionary catalogue code. Ed 1 1945 Ed. 2, 1952. (Madras Library Association, publication series, 14 18).
265. Documentation in many lands (4) in Annals of library science
266. Education for leisure. Ed 1 1946. Ed 2, 1949 — 3 1954. (Indian Adult Education Association, English se[illegible]
267. Elements of library classification. 1945. E[illegible]
268. Five laws of library science. Ed 1 193[illegible] Library Association, publication series[illegible]
269. Grantha adhyayanath hal. 1948 [illegible] Hindi series, 1).
270. Granthalaya-prakriya. 1950. (In[illegible] series, 2). Jointly with

271 Heading and canons Comparative study of five catalogue codes. 1955.
272. Indian library directory 1951 (Indian Library Association, English series, 5) Jointly with S. Das Gupta and Magnanand.
273. Library administration. 1935 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 5).
274. Library book selection. 1952. (Indian Library Association, English series, 4).
275. Library catalogue Fundamentals and procedure. 1950. (Madras Library Association, publication series, 15).
276. Library classification Fundamentals and procedure. 1944 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 12).
277 Library development plan for the University of Allahabad. 1947 (Reprinted in the Mootham Report on Allahabad University 1953).
278. Library development plan with a draft library bill for Bombay 1947
279 Library development plan with a draft library bill for the United Provinces. 1949
280. Library development plan with a thirty-year programme for India and with draft library bills for the Union Government and the Constituent States. 1950. (University of Delhi, library science series, 2)
281 Library legislation Handbook to the Madras Library Act. 1953 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 20).
282. Library manual. 1950 (Indian Library Association, English series, 2). Jointly with K M Sivaraman.
283. Library tour 1948, Europe and America Impressions and reflections. 1950. (Indian Library Association, English series. 1).
284 Literature for neo-literates proceedings of the Third National Seminar on Adult Education. 1953. (Indian Adult Education Association, English series 6).
285. Mechanisation in library service in the Bulletin of the Indian Association of Special Libraries and Information Centres, 1956.
286. Sec. 8771 and Sec. 8861 Memorandum to the Madras Minister of Education in Annual Report of the Madras Library Association, 28, 1955, 3–7
287 Sec. 8852. Message for the Third All Hyderabad Library Conference in Granthalaya, 2, 1956, Dec. 16–18).
288. Model library act. 1931 (Madras Library Association, legislative series, 1)
289 Model public library bill. 1941
290. National library system A plan for India. 1946.

291 Organisation of libraries. Ed 1 1946. Ed 2, 1956. (Teaching in India series, 14).

29 Papers offered to the Library Service Section of the First All Asia Educational Conference, 1930, Banaras, 2 V 1930-1931

293 Philosophy of library classification. 1951 (Libri series, Copenhagen).

294. Post-war reconstruction of libraries in India. 1944. (Library in India series, 1).

795 Preface to library science. 1948. (University of Delhi, library science series, 1).

296. Prolegomena to library classification. Ed 1 1947 (Madras Library Association, publication series,[6). Ed 2. 1957 (Library Association. Great Britain).

797 Reference service and bibliography 1940. (Madras Library Association, publication series, 9). Jointly with C. Sundaram.

298. Rural adult education. 1949 (Indian Adult Education Association, English series, 2).

299. School and college libraries. 1942. (Madras Library Association, publication series, 11).

00 Social bibliography Physical bibliography for librarians, authors, and publishers. 1952 (University of Delhi, library science series, 4).

301 Social education literature for authors, artists, librarians, printers, publishers, and governments. 1952. (Indian Adult Education Association, English series, 5).

302. Theory of library of library catalogue 1938 (Madras Library Association, publication series, 7).

303. Training in library science 1-6 in Abgila and Annals of library science.

304. Union catalogue of learned periodicals in South Asia. 1953. (Indian Library Association, English series, 7). Jointly with others.

305. University reform in contemporary India. 1952. (Educational review Madras)

306. Retrospective bibliography of learned periodicals published in Asia. Completed in 1955 The type-script is with the Unesco. Paris.

INDEX

NOTE—The reference is to chapters or sections as the case may be

l r t = in relation to

r l r t = referred in relation to

OTHER BOOKS

BY

Dr S R Ranganathan

BOOKS IN ENGLISH

1 Classification and communication. 1951 (University of Delhi)
2 Depth classification. 1953 (Author)
3 Public library provision and documentation problems. 1951 (Author).
4 Education for leisure. Ed 3 1954 (Indian Adult Education Association)
5 Elements of library classification. Ed 2. (Being published by the Association of Assistant Librarians, London).
6 Heading and Canons Comparative study of five catalogue codes. 1955 (S Viswanathan, Publishers, McNichol Road 11 Madras 31)
7 Library development plan, with draft library bills for Union Government and the Constituent States. 1950 (University of Delhi)
8 Library manual. 1950. (Author)
9 Library tour, 1948, Europe and America Impressions and reflections. 1950 (Author).
10 Literature for neo-literates. 1953 (Indian Adult Education Association)
11 Organisation of libraries. Ed 2. 1956. (Oxford University Press).
12 Philosophy of library classification. 1951 (Libri-Copenhagen)
13 Prolegomena to library classification. Ed 2. (Library Association London).
14 Rural adult education. 1948 (Indian Adult Education Association).
15 Social bibliography Physical bibliography for librarians, authors and publishers. 1952. (University of Delhi)
16 Social education literature. 1952 (Indian Adult Education Association)
17 Union catalogue of learned periodical publications in South Asia. 1953 (Author).

18 **Anuvarga-suchi-kalpa.** 1952. (Translation of the Classified catalogue code) (Author).

19 **Grandha adhyaaarth hal.** 1948 (Translation of the first chapter of the Five laws of library science) (Author)

20 **Grandhalaya-prakriya.** 1950 (Translation of library manual). (Author).

Obtainable from

1 Madras Library Association, Sami Pillai Street 4 Madras 5

2 G Blunt and Sons Ltd, Great Russel Street 100, London, W C 1

3 The publishers shown in brackets.

PERIODICAL IN ENGLISH

21 **Annals of library science** *Obtainable from* Insdoc, National Physical Laboratory Hillside Road, New Delhi 12)

FIVE LAWS OF LIBRARY SCIENCE

Dr S R Ranganathan

Demy octavo 449 pages

Ed 2 Revised. 1957 Rs 15 in India. Sh 36 Outside India

SOME OPINIONS

Year's work in librarianship It is presented from so fresh a point of view and with so lively an enthusiasm that it may well lead to a reconsideration of many problems

Madras mail A volume which to the book lover is more interesting than a thriller more enlightening than a text book

Library Association record The book is lovely the author's enthusiasm for his vocation is infectious.

Librarian and book world: Would recommend this book to all librarians who will find many valuable hints to the proper administration of a library to library committee men.

Memoirs of the Madras Library Association: Why should we throw open our library shelves to all comers? Why is so much money and labour expended on the provision and maintenance of a catalogue? Why classify? Why in fact, do we do any of the often complicated and seemingly pointless things to books in our libraries? The answers to all these questions are to be found in the pages of "The five laws of library science" which book analyses the trends of thought that underlie the practices of the modern librarian

The new edition contains a new chapter This answers the question "Is there a library science?" on the basis of the Spiral of Scientific Method shows how the Five Laws have anticipated many of the new developments during the last thirty years, and gives a plan for continuous research in library science.

Obtainable from

1 Madras Library Association Sami Pillai Street 4, Madras 5

2 G Blunt and Sons Ltd, Great Russel Street 100, London, W C 1

COLON CLASSIFICATION

Dr S R Ranganathan

Demy octavo 148 179 136 pages,

Ed 5 Revised. 1957 Rs 15 in India. Sh 36 Outside India

SOME OPINIONS

Year's work in librarianship All who are interested in *synthetic* classification will find this the best recent exercise in it.

Library Association record: Mr Bliss s suggestion that "the system is well worth study by those who contemplate constructive developments in bibliographic classification, places *Mr Ranganathan in his proper niche of fame* as essentially the classifier's classifier

Introduction to library classification It is universally interest ing as a study of an original kind in classification method Certainly the Colon Scheme is remarkable for its analysis *of the many relations of subjects*, and students should be acquainted with this new and interesting general classification

Library journal: Precise and well-worded rules are given regarding the formation of class numbers. Many works *of Sanskrit literature* and *others in the fields of Hindu* Philosophy and Religion are listed in a systematic order thus illustrating both the correct titles of these works and their relationship to one another

Communications of the International Congress of Libraries and Documentation Centres, Brussels, 1955: *The truly faceted* classification has been developed by Ranganathan, in his Colon Classification It is extremely simple and flexible *to use, and can deal with complex subjects* without strain and with a surprisingly simple notation .. The British Classification Research Group accepted that "facet analysis" must be *the basis of a classification* scheme able to meet modern requirements.

Memoirs of the Madras Library Association: No librarian who has given it any attention can fail to realize that Colon is the most significant contribution to library science, India or any other country has made this *century* .At every point one can discover fresh evidences of a powerful mind at work.

CLASSIFIED CATALOGUE CODE

Dr S R Ranganathan

Edition 4 (Revised) *In press*

This edition contains a complete re-draft in conformity with the Standard for Catalogue Code worked out in Ranganathan's Heading and canons Comparative study of five catalogue codes" (1955) Its chapter on the glossary of cataloguing terms has been the basis for the standard on the subject being established by the Indian Standards Institution This edition separates out clearly the problems of determining the author of a document, and of the choice, rendering and style of writing the Headings of entries.

Wherever necessary this edition gives the modified rules suitable for the Dictionary Catalogue.

It also gives rules for Union Catalogue and for Abstracting periodical.

SOME OPINIONS

Library Association record It is a book of considerable value The method of handling various types of books is elaborately dealt with Card technique is fully dealt with and considerable value attaches to the chapter on the rendering of Hindu and Muhammadan names.

H E. Bliss You too have brought your classification in relationship with your system for your classified catalogue The classified form of subject-catalogue seems likely to have a new development. I regard the dictionary catalogue as a blunder in the development of the economics of libraries.

A. J H.: It is a book of considerable value .A special virtue of the book is that the author constantly keeps in mind the purpose of the library catalogue not as a mere inventory of stock but an instrument for revealing the contents of the library to the student seeking for information The method of handling various types of books is elaborately dealt with.

W C. Berwick Sayers: By far the largest contribution to the subject